



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

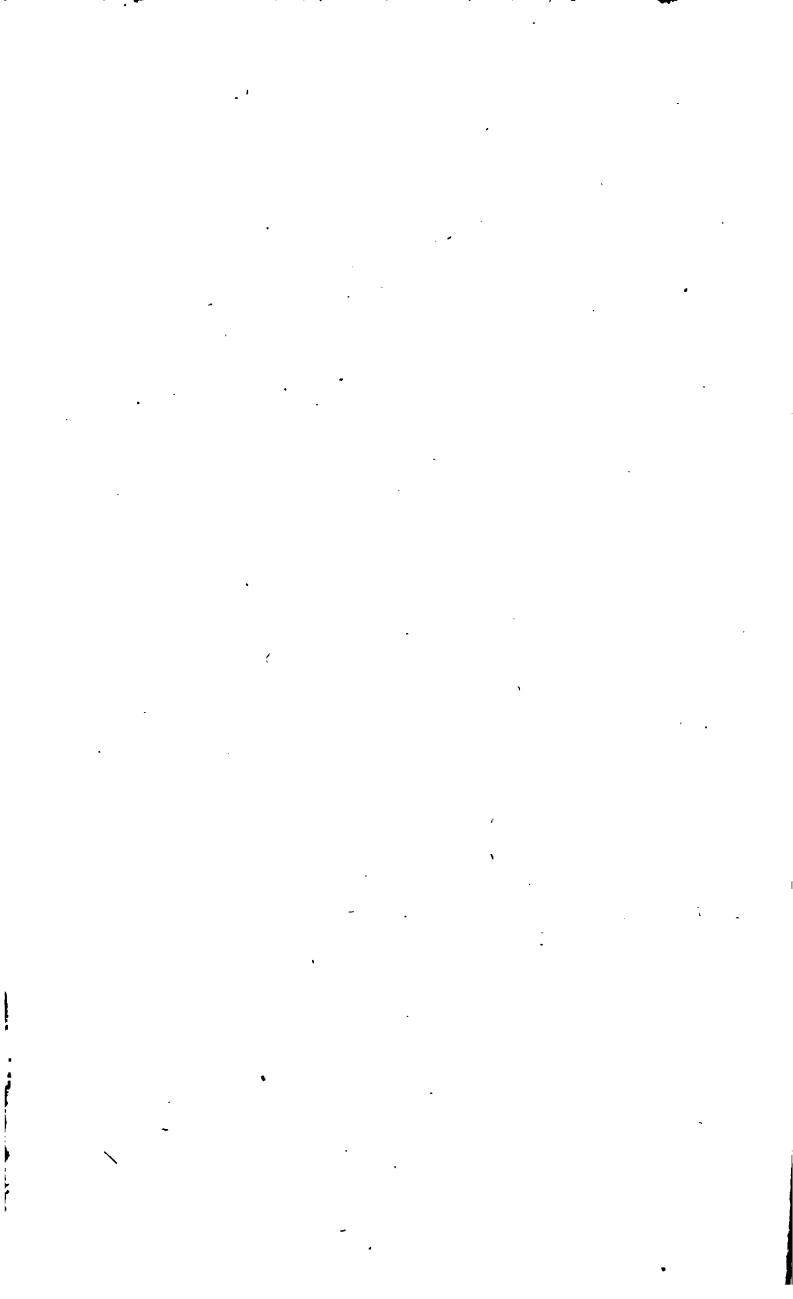
due T 15 18, 24, 870

Charles F. Bradford, D.D.

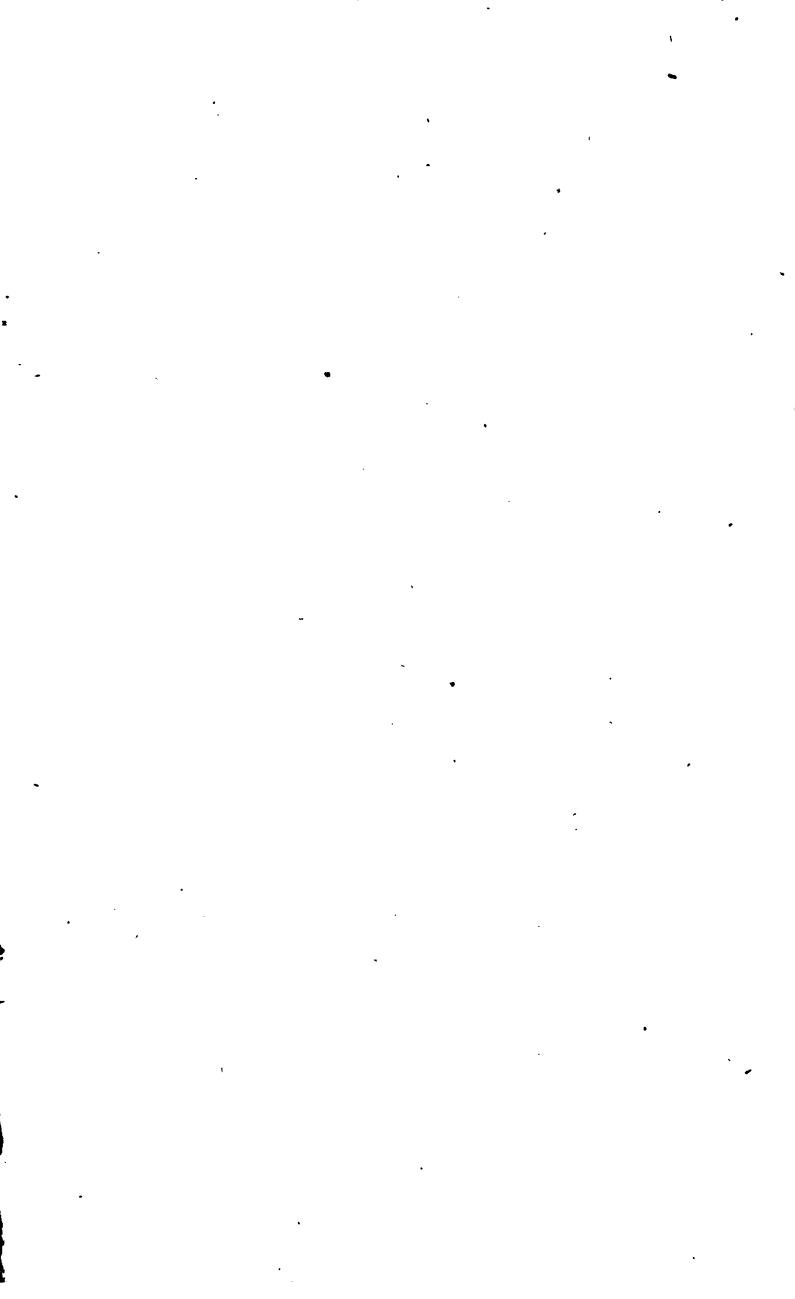
HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



3 2044 102 851 078









GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
FRENCH LANGUAGE,  
WITH  
PRACTICAL EXERCISES.

BY N. WANOSTROCHT, LL. D.

SEVENTH AMERICAN FROM THE LAST LONDON EDITION.

TO WHICH IS ADDED,  
A VERY COMPREHENSIVE TABLE OF CONTENTS,  
AND AN ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT OF THE  
*IRREGULAR VERBS*,  
WITH REFERENCE TO THE PLACES WHERE THEY ARE CONJUGATED.

WITH  
*ALTERATIONS, ADDITIONS AND IMPROVEMENTS ;*  
AND A SCHEME FOR PARSING.

ALSO, A  
TREATISE ON FRENCH VERSIFICATION,

BY M. DE WAILLY,

Member of the National Institute of France, &c. &c.

*BOSTON :*

PUBLISHED BY RICHARDSON & LORD.

PRINTED BY J. A. FROST.

1824.

~~Edw. T. 1518.24.870~~  
Harvard College Library

Aug. 23, 1917

Gift of

Dr. E. H. Bradford

Edge T 1518.24.870

DISTRICT OF MASSACHUSETTS, TO WIT:

*District Clerk's Office.*

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the eighteenth day of March, A. D. 1824, and in the forty-eighth year of the Independence of the United States of America, *Richardson & Lord*, of the said District, have deposited in this Office the Title of a Book, the right whereof they claim as Proprietors, in the words following, *to wit* :

A Grammar of the French Language, with Practical Exercises, by N. Wanoostrocht, LL. D. Seventh American from the last London Edition, to which is added, a very comprehensive Table of Contents, and an Alphabetical Arrangement of the Irregular Verba, with reference to the places where they are conjugated, with Alterations, Additions and Improvements, and a Scheme for Parsing, also a Treatise on French Versification. By M. De Wailly, Member of the National Institute of France, &c. &c.

In conformity to the Act of the Congress of the United States, entitled, "An Act for the Encouragement of Learning, by securing the Copies of Maps, Charts and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies, during the times therein mentioned:" and also to an Act entitled, "An Act supplementary to an Act, entitled, 'An Act for the encouragement of Learning, by securing the copies of Maps, Charts and Books, to the Authors and Proprietors of such copies during the times therein mentioned; and extending the benefits thereof to the Arts of Designing, Engraving and Etching Historical, and other Prints.' "

JOHN W. DAVIS,  
*Clerk of the District of Massachusetts.*

## ADVERTISEMENT.

**THE** publishers of the previous Boston editions of this Grammar, now offer a new and improved edition of a work which has become generally known and esteemed.

When it was first determined to reprint this judicious system of theoretically and practically teaching the French language, a perfect conviction was felt that it would meet the approbation of the wise and learned as soon as it was known; and the rapid sale of six editions in the United States within a few years has fully realized that expectation and given indubitable evidence of the intrinsic merit of this mode of instruction.

In London this Grammar has passed through sixteen editions, and it has likewise been printed several times at Paris.

Previous to the printing of every new edition the American publishers have always been careful to procure the latest English copy, in order to profit by any improvement which may have been made in succeeding editions, and this attention has always proved advantageous. Besides this, every edition has been carefully revised, enlarged and improved by the same editor, who, in the present, has availed himself of the alterations and meliorations liberally furnished by a worthy and intelligent Instructor. Therefore, it is confidently believed that this Grammar will continue to deserve the high standing it has attained, both in Europe and America, among the *real* judges of similar publications.

This work is now introduced into some of the first literary institutions in the country, and particularly into the University at Cambridge, and St. Mary's College in Baltimore.

Boston, March, 1824.

## PREFACE.

---

THAT "a great book is a great evil" is generally a great truth, for the discovery of which we moderns must hold ourselves indebted to the sages of antiquity. In the following sheets, I have endeavoured to improve upon the ancient maxim, and bring the two ends of the book as near together as I possibly could. On this frugal plan, the preface might have been spared, but custom must be complied with: some part of our time must be spent on superfluities; and what is rendered venerable by age must not too hastily be rejected. To enter abruptly upon the main subject is generally considered as a breach of politeness. What is useful must sometimes give place to what is convenient, and what rigorous justice cannot defend, may yet enjoy the security of prescription. In compliance, therefore, with universal custom, with the general practice of the ancients, and, what is still more forcible, the urgent solicitation of the booksellers, I proceed to lay before the Reader the general Plan of the Work.

The idea of the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR was first suggested to the Author in the course of his private teaching. He found daily the inconvenience of referring from book to book, and determined to supply the defect in the best manner he could. Whatever was necessary to furnish a tolerable acquaintance with the elements of the language, and point out the nature of its construction, he proposed to admit; and reject every thing that was not essentially connected with his principal design. His first object was to comprise, in as little room as possible, every thing that was really useful in the grammar, the exercise-book, and the book of dialogues. To this plan, he has strictly adhered in the composition, and has brought the whole together in a much smaller compass than, at first, could reasonably have been expected.

The several parts of speech are arranged in the usual order, and each part is discussed under a separate section.

Each rule is followed by a familiar exercise, which the master may use in the place of a dialogue.

The advantages resulting from the scholars learning and then repeating their own translations by heart must, in the opinion of impartial and disinterested minds materially tend to their improvement;

by these means, the pupils, uniting practice to theory, not only become imperceptibly acquainted with the French phraseology, which in many instances differs so much from the English construction, but immediately know what is the English word that corresponds with the French, and *vice versâ*, which cannot absolutely be done, in a dialogue where the French is ready made for them. Therefore, in order the more fully to answer the Author's intention, he has, instead of fine sentences, extracted from the most elegant writers, and often above the comprehension of young people, preferred, and made use, throughout all the exercises, of plain and easy sentences, which, at the same time they are within the reach of the young learners' faculties, will soon enable them to speak the French language with propriety and elegance. What more can be expected from an elementary book?

At the close of every section, a recapitulatory exercise is given upon all the preceding rules.

When there is any difference in the order of arrangement, the French construction is pointed out by the small figures placed against the top of the words in the English sentence.

Some of the most remarkable French idioms are noticed, and exemplified by various instances. Many others might have been adduced, perhaps, to very little profit. The idiomatical expressions are daily giving way to a regular syntactical form, and growing into disuse with the best masters.

A few general rules for pronunciation only have been given. From all the attempts that have hitherto been made, it does not appear that any adequate idea of it can be conveyed in writing. The ear cannot be properly formed without the assistance of a good speaker.

Throughout the whole composition, the Author's chief aim has been to unite ease and simplicity with accuracy and precision. That he has sometimes said too little where more was required, and sometimes too much where less would have been sufficient, he does not take upon himself to assert. That he has sometimes failed through negligence, and many times through ignorance, he has also great reason to fear. His daily avocations left him but little time for study, and his want of a better acquaintance with the English language may have subjected him to many inaccuracies in his style, and sometimes, perhaps, to palpable improprieties.

The author cheerfully embraces this opportunity of making his most grateful acknowledgments to the Public, for the favourable reception given to the former editions of this Grammar, and, in general,

to all his other works: while he is perfectly sensible of the obligation, he is also sensible that much indulgence was required to justify the favours he has already received, either as a **TEACHER** or as an **AUTHOR**. That generous indulgence he again solicits for their acceptance in this new edition, and begs to assure them, that, in every situation of life, it will be his constant care, as well as his highest ambition, to deserve the flattering encouragement he has met with in this country, and never forget the obligations already conferred.

In this edition the errors in the former publications are carefully corrected, the several expressions which did not so well please in the course of practice, have been altered, and every improvement added, that could tend to facilitate the attainment of the French language. It having been suggested, by some gentlemen, to whose judgment the Author pays the greatest deference, that the irregular verbs, being arranged in alphabetical order, in the body of the book, would be a considerable improvement to the work, and facilitate the progress of the scholar, this is done in the present edition. The primitives of the irregular verbs are conjugated at length, and at the end of each are given their several compounds, with large exercises, both upon the primitives and compounds.

*Alfred-House Academy, Camberwell.*



# CONTENTS.

<b>AN Alphabetical Arrangement of Irregular Verbs</b>	xii
<b>An Explanation of the Abbreviations</b>	11
<b>French Alphabet</b>	12

## SECT. I.

<b>Of Grammar</b>	13
<b>Of the French Alphabet</b>	ib.
<b>Of Vowels—Diphthongs—Accents—Kinds of E</b>	14
<b>Of Diæresis—Cedilla—Apostrophe</b>	15
<b>Alphabetical list of French words having their initial <i>h</i> mute</b>	ib.
<b>Variations in the pronunciation of Consonants</b>	17
<b>Kinds of words</b>	18
<b>General Explanation of their use</b>	19

## SECT. II.

<b>Of Nouns</b>	20
<b>Of Articles</b>	21
<b>Of the Definite, Partitive and Indefinite Articles</b>	22
<b>Of Genders and Numbers</b>	23
<b>General Rules for the formation of the Plural Number</b>	24
<b>Of Cases</b>	26
<b>Of the Declension of Nouns</b>	27
<b>Declension of the Article Definite <i>Le</i>, (the) before Nouns masculine beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated</b>	28
<b>Declension of the Article Definite <i>La</i>, (the) before nouns feminine beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated</b>	ib.
<b>Declension of the Article Definite <i>L'</i> (the) for both Genders, before nouns beginning with a Vowel, or an <i>h</i> not aspirated</b>	29
<b>Recapitulation of the Article Definite</b>	ib.
<b>Rules for the proper use of the Definite Article with Exercises</b>	30
<b>Declension of the Article Partitive</b>	38
<b>Rules and Exercises upon this Partitive</b>	39
<b>Declension of the Article Indefinite</b>	41
<b>Rules and Exercises on this Indefinite</b>	ib.
<b>Declension of <i>Un</i>, m. <i>Une</i>, f. a or an</b>	48
<b>Rules and Exercises on this Article</b>	ib.
<b>Of Nouns Adjective</b>	50
<b>Of the Gender and Number of Adjectives</b>	ib.
<b>Declension of Nouns Adjective</b>	53
<b>Rules and Exercises upon Adjectives</b>	ib.
<b>The Place of an Adjective in a Sentence</b>	56
<b>Of Adjectives which precede their Substantives</b>	ib.
<b>Of Adjectives which come after their Substantives</b>	57
<b>Rules and Exercises upon these Adjectives</b>	58

Of the Degrees of Comparison . . . . .	66
Rules with Exercises upon the Degrees of Comparison . . . . .	61
Of Numbers . . . . .	67
Rules and Exercises upon these Cardinal Numbers . . . . .	68
Of the Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	71
Rules and Exercises upon the Ordinal Numbers . . . . .	72
Recapitulatory or Promiscuous Exercises upon all the Preceding Rules . . . . .	74

---

### SECT. III.

Of Pronouns . . . . .	81
Of Pronouns Personal . . . . .	82
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	83
Observations on the Pronouns <i>Je</i> and <i>Moi</i> , <i>Tu</i> and <i>Toi</i> , <i>Il</i> and <i>Lui</i> , <i>Us</i> and <i>Eux</i> . . . . .	85
Exercises upon the Preceding Observations . . . . .	86
Of Conjunctive Pronouns and their Declensions . . . . .	87
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	89
Of Particles Relative or Supplying Pronouns <i>en</i> , <i>y</i> , and <i>le</i> . . . . .	92
Rules and Exercises upon these Supplying Pronouns . . . . .	ib.
Of Pronouns Possessive, and their Declensions . . . . .	99
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	100
Of Pronouns Demonstrative . . . . .	104
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	106
Of Pronouns Relative . . . . .	110
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	111
Of Pronouns Interrogative . . . . .	116
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	ib.
Of Pronouns Indefinite . . . . .	119
Rules and Exercises upon these Pronouns . . . . .	120
Recapitulatory or Promiscuous Exercises upon all the Pronouns . . . . .	135

---

### SECT. IV.

Of Verbs and their different Sorts . . . . .	142
Conjugation of Verbs and Moods . . . . .	144
Tenses . . . . .	147
Tenses of the Indicative Mood . . . . .	148
Simple Tenses of the Indicative Mood . . . . .	ib.
Compound Tenses of the Indicative Mood . . . . .	153
Tenses of the Subjunctive or Conjunctive Mood, and their Compounds . . . . .	157
Numbers and Persons . . . . .	159
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>Avoir</i> , to have . . . . .	161
Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>Etre</i> , to be . . . . .	163
Rules and Exercises on the two preceding Auxiliary Verbs . . . . .	166
Promiscuous Exercises upon the Compound Tenses of these Auxiliary Verbs . . . . .	169

Rules and Examples for using these Verbs Interrogatively, &c.	170
Promiscuous Exercises on Rules of Interrogation, &c.	172
Remark on the Verb <i>Etre</i> , to be	174
First Conjugation in <i>er</i> , as in <i>Parl-er</i>	175
Important Observation upon the repetition of Verbs, &c. see N. B.	179
Exercises on this Conjugation	181
Exercises on the Compound Tenses	183
Second Conjugation, in <i>ir</i> , as in <i>Pun-ir</i>	184
Exercises on this Conjugation	187
Third Conjugation, in <i>avoir</i> , as in <i>rec-avoir</i>	190
Exercises on this Conjugation	193
Fourth Conjugation, in <i>re</i> , as in <i>Vend-re</i>	197
Exercises on this Conjugation	200
Recapitulatory Exercises on the Regular Verbs of the Four Conjugations	203
Promiscuous Exercises on the Compound Tenses, of the preceding Conjugations	206
Conjugations of the Passive Verbs	208
Of Neuter Verbs generally	<i>ib.</i>
Of Reflective Verbs	214
Model of Conjugations for the reflected Verbs of the Four Conjugations	219
Exercises on the Reflective Verbs	222
Conjugation of the Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation	227
Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	230
Exercises on the Irregular Verbs of the First and Second Conjugations	235
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	238
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs	243
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	245
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds	251
Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation	254
Observation upon <i>May</i> , and <i>Might</i> , when used as a Verb or Auxiliary	259
Observation upon the words <i>Will</i> , and <i>Would</i> , when used as a Verb or an Auxiliary	265
Exercises upon Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation	266
Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	271
Exercises upon the preceding Irregular Verbs, and their Compounds	281
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	284
Exercises on the preceding Irregular Verbs and their Compounds	296
Continuation of the Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	302
Exercises on the preceding Verbs, and their Compounds	313
Of the Impersonal Verbs	319
Conjugation of the Impersonal Verbs	<i>ib.</i>
Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs	321
Upon the Impersonal Verb <i>y avoir</i> ,	322
Exercises on the preceding Verb	323
Remarks on the general Pronoun <i>On</i>	324
Exercises on the preceding Pronoun, &c.	<i>ib.</i>

Remarks on the Impersonal Verb <i>Falloir</i> , to be needful, requisite, necessary . . . . .	332
Exercises on the preceding Impersonal Verb . . . . .	334
Additional Remarks on the general Pronoun <i>On</i> . . . . .	337
Exercises on the preceding Pronoun . . . . .	338
Recapitulatory Exercises on the Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	339

## SECT. V.

Of Participles . . . . .	342
Rules and Exercises on the Participles Active and Passive . . . . .	342 to 352

## SECT. VI.

Of Indeclinable Parts of Speech . . . . .	353
Of Adverbs . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
Table of Adverbs . . . . .	354, 357, 359, 361, 363, 365, 368, 369
Observation on the Adverb <i>Où</i> . . . . .	370
Table of Adverbs continued . . . . .	373, 376, 378, 379, 382

## SECT. VII.

Of Prepositions . . . . .	383
Prepositions governing the Genitive or Ablative Cases . . . . .	383, 384
Exercises on these Prepositions . . . . .	385
Prepositions governing the Dative Case . . . . .	387
Exercises on these Prepositions . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
Prepositions requiring the Accusative Case . . . . .	388
Exercises upon these Prepositions . . . . .	389
Observations on some Prepositions, and Exercises upon them, <i>Above</i> , 392; <i>At</i> , 393, 394; <i>By</i> , 395, 396, 397; <i>For</i> , 398; <i>From</i> , 399; <i>In</i> , 400, 401; <i>On</i> , or <i>Upon</i> , 402; <i>Over</i> , 403; <i>With</i> , 404, 405, 407, 408; <i>Without</i> , . . . . .	409

## SECT. VIII.

Of Conjunctions . . . . .	411
Conjunctions requiring the Infinitive Mood, and Exercises upon them . . . . .	<i>ib.</i>
Conjunctions requiring the Verb in the Indicative Mood, and Exercises upon them in continuation . . . . .	412
Conjunctions requiring the Future Tense . . . . .	417
Remark on the Conjunction <i>Que</i> , preceding an Infinitive or Subjunctive Mood . . . . .	418

Conjunctions requiring the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, and Exercises upon them . . . . .	420, 421
Remarks on the Conjunctions <i>Si</i> and <i>Que</i> . . . . .	424
Exercises on the preceding Conjunctions . . . . .	425
Verbs requiring the Conjunction <i>Que</i> , with the following Verb in the Subjunctive Mood . . . . .	427
Exercises on this and the preceding Rules . . . . .	428
Observation on the Verb <i>Vouloir</i> , to will, to wish, . . . . .	431
Conjunctions <i>Qui</i> , <i>Que</i> or <i>Dont</i> , requiring the following Verb in the Subjunctive Mood, and Exercises upon them . . . . .	433

---

## SECT. IX.

Of Interjections . . . . .	435
Table of Interjections . . . . .	ib.
Exercises on the preceding Interjections . . . . .	436
Remarks on the Particles <i>De</i> , <i>à</i> , <i>Pour</i> , when not expressed, and Exercises upon them . . . . .	437
Remarks on the Particle <i>De</i> , when it is to be expressed, and Exercises upon it . . . . .	439
Remarks on the Particle <i>à</i> , when it is to be expressed, and Exercises upon it . . . . .	441, 442
Important remarks on the Particles <i>De</i> , <i>à</i> , and <i>Pour</i> , with Exercises . . . . .	444

---

## SECT. X.

Idiomatrical Expressions . . . . .	445
Of the Verb <i>Avoir</i> , to have, and Exercises upon it . . . . .	445, 446
Of <i>Etre</i> , to be, and Exercises upon it . . . . .	448
Of <i>Faire</i> , to make, or to do, and Exercises upon it . . . . .	449, 450
Of different Verbs, and Exercises upon them . . . . .	451, 452, 453, 454
General and Promiscuous Exercises . . . . .	455
Of the Understanding of Languages . . . . .	ib.
Of Study . . . . .	456
Indolence Characterised . . . . .	458

---

## SECT. XI.

Scheme for parsing a French Sentence . . . . .	458
Treatise upon French Versification . . . . .	461

# ALPHABETICAL ARRANGEMENT

OF

## IRREGULAR VERBS,

WITH REFERENCES TO THE PLACES IN WHICH THEY, OR SIMILAR  
VERBS, ARE CONJUGATED IN THIS GRAMMAR;

WITH REMARKS.

A.			
English.	French.	Conjugated like	Page.
To Acquire . . . .	Acquérir . . .	. . . . .	230
Avoid, <sup>1</sup> or Shun	Fuir <sup>2</sup> . . . .	. . . . .	238
Abstain . . . .	S'Abstenir . .	} Tenir . . .	246
Attain to . . . .	Parvenir à . .		
Anticipate . . .	Prévenir . . .		
Assault . . . . .	Assaillir . . .	Tressaillir	247 248
be Able . . . . .	Pouvoir <sup>3</sup> . . .	. . . . .	259
Absolve . . . . .	Absoudre . . .	. . . . .	271
Abate . . . . .	Rabattre . . .	Battre . . .	272
Acknowledge, or know again . . . }	Reconnoître . .	} Connoître	278
Accrue . . . . .	Accroître . . .		
Appear . . . . .	Paroître . . .		
Appear, to give evidence . . . }	Comparoître . .		

<sup>1</sup> *Eviter*, to avoid, and *assister*, to assist, are regular verbs of the First Conjugation.

<sup>2</sup> See Pret. p. 305, and Imperfect of Subjunct. p. 306.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 259 and 260.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>To Ask too much</b> . . . .	Surfaire	Faire	290
Admit . . . .	Admettre	Mettre	294
Anoint . . . .	Oindre <sup>1</sup>	Craindre	284
Apprehend, or un- derstand . . . .	Comprendre	Prendre	305
Abstract . . . .	Abstraire	Traire	309
Assist <sup>2</sup> . . . .	Secourir	Courir	232
Agree . . . .	Consentir	Mentir	239
be Acquainted with . . . .	Connoître		278
be Afraid . . . .	Craindre		284
fall Asleep . . . .	S'Endormir	Dormir.	234
fall Asleep again	Se Rendormir		

## B.

<b>To Boil</b> . . . .	Bouillir	Bouillir <sup>3</sup>	231
Boil again . . . .	Rebouillir		
Belie . . . .	Démentir	Mentir	239
Belong . . . .	Appartenir	Tenir	246
Become of . . . .	Devenir <sup>4</sup>		
Become, fit, &c.	Convenir		
Befall . . . .	Survenir	Battre	272
Beat . . . .	Battre		
Beat again . . . .	Rebattre		
Beat down (abate)	Rabattre		
Bray . . . .	Braire <sup>5</sup>		274
Believe . . . .	Croire		285
Bake, or Boil, of- ten Englished to do . . . .	Cuire	Conduire	276
Bake again, do again . . . .	Recuire		
Bring to, or Re- duce to . . . .	Réduire		
Build <sup>6</sup> , or Con- struct . . . .	Construire		

1 See Remark, p. 303.

2 See Note 1 in preceding page.

3 See p. 232.

4 See Note \*, p. 249.

5 See p. 274 and 275.

6 *Bâtir*, to build, and *Bannir*, to banish, are regulars of the Second Conjugation.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Banish <sup>1</sup> . . .	Proscrire . . .	Ecrire . . .	289
be Born . . .	Naître . . .	} Naître . . .	302
be Born again . . .	Renaître . . .		

## C.

To Conquer . . .	Conquérir . . .	Acquérir . . .	230
Concur . . .	Concourir . . .	Courir . . .	232
Contradict or be- lie . . .	} Démentir . . .	} Mentir . . .	239
Consent . . .			
Cover . . .	Couvrir . . .	} Offrir . . .	241
Cover again . . .	Recouvrir . . .		
Contain . . .	Contenir . . .	} Tenir . . .	246
Come . . .	Venir <sup>2</sup> . . .		
Come back . . .	Revenir . . .	} Servir . . .	245
Clothe . . .	Vêtir . . .		
Come to, Befall . . .	Survenir . . .	} Conclure . . .	275
Clear a table . . .	Desservir . . .		
Conclude . . .	Conclure . . .	} Conduire . . .	276
Conduct, Lead, or Carry . . .	Conduire . . .		
Construct, Build . . .	Construire . . .	} Confire . . .	277
Circumcise . . .	Circoncire <sup>3</sup> . . .		
Chance, or Fallout . . .	échoir <sup>4</sup> . . .	Déchoir . . .	257
Contradict . . .	Contredire <sup>5</sup> . . .	} Dire . . .	286
Curse . . .	Maudire . . .		
Constrain . . .	} Contraindre . . .	} Craindre . . .	284
Compel . . .			
Complain . . .	} éclore <sup>6</sup> . . .		288
Come to life, as from an egg, &c. }			
Counterfeit . . .	Contrefaire . . .	Faire . . .	280
Compromise . . .	Compromettre }	} Mettre . . .	294
Commit . . .	Commettre . . .		
Chide . . .	Reprendre . . .	Prendre . . .	305

1 See Note 6 in preceding page.

2 See Remark, p. 249.

3 See Participle Pass. p. 275. 4 See Participle Act. &amp; Pass. p. 257.

5 See Note, p. 287.

6 See p. 288.



<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Conquer . . .	Vaincre <sup>1</sup> . . .	} Vaincre	311
Convince . . .	Convaincre . . .		

## D.

To Discourse . . .	Discourir . . .	Courir . . .	232
Die . . .	Mourir . . .	} Mourir . . .	240
be Dying . . .	Se Mourir . . .		
Detain . . .	Détenir . . .	} Tenir . . .	246
Disagree . . .	Disconvenir . . .		
Discover . . .	Découvrir . . .	Offrir . . .	241
Distribute . . .	Départir . . .	Mentir . . .	239
Dissolve . . .	Dissoudre <sup>2</sup> . . .	Absoudre . . .	271
Drink . . .	Boire <sup>3</sup> . . .	. . .	273
Debate . . .	Débattre . . .	Battre . . .	272
Decay . . .	Déchoir . . .	. . .	257
Do an ill office . . .	Desservir . . .	Servir . . .	245
Deduct . . .	Déduire . . .	} Conduire . . .	276
Destroy . . .	Détruire . . .		
Do over, with mor- tar, &c. . .	Enduire . . .		
Decrease . . .	Décroître . . .	} Connoître . . .	278
Disappear . . .	Disparoître . . .		
Describe . . .	Décrire . . .	Ecrire . . .	289
Do . . .	Faire . . .	} Faire . . .	290
Do again . . .	Refaire . . .		
Defeat . . .	Défaire . . .	} Craindre . . .	284
Dissemble . . .	Feindre . . .		
Dye . . .	Teindre . . .		
Draw, Design . . .	Peindre . . .	} Mettre . . .	294
Defer, Put off, or Deliver up . . .	Remettre . . .		
Displease . . .	Déplaire . . .	Plaire . . .	304
Distract . . .	Distraire . . .	Traire . . .	309

## E.

To Entertain . . .	Entretenir . . .	Tenir . . .	246
Exclude . . .	Exclure <sup>4</sup> . . .	Conclure . . .	275

1 See Note, p. 311.

2 See p. 272.

3 See N. B. p. 274.

4 See p. 290.

English.	French.	Conjugated like	Page
To Exact . . . .	Surfaire . . . .	Faire . .	290
Enjoin . . . .	Enjoindre . .	} Craindre . .	284
Enclose . . . .	} Enceindre . .		
Encompass . . . .			
Elect . . . .	Elire . . . .	Lire . .	292
Extract . . . .	Extraire . . .	Traire . .	309

## F.

To Fetch . . . .	Quérir <sup>1</sup> . . .	Acquérir . .	230
Flee, or Fly . . .	Fuir <sup>2</sup> . . . .	. . . .	238
Feel . . . .	Sentir . . . .	} Mentir . .	239
Foresee, or have a foresight of . . .	Pressentir . .		
Foresee . . . .	Prévoir <sup>3</sup> . .	Voir . .	263
Fit or fit well . .	Seoir <sup>4</sup> . . . .	Asseoir . .	254
Fight . . . .	Combattre . .	Battre . .	272
Fear . . . .	Craindre . . .	} Craindre . .	284
Force . . . .	Contraindre . .		
Feign . . . .	Feindre . . .	} Dire <sup>5</sup> . .	286
Forbid . . . .	Interdire . .		
Foretell . . . .	Prédire . . .	} Déchoir . .	257
Fall out, or Hap- pen . . . .	échoir <sup>6</sup> . . .		
Fry . . . .	Frir <sup>7</sup> . . . .	. . . .	292
Feed, or Graze . .	Pâître . . . .	Connoître . .	278
Follow . . . .	Suivre . . . .	} Suivre . .	308
Follow from . . .	S <sup>e</sup> Ensuivre . .		
Fine-draw . . . .	Rentraire . . .	Traire . .	309

## G.

To Go . . . .	Aller . . . .	} Aller . .	227
Go away . . . .	S'en Aller . .		
Gather . . . .	Cueillir . . .	} Cueillir . .	233
Gather together . .	Recueillir . .		
Go out . . . .	Sortir . . . .	Mentir . .	290

1 See p. 231.

2 See p. 238, 239.

3 See p. 264.

4 See the verb To Become, &amp;c.

5 See p. 256.

6 See Note, p. 287.

7 See p. 257.

8 See p. 292.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Grow . . . .	Croître . . . .	Connoître	278
Grow less . . . .	Décroître . . . .		
Grow again . . . .	Recroître . . . .		
Graze . . . . .	Paître . . . . .		
Glitter . . . . .	Reluire <sup>1</sup> . . . .	Conduire	276
Glimpse, or to } have a glimpse of }	Entrevoir . . . .	Voir . . . .	263
Grind . . . . .	Moudre . . . . .	Moudre	295
Grind again . . . .	Remoudre . . . .		
Give other clothes	Revêtir . . . . .		250
Gird . . . . .	Ceindre . . . . .	Craindre	284

## H.

To Hold . . . . .	Tenir . . . . .	Tenir . . . .	246
Happen unexpectedly . . . .	Survenir . . . .		
Hear . . . . .	Oùir <sup>2</sup> . . . . .		242
Hatch . . . . .	Eclorre <sup>3</sup> . . . . .		288
Hurt . . . . .	Nuire <sup>4</sup> . . . . .	Conduire	276
Humour . . . . .	Complaire . . . .	Plaire . . . .	304
Hold one's tongue	Se Taire . . . . .		
Hear of . . . . .	{ Apprendre des } nouvelles }	Prendre	305

## I.

To Incur . . . . .	Encourir . . . . .	Courir . . . .	232
Impart . . . . .	Départir . . . . .	Mentir . . . .	239
Infringe . . . . .	Contrevenir . . .	Tenir . . . .	246
Intervene . . . . .	Intervenir . . . .		
Invest . . . . .	Revêtir . . . . .		250
Interdict . . . . .	Interdire <sup>5</sup> . . . .	Dire . . . . .	286
Inscribe . . . . .	Inscrire . . . . .	Ecrire . . . .	289
Induce . . . . .	Induire . . . . .	Conduire	276
Instruct . . . . .	Instruire <sup>7</sup> . . . .		
Introduce . . . . .	Introduire . . . .		
Include . . . . .	Comprendre . . . .	Prendre	305

1 See p. 293.

2 See p. 242.

3 See p. 288.

4 See p. 303.

5 See Note, p. 287.

## J.

English.	French.	Conjugated like	Page
To Jut, Jet out, a term in Architecture only . . . . .	Saillir <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	Tressaillir	247
Join . . . . .	Joindre . . . . .	Craindre	284

## K.

To Keep . . . . .	Tenir . . . . .		246
Know somebody	Connoître . . . . .	} Connoître	278
Know again . . . . .	Reconnoître . . . . .		
Know something	Savoir <sup>2</sup> . . . . .		260

## L.

To Lie . . . . .	Mentir . . . . .	} Mentir .	239
give one the Lie . . . . .	Démentir . . . . .		
Lead . . . . .	Conduire . . . . .	} Conduire	276
Lead again . . . . .	Racconduire . . . . .		
Learn . . . . .	Apprendre . . . . .	Prendre	305
Leap for . . . . .	Tressaillir . . . . .		247
Laugh . . . . .	Rire . . . . .		307
Live . . . . .	Vivre . . . . .		312

## M.

To Maintain . . . . .	Maintenir . . . . .	} Tenir .	246
	Soutenir . . . . .		
Move . . . . .	Mouvoir . . . . .	} Mouvoir	258
Move, or Stir up	émouvoir . . . . .		
Mistake, or be de- ceived . . . . .	Méconnoître, or Se Méprendre,	Connoître Prendre	278 305
Make . . . . .	Faire . . . . .	} Faire .	290
Make up again . . . . .	Refaire . . . . .		
Mimic . . . . .	Contrefaire . . . . .		
Milk . . . . .	Traire . . . . .		309

## N.

To make a great Noise . . . . .	Bruire <sup>3</sup> . . . . .		275
------------------------------------	-------------------------------	--	-----

1 See p. 248, and N. B. p. 249.

2 See Notes, p. 261.

3 See p. 275.

English.	Q. French.	Conjugated like	Page
To Overtake . . . .	Atteindre . . . .	Craindre	284
Offer . . . . .	Offrir . . . . .	} Offrir . . . . .	241
Open . . . . .	Ouvrir . . . . .		
Obtain . . . . .	Obtenir . . . . .	Tenir . . . . .	246
do an ill office . . . .	Desservir . . . .	Servir . . . . .	245
Open as an oyster	éclore <sup>1</sup> . . . . .		288
Outlaw . . . . .	Prescrire . . . .	Ecrire . . . . .	289
Omit . . . . .	Omettre . . . . .	Mettre . . . . .	294
Outlive . . . . .	Survivre . . . . .	Vivre . . . . .	312
Oblige . . . . .	Astreindre <sup>2</sup>	Craindre	284

## P.

To Prevent . . . . .	Prévenir . . . . .	} Tenir . . . . .	246
Proceed . . . . .	Provenir . . . . .		
Prescribe . . . . .	Prescrire . . . . .	} Ecrire . . . . .	289
Proscribe . . . . .	Proscrire . . . .		
Prevail . . . . .	Prévaloir <sup>3</sup> . . . .	Valoir . . . . .	261
Provide . . . . .	Pourvoir <sup>4</sup> . . . .	Voir . . . . .	263
Pull down . . . . .	Abattre . . . . .	Battre . . . . .	272
Preserve . . . . .	Confire . . . . .		277
Put out . . . . .	éteindre . . . . .	} Craindre	284
Pretend . . . . .	Feindre . . . . .		
Paint . . . . .	Peindre . . . . .		
Pity . . . . .	Plaindre . . . . .	} Faire . . . . .	290
Part with . . . . .	Se Défaire . . . .		
Put . . . . .	Mettre <sup>5</sup> . . . . .	} Mettre . . . . .	294
Permit . . . . .	Permettre . . . . .		
Promise . . . . .	Promettre <sup>6</sup> . . . .		
Put back again . . . .	} Remettre . . . . .	}	
Put off . . . . .			
Prejudice . . . . .	} Prévenir . . . . .	} Tenir . . . . .	246
Prepossess . . . . .			
Produce . . . . .	Produire . . . . .	Conduire	276
Pursue . . . . .	Poursuivre . . . .	Suivre . . . . .	303
Please . . . . .	Plaire . . . . .		304

1 See p. 288.

2 Grows obsolete, p. 272.

3 See p. 262.

4 See p. 264.

5 See Note, p. 294.

6 See Note, p. 295.

<i>English.</i>	<i>R.</i> <i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Require . . .	Requérir . . .	Acquérir	230
get Rid of . . .	Se Défaire . . .	Faire . . .	290
Run . . .	Courir . . .	} Courir . . .	232
Run to . . .	Accourir . . .		
Run over . . .	Parcourir . . .		
have Recourse to . . .	Recourir . . .		
Run away . . .	Fuir <sup>1</sup> . . .		238
Retain . . .	Retenir . . .	} Tenir . . .	246
Return . . .	Revenir . . .		
Remember, or . . .	Se Souvenir <sup>2</sup> . . .		
Remind . . .	Se Ressouvenir	} Mentir . . .	239
Recollect . . .			
Relieve . . .	Subvenir . . .		
Resent . . .	Ressentir . . .		
Reply . . .	Repartir . . .	} Se Repentir	
Repent . . .	Se Repentir . . .		
Roar . . .	Bruire <sup>3</sup> . . .		275
Resolve . . .	Résoudre <sup>4</sup> . . .	Absoudre	271
Retract . . .	Se Dédire <sup>5</sup> . . .	Dire . . .	286
Recant . . .			
Read . . .	Lire . . .	} Lire . . .	292
Read again . . .	Relire . . .		
Remove . . .	Démètre . . .	} Mettre . . .	294
Resign . . .	Se Démètre . . .		
Rise . . . as	Naître . . .	} Naître . . .	302
Revive } flowers			
Rebuke . . .	Reprendre . . .	Prendre	305
Reduce . . .	Réduire . . .	Conduire	276
Restrain . . .	Restraindre . . .	} Craindre . . .	284
Reach . . .	Atteindre . . .		
Revive . . .	Revivre . . .	Vivre . . .	312
Recover . . .			

## S.

To Succour . . .	Secourir . . .	Courir	232
Sleep . . .	Dormir . . .	} Dormir	234
make Sleep . . .	Endormir . . .		

1 See p. 238, 239, Pret. and Imp.

2 See Note †, p. 249.

3 See p. 275.

4 See p. 272.

5 See Note \*, p. 267.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Shun . . . . .	Fuir . . . . .		238
Suffer . . . . .	Souffrir . . . . .	Offrir . . . . .	241
Serve . . . . .	Servir . . . . .		245
Support . . . . .	Soutenir . . . . .	} Tenir . . . . .	246
Suit . . . . .	Convénir . . . . .		
Start, Startle . . . . .	Tressaillir . . . . .		247
Stir up . . . . .	émouvoir . . . . .	Mouvoir . . . . .	258
See . . . . .	Voir . . . . .	} Voir . . . . .	263
See again . . . . .	Revoir . . . . .		
Solve . . . . .	Soudre <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	Absoudre . . . . .	271
Sew . . . . .	} Coudre . . . . .	} Coudre . . . . .	280
Stitch . . . . .			
Sew again . . . . .	Reoudre . . . . .	} Moudre . . . . .	295
Sharpen . . . . .	Emoudre . . . . .		
Set out . . . . .	Partir . . . . .	} Mentir . . . . .	239
Set out again . . . . .	Repartir . . . . .		
be Sensible of . . . . .	Ressentir . . . . .		
Smell . . . . .	Sentir . . . . .		
Struggle . . . . .	Se Débattre . . . . .	Battre . . . . .	272
Sit down . . . . .	Asseoir <sup>2</sup> . . . . .	} Asseoir . . . . .	254
Sit down again . . . . .	Se Rasseoir . . . . .		
Supersede . . . . .	Suscevoir <sup>3</sup> . . . . .		256
Say . . . . .	Dire . . . . .	} Dire . . . . .	286
Say again . . . . .	Redire . . . . .		
Slander . . . . .	} Médire <sup>4</sup> . . . . .	} Eclorre . . . . .	288
Speak ill of . . . . .			
Shut, or close . . . . .	Clorre . . . . .		
Shut, or . . . . .	} Enclorre <sup>5</sup> . . . . .	} Eclorre . . . . .	288
Surround with walls, &c. . . . .			
Subscribe . . . . .	Souscrire . . . . .	Ecrire . . . . .	289
Satisfy . . . . .	Satisfaire . . . . .	Faire . . . . .	290
Shine . . . . .	Luire <sup>6</sup> . . . . .	Conduire . . . . .	276
Submit . . . . .	Soumettre . . . . .	Mettre . . . . .	294
Surprise . . . . .	Surprendre . . . . .	Prendre . . . . .	305
Smile . . . . .	Sourire . . . . .	Rire . . . . .	307

1 See p. 271.

2 See p. 255.

3 See p. 256.

4 See Note, p. 287.

5 See p. 288.

6 See p. 276.

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Conjugated like</i>	<i>Page</i>
To Seduce . . . . .	Séduire . . . . .	Conduire	276
Suffice, or be Sufficient . . . . }	Suffire <sup>1</sup> . . . . .	Confire	277
Seem . . . . .	Paroître . . . . .	Connoître	278
Subtract . . . . .	Soustraire . . . . .	Traire	309

## T.

To Tell . . . . .	Dire . . . . .	Dire	286
Tell again . . . . .	Redire . . . . .		
Transcribe . . . . .	Transcrire . . . . .	Ecrire	289
Turn out . . . . .	Démètre . . . . .	Mettre	294
Transmit . . . . .	Transmettre . . . . .		
Take . . . . .	Prendre . . . . .	Prendre	305
Take again . . . . .	Reprendre . . . . .		
Translate . . . . .	Traduire . . . . .	Conduire	276
Throw down . . . . .	Abattre . . . . .	Battre	272

## U.

To Unsew . . . . .	Découdre . . . . .	Coudre	280
Use, or make use of	Se Servir . . . . .	Servir	245
Uncover . . . . .	Découvrir . . . . .	Offrir	241
Unsay . . . . .	Se Dédire <sup>2</sup> . . . . .	Dire	286
Undo . . . . .	Défaire . . . . .	Faire	290
Undo again . . . . .	Redéfaire . . . . .		
Understand . . . . .	Comprendre . . . . .	Prendre	305
Unlearn . . . . .	Désapprendre . . . . .		
Undertake . . . . .	Entreprendre . . . . .		

## V.

To Vanquish . . . . .	Vaincre <sup>3</sup> . . . . .		311
-----------------------	--------------------------------	--	-----

## W.

To Welcome . . . . .	Accueillir . . . . .	Cueillir	233
be Worth . . . . .	Valoir . . . . .		261
Wish, or be Willing	Vouloir <sup>4</sup> . . . . .		264
Write . . . . .	écrire . . . . .	Ecrire	289
Write again . . . . .	Récrire . . . . .		
Whet . . . . .	Emoudre . . . . .	Moudre	295

1 See p. 308.

3 See Note \*, p. 311.

2 See Note \*, p. 287.

4 See p. 265, 266.



**AN EXPLANATION OF THE ABBREVIATIONS MADE USE OF IN  
THE FOLLOWING WORK.**

m.	Noun masculine.
f.	Noun feminine.
pl.	Plural.
adj.	Noun adjective.
pro.	Pronoun.
v.	Verb.
p. act.	Participle active.
p. p.	Participle passive.
p.	Preposition.
adv.	Adverb.
c.	Conjunction.
int.	Interjection.
—	The English word that has this mark underneath, is not to be expressed in French.

The figures, <sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup>, <sup>3</sup>, &c. direct to the arrangement of the words in the French sentence.

Two words having the same figure are expressed by the French word placed under one of them.

Two or three words between parentheses ( ), are expressed by the French under them, or have been previously expressed.

## FRENCH ALPHABET.

Roman Letters.	Italic Letters.	Old Pro.	New Pro.
A	A	ah	ah
B	B	bay	bet
C	C	say	ke and ce
D	D	day	de
E	E	a	a
F	F	eff	fe
G	G	jay*	ghe and ge
H	H	ash	he
I	I	ee	es
J	J	jee*	je*
K	K	kah	kah
L	L	elt	le
M	M	etm	me
N	N	enn	ne
O	O	o	o
P	P	pay	pe
Q	Q	kut	ke
R	R	airr	re
S	S	ess	se and ze
T	T	tay	te
U	U	ut	uf
V	V	vay	ve
X	X	eeks	ke-se and ze
Y	Y	ee graik	ee graik
Z	Z	zaid	ze

\* The two consonants *g* and *j* are sounded in the Alphabet like *s* in *pleasure* or *s* in *asure*.

† *U* has no similar sound in English, and must be learned from a master.

‡ In the new pronunciation *e* after each consonant is sounded as in the English word *barber*, faintly sounding the *r*.

# A PRACTICAL

## FRENCH GRAMMAR.

---

### SECTION I.

**GRAMMAR** is the art of speaking and writing in any language with propriety; or, it is the art of rightly expressing our thoughts by words.

Grammar is of two kinds, general and particular. Universal grammar considers language in itself, explains the principles which are alike common to every tongue, and distinguishes, with precision, between those particulars which are essential and those which are only accidental. Particular grammar applies these common principles to a particular language, and furnishes certain rules and observations which are, either mediately or immediately, deducible from its common principles.

A grammar of the French tongue must be formed agreeably to the established usage, and those particular modes of expression, to which custom has given its sanction. It has therefore for its object, in common with all other grammars, the consideration of letters, syllables, words, sentences, &c.

**ALPHABET**;—is composed of twenty-five letters, of which words are formed; five of them, *a, e, i, o, u*, are distinguished by the name of vowels, which form a perfect sound of themselves. The twenty other letters *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, y, z*, are called consonants, and cannot be pronounced but when joined with vowels, except *y*, which has often the sound of double *i*, and of which some make a sixth vowel.

**VOWELS**, three sorts ;—**SIMPLE**, *a, e, i, o, u*, which are subdivided into short and long, the sound of which is more prolonged and deeper.

**COMPOUND**, of two or three simple vowels, as *ai, ei, oi, ui, au, eu, ou, æ, œu* : *ai* has the sound of *e* mute in *faisant*,\* and the sound of *e* close in *je lirai*, as well as in all the verbs in the first person singular of the future.

**NASAL**, when they are joined to *m* or *n*, and when they form only one sound, as *an, am, en, em, in, im, ain, ein*.

**DIPHTHONG** ;—Is the union of several vowels, the pronunciation of which causes two sounds to be heard by a single impulse of the voice. *Dieu, yeux, niais, pion, ouïe, mien*, are diphthongs : yet, *Caen, eau, paon, craie*, are not so, because they are pronounced *Can, ô, pan, cré*.

**ACCENTS**, three sorts ;—The acute', the grave', and the circumflex ^, serve to modify the sound of the vowels ; the office of the latter is to render long the vowels which are affected by it ; thus pronounce *â, ê, î, ô, û*, by a greater opening of the mouth, almost as if it were *aa, ee, ii, oo, uu*. It is thus we write *âge*, instead of *aage* ; this is also the reason why it is placed over the vowels that were formerly followed by an *s*, which has been dropped, since it is no longer pronounced ; as in *asne, beste*, in which the suppression of the *s*, requires that we should write *âne, bête*, in order to shew that *â* and *ê* are long.

**KINDS of E**, five ;—**TWO KINDS**, *Mute* : 1st.—One whose dull sound is almost null in *brave, encore*, which are pronounced no otherwise than *brav, encor*.

2d.—The other, the sound of which, although obscure, can be prolonged, nearly as the sound of *eu*, in *je, me, te, revenir, redemander*.

3d.—**CLOSE**, by the accent *Acute*, in *bonté* ; also *ez* is equivalent to *é*, as in *voyez, lisez, touchez, &c.*

\* See *Faire*, page 290.

4th.—**OPEN**, by the accent *Grave*, in *accès, sucoès, nêfle*, which accent is suppressed in *greffe, sans cesse, abbessé*.

5th.—**VERY OPEN**, by the accent *Circumflex*, in *être, tête, tempête*, which were formerly pronounced and written *estre, teste, &c.*

**MIDDLE**, followed by a double consonant, and the sound of which is between that of *é* close and *è* open, in *maisonnette, musette, poulette*.

The **DIÆRESIS**, (¨)—Which is placed over the vowels *ë, î, û*, and causes them to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel as in *poëte, aïeul, Saül*, and may be ranked among the accents.

The **CEDILLA**, (¸)—A little dash, which is put under the *c*, is also a sort of accent, since it serves to modify the hard pronunciation which it would otherwise have before the vowels *a, o, u*, and to change it into that of *S*; it is thus we pronounce it in *françois, façon, reçu*.

The **APOSTROPHE**, (') ;—Is only a comma put over the place which the vowel *e* or *a* ought to occupy, which is suppressed when the word following begins with a vowel or an *h* not aspirate;\* thus, instead of *le esprit*,

### \* AN ALPHABETICAL LIST

of such French Words as have their initial *h* mute.

<b>HABILE</b> ,	<b>CLEVER</b>	harmonie,	harmony
habilement,	cleverly	hebdomadaire,	weekly
habileté,	cleverness	Hébraïque,	Hebraick
habiller,	to clothe	Hébreu,	Hebrew
habillement,	dress	hécatombe,	an Hecatomb
habit,	a coat	hégire	hégira
habiter,	to inhabit	hélas !	alas !
habitable,	inhabitable	Hélicon,	Helicon
habitant,	inhabitant	héliotrope,	turn-sol
habitude,	custom	hémisphère,	hemisphere
habituel,	habitual	hémistiche,	hemistich
habituer,	to use	hémorrhagie,	bloody-flux
haleine,	breath	hémorroïdes,	piles
hameçon,	a fishing hook	hépatique,	hepaticæ

*la ambition, and le homme, we must pronounce and write l'esprit, l'ambition, l'homme. But when the h is*

herbage,	<i>herbage, pasture</i>	hôpital,	<i>hospital</i>
herbe,	<i>herb or grass</i>	horizon,	<i>horizon</i>
herboriste,	<i>herbalist</i>	horloge,	<i>a town clock</i>
héréditaire,	<i>hereditary</i>	horloger,	<i>watch-maker</i>
hérésie,	<i>heresy</i>	hormis,	<i>except</i>
hérétique,	<i>heretic</i>	horoscope,	<i>horoscope</i>
héritage,	<i>inheritance</i>	horreur,	<i>horror</i>
hériter,	<i>to inherit</i>	horrible,	<i>horrid</i>
héritier,	<i>an heir</i>	horriblement,	<i>horribly</i>
heritière,	<i>an heiress</i>	hospitalier,	<i>hospitable</i>
hermine,	<i>ermine</i>	hospitalité,	<i>hospitality</i>
hermite,	<i>an hermit</i>	hostie,	<i>host or victim</i>
hermitage,	<i>hermitage</i>	hostilité,	<i>hostility</i>
héroïne,*	<i>an heroine</i>	hôte,	<i>landlord</i>
héroïque,	<i>heroical</i>	hôtesse,	<i>landlady</i>
héroïsme,	<i>heroism</i>	hôtel,	<i>a hotel or great house</i>
hésiter,	<i>to hesitate</i>	hôtelier,	<i>inn-keeper</i>
hésitation,	<i>hesitation</i>	hôtellerie,	<i>an inn</i>
heur,	<i>luck</i>	huile,	<i>oil</i>
heure,	<i>hour</i>	huilier,	<i>oil-cruet</i>
heureux,	<i>happy</i>	huissier,	<i>usher or tip staff</i>
heureusement,	<i>happily</i>	huitre,	<i>oyster</i>
hexagone,	<i>an hexagon</i>	humain,	<i>humane</i>
hexamètre,	<i>hexameter</i>	humainement,	<i>humanely</i>
hiatus,	<i>hiatus, a gap</i>	humaniser,	<i>to civilise</i>
hier,	<i>yesterday</i>	humanité,	<i>humanity</i>
hiéroglyphe,	<i>hieroglyphic</i>	humble,	<i>humble</i>
hirondelle,	<i>a swallow</i>	humblement,	<i>humbly</i>
histoire,	<i>history</i>	humectation,	<i>moistening</i>
historien,	<i>historian</i>	humecter,	<i>to moisten</i>
historique,	<i>historical</i>	humeur,	<i>humour</i>
histrion,	<i>a buffoon</i>	humide,	<i>damp, moist</i>
hiver,	<i>winter</i>	humidité,	<i>humidity</i>
hiverner,	<i>to winter</i>	humiliant,	<i>mortifying</i>
holocauste,	<i>burnt sacrifice</i>	humiliation,	<i>humiliation</i>
ombre, (jeu)	<i>ombre</i>	humilier,	<i>to humble</i>
homélie,	<i>an homily</i>	humilité,	<i>humility</i>
homicide,	<i>an homicide</i>	hyacinthe,	<i>hyacinth</i>
hommage,	<i>homage</i>	hydre,	<i>hydra</i>
homme,	<i>man</i>	hydromel,	<i>mead</i>
honnête,	<i>honest</i>	hydropique,	<i>hydropic</i>
honnêtement,	<i>honestly</i>	hydropisie,	<i>dropsy</i>
honnêteté,	<i>honesty</i>	hymen,	<i>hymen</i>
honneur,	<i>honour</i>	hymne,	<i>hymn</i>
honorable,	<i>honorable</i>	hyperbole,	<i>hyperbole</i>
honoraire,	<i>honorary</i>	hypocondre,	<i>hypocondriac</i>
honorer,	<i>to honour</i>	hypocrisie,	<i>hypocrisy</i>

\* The *h* in all this family is only aspirated in *héros*.

aspirate, the article remains entire ; we must not say *l'héros*, but pronounce *le héros, du héros, au héros*.

VARIATION IN THE PRONUNCIATION OF CONSONANTS ;—C is pronounced hard like *k* before the vowels *a, o, u*, in *cocarde, cube* ; like *s* before *e, i*, in *écité*. There are even some words in which it is pronounced like *g*, as in *second, &c.* G is pronounced hard before *a, o, u* ; like *j*, before *e, i* ; when we wish to modify its pronunciation before *a, o, u*, an *e* is placed after it, as in, *il gagea, nageoire* ; when on the contrary we wish to have it pronounced hard before *e, i*, an *u* is placed after it, as in *guérir, guide*. H is of two sorts, aspirated as in *haïr, envahir* ; then the consonants by which it is preceded are not sounded ; it is called mute, when it is not pronounced at all, as in *homme, héroïne*. The *h* of *héros* is aspirate, that of its derivatives is not so. Q when not the last letter of a word, as in *cing*, is never used without being followed by *u*, which gives it the pronunciation of *k* as in *qui, quelconque* ; yet in several words *u* has retained its ancient sound of *ou*, and then *qu* is pronounced like *kou*, as in *aquatique, équation*. S is pronounced hard in *salut, sénat* ; but between two vowels, it takes the pronunciation of *z*, as in *viser, raison, &c.* T followed by *i* and another vowel, is pronounced like *c*, as in *partial, partiel, portion* ; but if *ti* is preceded by *s* or *x*, or if it is at the beginning of a word, it is pronounced hard, as in *tirer, question, mixtion*. X is pronounced like *cs* in *fixer, taxer* ; like *gz* in *examen, ex-*

hypocrite,  
hypothèque,  
hypothéquer,

hypocrite || hypothèse,  
mortgage || hysope,  
to mortgage || hystérique,

hypothesis  
hysop  
hysterie

In a familiar discourse, the letter *h* is not aspirated in the following words, viz. *Hanovre, Hollande, and Hongrie*, when either of them is preceded by the particle *de* ; for though we always say *le Hanovre, la Hollande* and *la Hongrie*, yet it is usual to say and write *l'Electorat d'Hanovre, la Reine d'Hongrie, la toile d'Hollande*, and the like. As to other national and proper names, the initial *h* is aspirated in most of them ; as in *Hainaut, Hambourgh, Havanne, Henri, &c.* but in *Hamilton, Harcourt, Hector, Hélène, Hercule, Hérode, Homère, Horace, and Hyppolite*, it is mute.

*ample* ; and like *s* in *six*, *dix*, *soixante*. *Ch* is generally pronounced like *sh*, as in *chat* ; yet it is pronounced often like *k* : *Christ*, *orchestre*, *bacchante*, are examples. *Rh*, *th*, *ph*, are pronounced like *r*, *t*, *f*, in *rhume*, *thème*, *philosophe*, which are pronounced *rume*, *tème*, *filosofo*.

A SYLLABLE, whether composed of one or more letters, requires, in the pronunciation, no more than a single impulse of the voice : ex. *ba*, *me*, *moi*, &c.

A WORD may consist of one syllable, or of many compacted into one meaning ; for, a word is the smallest part of speech which is in itself significant : ex. *mon*, *my* ; *livre*, book, &c.

A SENTENCE, OR PHRASE, is an assemblage of words arranged in their proper order, forming a sense either more or less complete : ex.

<i>Je suis votre ami,</i>	I am your friend.
<i>J'écrivis hier à votre tante,</i>	I yesterday wrote to your aunt.

A PERIOD may consist of two or three sentences joined together, so that they depend on one another to form a complete sense. Each of the sentences forming part of a period is called a member of the period : ex.

<i>Les grands hommes sont rares ;</i>	Great men are scarce ; we
<i>on doit les respecter, et l'on</i>	ought to respect them,
<i>devroit toujours travailler à</i>	and constantly endeavour to
<i>se rendre semblable à eux.</i>	resemble them.

A DISCOURSE, OR SPEECH, is an assemblage of sentences (or phrases) and periods, joined together, and arranged according to the rules of the language.

### KINDS OF WORDS.

There are, in the French tongue, nine different sorts of words, which are generally called the nine parts of speech, viz.

- |                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. L'ARTICLE,          | ARTICLE.            |
| 2. LE NOM ET ADJECTIF, | NOUN AND ADJECTIVE. |
| 3. LE PRONOM,          | PRONOUN.            |
| 4. LE VERBE,           | VERB.               |



5. LE PARTICIPE,	PARTICIPE.
6. L'ADVERBE,	ADVERB.
7. LA PREPOSITION,	PREPOSITION.
8. LA CONJONCTION,	CONJUNCTION.
9. L'INTERJECTION,	INTERJECTION.

Five of them are declinable ; that is to say, the radical part of the word remaining the same, the other parts, but especially the termination, will admit of several variations. These declinable words are, the article, noun and adjective, pronoun, verb, and participle.

The four last, as they never vary their terminations, are therefore called indeclinable.

### GENERAL EXPLANATION.

The ARTICLES are certain minute words, which, joined to nouns, determine the extent of their signification, and which, in French, denote their gender, number, and case, corresponding to the English words, *the, of the, from the, and to the*. These in French, are

<i>Le, la, les,</i>	The
<i>De, du, de la, des,</i>	Of or from the.
<i>A, au, à la, aux,</i>	To the.

The NOUN, in general, is a word which is used to name or qualify every thing which is the object of discourse : ex.

<i>Papier,</i>	Paper.	<i>Bon,</i>	Good.
<i>Plume,</i>	Pen.	<i>Petit,</i>	Little.
<i>Pain,</i>	Bread.	<i>Mauvais,</i>	Bad, &c.

The PRONOUN is a word commonly substituted in the place of the noun, to avoid its too frequent repetition : ex.

*J'ai vu M. votre père, et lui ai parlé,* I saw your father, and spoke to him.

In this instance the word *lui*, to him, is put to avoid the repetition of the word *père*, father.

The VERB is a word which either expresses the state of the subject, or an action done by the subject, or the action received or suffered by the subject : ex.

*Mon frère est malade,*  
*Ma sœur écrit une lettre,*  
*Votre cousin est punie,*

My brother is ill.  
 My sister writes a letter.  
 Your cousin is punished.

The verb is varied by modes, tenses, persons, and numbers.

The PARTICIPLE partakes both of the nature of the verb and the noun adjective : ex.

*Ayant,* Having  
*Donnant,* Giving.

*Aimé,* Loved.  
*Puni,* Punished, &c.

The ADVERB is sometimes joined to the noun, but more frequently to the verb, whence it derives its name. The use of the adverb is, to determine the signification of the noun or verb, or express some particular modification or circumstance of the action or quality : ex.

*Je vous aime sincèrement,* I love you *sincerely*.  
*Venez demain,* Come *to-morrow*.

In these instances the words *sincerely* and *to-morrow* are adverbs.

The PREPOSITION is a word which is put before the noun or pronoun, and it always governs the word before which it is placed : ex.

*Chez mon ami,*  
*Devant moi,*

*At* my friend's house.  
*Before* me, &c.

The CONJUNCTION serves to connect the several parts of a discourse : ex. *et*, and ; *car*, for ; *mais*, but, &c.

The INTERJECTION is a word which expresses the different affections or passions of the soul : ex.

*Hélas ! mon Dieu !*

*Oh ! my God ! &c.*

A more particular delineation of these nine parts of speech, and their use in the composition of a sentence, or period, will be the subject of the following sections.

## SECTION II.

### OF NOUNS.

NOUNS are divided into substantives and adjectives.  
 A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE expresses a thing subsisting by

itself, and can make a complete sense independent of any other word: ex. *Dieu*, God; *roi*, king; *maison*, house, &c.

A NOUN SUBSTANTIVE is either common, collective, or proper.

A COMMON NOUN is applicable to all beings or things of the same kind: ex. *homme*, man; *roi*, king; *ville*, town; *table*, table, &c.

A COLLECTIVE NOUN is expressive of many particulars; yet, as these particulars are all united in the mind, and comprehended under one general idea, they may therefore be conceived as one individual, and, without any impropriety, expressed in the singular number: ex. *peuple*, people; *forêt*, forest; *armée*, army, &c.

A PROPER NOUN is applicable to one person or thing only: ex. *Pierre*, Peter; *Londres*, London, &c.

N. B. A noun is always a substantive when we cannot, with propriety, add to it the word *personne*, person, or the word *chose*, thing.

A NOUN ADJECTIVE is used to express the quality, colour, form or quantity, of the substance to which it belongs; and is so called because its meaning cannot be ascertained without being joined to its proper substantive, with which it must also agree in gender, number, and case: ex. *bon*, good; *aimable*, lovely; *rouge*, red; *jaune*, yellow; *rond*, round; *carré*, square; *un*, one; *deux*, two; *trois*, three, &c.

N. B. The noun is always adjective when we can add to it the word *personne* or *chose*, person or thing.

In NOUNS, four things must be considered, viz.

*Les Articles,*  
*Les Genres,*  
*Les Nombres,*  
*Les Cas,*

The Articles.  
The Genders.  
The Numbers.  
The Cases.

## ARTICLES.

There are three sorts of Articles, viz.

*L'Article défini,*  
*L'Article partitif,*  
*L'Article indéfini,*

The Article definite.  
The Article partitive.  
The Article indefinite.

The Article must always agree with the noun in gender and number.

The DEFINITE ARTICLE is so called, because it means the whole of the object to which it is applied.

#### SINGULAR.

*Le*, for the masculine, before nouns beginning with a consonant or H aspirated; ex. *le roi*; the king; *le héros*, the hero, &c.

*La*, for the feminine: ex. *la reine*, the queen, &c.

*L'*, with an elision, for both genders, before nouns singular beginning with a vowel or H not aspirated: ex. *l'enfant*, the child; *l'homme*, the man, &c.

#### PLURAL.

*Les*, for both genders, whether the noun begin with a consonant or a vowel: ex. *les rois*, the kings; *les reines*, the queens; *les enfans*, the children, &c.

The PARTITIVE ARTICLE means only a part of the object, the English word *SOME* being always expressed or implied.

#### SINGULAR.

These two articles are used  
*Du*, for the masc. } before nouns beginning with a  
*De la*, for the fem. } consonant or H aspirated: ex. *du*  
                                   *pain*, some bread; *de la viande*,  
                                   some meat.

*De l'*, for both genders, beginning with a vowel or an H not aspirated: ex. *de l'encre*, some ink.

#### PLURAL.

*Des*, for both genders: ex. *des amis*, some friends.

The INDEFINITE ARTICLE is *de* or *d'*, of, from, and *à*, to.

This article is used, without distinction, before nouns masculine and feminine in both numbers. Proper names, and the greater part of the pronouns, are declined with it.

Some grammarians admit of a fourth article, viz. *un* for the masculine, and *une* for the feminine, in English *a* or *an*; but it may be observed, that it is always de-

clined with the indefinite article; and therefore takes the nature of a noun-adjective.

### GENDERS AND NUMBERS.

There are two GENDERS, viz. the masculine and feminine. A noun is masculine when there is before it *le* or *un*, as *le* or *un livre*, the or a book. A noun is feminine when it is preceded by *la* or *une*, as *la* or *une plume*, the or a pen.

There are two NUMBERS, the singular and plural. The singular number speaks of one thing only, as *une table*, a table: the plural speaks of more than one, as, *des tables*, tables. There are some nouns that are never used but in the singular number: as,

1. The names of metals: ex. *or*, gold; *argent*, silver; *cuivre*, brass; *plomb*, lead, &c.
2. The names of virtues and vices: ex. *avarice*, avarice; *charité*, charity; *foi*, faith; *haine*, hatred; *orgueil*, pride; *prodigalité*, prodigality, &c.
3. The names by which the five senses are denoted: ex. *la vue*, the sight; *le goût*, the taste; *l'odorat*, the smell; *le toucher*, feeling; *l'ouïe*, hearing.
4. Proper names, except when they are used metaphorically.
5. To the foregoing may be added the following, which are not reducible to any general rules:

<i>Artillerie</i> ,	artillery.	<i>Faim</i> ,	hunger.
<i>Attirail</i> ,	implements.	<i>Fumée</i> ,	smoke.
<i>Bonheur</i> ,	happiness.	<i>Fuite</i> ,	flight.
<i>Colère</i> ,	anger.	<i>Gloire</i> ,	glory.
<i>Courroux</i> ,	wrath.	<i>Honte</i> ,	shame.
<i>Enfance</i> ,	infancy.	<i>Jeunesse</i> ,	youth.
<i>Lait</i> ,	milk.	<i>Salut</i> ,	safety.
<i>Miel</i> ,	honey.	<i>Soif</i> ,	thirst.
<i>Noblesse</i> ,	nobility.	<i>Sommeil</i> ,	sleep.
<i>Pauvreté</i> ,	poverty.	<i>Vieillesse</i> ,	old age.
<i>Sang</i> ,	blood.		

There are others which are never used but in the plural number only; such as,

<i>Ancêtres,</i>	ancestors.	<i>Atours,</i>	apparel.
<i>Ayeux,</i>	forefathers.	<i>Ciseaux,</i>	scissars.
<i>Funérailles,</i>	a funeral.	<i>Hardes,</i>	clothes.
<i>Frais,</i>	expense.	<i>Limites,</i>	limits.
<i>Délices,</i>	delight.	<i>Mœurs,</i>	manners.
<i>Dépens,</i>	cost.	<i>Mouchettes,</i>	snuffers.
<i>Entrailles,</i>	entrails.	<i>Ténèbres,</i>	darkness.
<i>Epousailles,</i>	espousals.	<i>Vivres,</i>	victuals.
<i>Fonts,</i>	font.		

And, in general, those which, in English, admit of no singular.

In general the plural number is formed by adding an *s* to the singular : ex.

*Le père,* the father ;      *les pères,* the fathers,  
*La mère,* the mother ;      *les mères,* the mothers, &c.

All nouns, having their singular ending in *s*, *x*, or *z*, admit of no variation in the plural : ex.

*Le fils,* the son ;      *les fils,* the sons.  
*Une noix,* a walnut ;      *des noix,* walnuts.  
*Le nez,* the nose ;      *les nez,* the noses.

#### EXCEPTIONS.

Nouns ending in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, *ieu*, or *ou*, form their plural by *x*, instead of *s* : ex.

*Un chapeau,* a hat ;      *des chapeaux,* hats.  
*Un manteau,* a cloak ;      *des manteaux,* cloaks.  
*Un lieu,* a place ;      *des lieux,* places.  
*Un chou,* a cabbage ;      *des choux,* cabbages.

The following differ from this rule, and their plural terminates in *s* : ex.

*Un matou,* a great cat ;      *des matous,* great cats.  
*Un sou,* a cent ;      *des sous,* cents.  
*Un trou,* a hole ;      *des trous,* holes.  
*Un licou,* a halter ;      *des licous,* halters.

Nouns ending in *al* and *ail* have their plural in *aux* : ex.

*Un animal,* a living creature ; *des animaux,* living creatures.  
*Un cheval,* a horse ;      *des chevaux,* horses.  
*Un travail,* a work ;      *des travaux,* works.

These only are excepted :

<i>Un Bal</i> , a ball,	<i>Un Gouzernail</i> , a helm,
<i>Détail</i> , account, retail,	<i>Un Sérail</i> , a seraglio,
<i>Eventail</i> , a fan,	<i>Un Portail</i> , a gateway.

Which form their plural in *s*.

Nouns of more than one syllable (polysyllables) ending in *nt*, most generally form their plural by changing the *t* into *s* : as,

<i>Enfant</i> , a child;	<i>enfants</i> , children.
<i>Commandement</i> , command;	<i>commandemens</i> , commands.

But nouns of one syllable only (monosyllables) preserve the *t*, and form their plural by adding *s* : as,

<i>Dent</i> , tooth;	<i>dents</i> , teeth.
<i>Pont</i> , bridge;	<i>ponts</i> , bridges.

*Tout*, adj. all, makes *tous*, in its plural masculine; *toute* in the feminine gender sing. and *toutes* in the plural.

The following are not conformable to any established rule.

<i>Ayeul</i> , grandfather;	<i>ayeux</i> , grandfathers.
<i>Bétail</i> , cattle;	<i>bestiaux</i> , cattle.
<i>Ciel</i> , heaven;	<i>cieux</i> , heavens.
<i>Œil</i> , eye;	<i>yeux</i> , eyes.

Except { *des ciels de lit*,\* testers of a bed.  
          { *des œils de bœuf*, ovals.

There are in French several compound words like the last two, which require some attention from the learner, in the formation of their plural, the difficulty of which may soon be removed by means of reflection; for example :

A noun being composed of a substantive and an adjective, united by a hyphen, both admit of the plural formation : as,

<i>Un gentil-homme</i> , a noble-	<i>des gentils-hommes</i> , noble-
man ;	men.

A noun compounded of two substantives and a preposition, united by hyphens, the first only in French,

\* This term is growing obsolete : it is better to say, *un fond de lit*.

which is generally the last in English, admits of the plural formation : as,

*Un arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow ; *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.  
*Un chef-d'œuvre*, a master-piece. *des chefs-d'œuvre*, master-pieces.

*N. B.* Some of these French compound words are sometimes rendered in English by one word, in which case the formation of the plural in the French is still the same : as,

*Un cul-de-sac*, an alley (with- *des culs-de-sac*, alleys.  
 out egress) ;

Nouns composed of a verb or a preposition and a substantive, the substantive only admits of the plural formation : as,

*Un avant-toit*, eaves, *des avant-toits*, eaves,  
*Un casse-noisette*, a nut-cracker ; *des casse-noisettes*, nut-crackers.

*Un garde-fou*, a rail ; *des garde-foux*, rails, &c.

<i>Monseigneur</i> , my lord	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{make in the} \\ \text{plural} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Messeigneurs</i> , my lords.
<i>Monsieur</i> , Mr. or gent.		<i>Messieurs</i> , gentlemen.
<i>Madame</i> , Mrs. or madam		<i>Mesdames</i> , ladies.
<i>Mademoiselle</i> , miss		<i>Mesdemoiselles</i> , misses.

## CASES.

There are six cases, viz.

- |                          |             |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>Le Nominatif</i> , | Nominative. |
| 2. <i>Le Génitif</i> ,   | Genitive.   |
| 3. <i>Le Datif</i> ,     | Dative.     |
| 4. <i>L'Accusatif</i> ,  | Accusative. |
| 5. <i>Le Vocatif</i> ,   | Vocative.   |
| 6. <i>L'Ablatif</i> ,    | Ablative.   |

The NOMINATIVE and ACCUSATIVE cases have exactly the same form, and are always declined with the same article ; the only difference between them arises from their different positions in the sentence.

In the natural construction, the nominative always precedes the verb, and the accusative follows it. The



**nominative** is the *subject* of the sentence, and the **accusative** is the *object* to which it refers: ex.

*Le roi aime le peuple,*                      The king loves the people.

In order to know the nominative from the accusative, I ask, Who loves the people? **THE KING** (which is the answer) is the subject, and consequently the nominative. Whom or what does the King love? The answer is **THE PEOPLE**, which is the object, and therefore the accusative.

The **GENITIVE** and **ABLATIVE** are declined with the same article, but the first is always preceded by another word on which it depends: as,

*La porte de la chambre,*                      The chamber door, that is,  
the door of the chamber.  
*La maison de mon père,*                      My father's house, &c.

Or it is governed by a preposition, as,  
*Près du feu,*                      Near the fire, &c.

The last is always put after nouns or verbs expressing division, partition, or separation; and after some prepositions. The genitive is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* of or of the. Sometimes the article is not expressed in English, as may be seen in the sentences before mentioned. The ablative is known by the articles *de, du, de la, des,* from or from the.

The **DATIVE** shows to whom the thing spoken of, is given, or to what it is attributed: as,

*Donnez cette pomme à mon*                      Give that apple to my brother.  
*frère,*

This case is known by the articles *à, au, à la, aux,* to or to the.

The **VOCATIVE** is used only for calling or naming the person to whom the speech is addressed: as,

*Ami, qui êtes-vous?*                      Friend, who are you?

## DECLENSIONS OF NOUNS.

All changes in nouns are formed by numbers and cases. To decline a noun, therefore, is to express its

several variations ; and, under these variations, to point out its different significations.

Some short examples are added to the nouns, that learners may more easily understand what has been said respecting the cases.

*Declension of the Article Definite Le (the), before Nouns masculine beginning with a Consonant, or an H aspirated.*

## SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>Le Prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Le prince est généreux,</i>	The prince is generous.
Gen. <i>Du prince,</i>	Of the prince.
<i>Les vertus du prince,</i>	The virtues of the prince ; or, the prince's virtues.
Dat. <i>Au prince,</i>	To the prince.
<i>Parler au prince,</i>	To speak to the prince.
Acc. <i>Le prince,</i>	The prince.
<i>Aimer le prince,</i>	To love the prince.
Voc. <i>O prince,</i>	O prince.
Abl. <i>Du prince,</i>	From the prince.
<i>Recevoir des lettres du prince,</i>	To receive letters from the prince.

*Declension of the Article Definite La (the), before Nouns feminine beginning with a Consonant, or an H aspirated.*

## SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>La princesse,</i>	The princess.
<i>La princesse est aimable,</i>	The princess is amiable.
Gen. <i>De la princesse,</i>	Of the princess.
<i>Les regards de la princesse,</i>	The looks of the princess ; or, the princess's looks.
Dat. <i>A la princesse,</i>	To the princess.
<i>Donner à la princesse,</i>	To give to the princess.
Acc. <i>La princesse,</i>	The princess.
<i>Imitez la princesse,</i>	Imitate the princess.
Voc. <i>O princesse,</i>	O princess.
Abl. <i>De la princesse,</i>	From the princess.
<i>Etre séparé de la princesse,</i>	To be separated from the princess.

*Declension of the Article Definite L' (the), for both Genders, before Nouns beginning with a Vowel, or an H not aspirated.*

## SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>L'enfant,</i>	The child.
<i>L'enfant est timide,</i>	The child is fearful.
Gen. <i>De l'enfant,</i>	Of the child.
<i>Le tempérament de l'enfant,</i>	The child's temper; or, the temper of the child.
Dat. <i>A l'enfant,</i>	To the child.
<i>Attribuer à l'enfant,</i>	To attribute to the child.
Acc. <i>L'enfant,</i>	The child.
<i>Admirer l'enfant,</i>	To admire the child.
Voc. <i>O enfant,</i>	O child.
Abl. <i>De l'enfant,</i>	From the child.
<i>S'éloigner de l'enfant,</i>	To go away from the child.

The plural of these nouns, whether they begin with a consonant or a vowel, \*H aspirated or not aspirated, is declined in both genders, by the article *les* (the).

Nom. <i>Les rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Les rois commandent,</i>	The kings command.
Gen. <i>Des rois,</i>	Of the kings.
<i>L'ordre des rois,</i>	The order of the kings: or, the kings' order.
Dat. <i>Aux rois,</i>	To the kings.
<i>Envoyer aux rois,</i>	To send to the kings.
Acc. <i>Les rois,</i>	The kings.
<i>Respectez les rois,</i>	Honour the kings.
Voc. <i>O rois,</i>	O kings.
Abl. <i>Des rois,</i>	From the kings.
<i>Etre loin des rois,</i>	To be far from the kings.

### RECAPITULATION OF THE ARTICLE DEFINITE.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
	Mas.	Fem.		Mas. & Fem.	Mas. & Fem.
Nom. & Ac.	<i>Le,</i>	<i>la,</i>	<i>l' ;</i>	<i>Les,</i>	<i>the.</i>
Gen. & Ab.	<i>Du,</i>	<i>de la,</i>	<i>de l' ;</i>	<i>Des,</i>	<i>of or from the.</i>
Dat.	<i>Au,</i>	<i>à la,</i>	<i>à l' ;</i>	<i>Aux,</i>	<i>to the.</i>

\* See the list of words beginning with an *h* not aspirated, page 15.

The *definite article* must be placed, in French, before all nouns used in a *general sense*, or denoting a whole species of objects, and before names of countries and provinces, though the English admit of no article in this case : ex.

<i>L'homme est mortel,</i>	Man is mortal.
<i>Le Danemarc, la Suède et l'Angleterre, sont les trois royaumes du nord,</i>	Denmark, Sweden, and England, are the three northern kingdoms.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I	hate	idleness. --	Virtue	is	estimable. --
Je, pro.	hais, v.	paresse, f.	Vertu, f. est, v.	estimable, adj.	
Gold	is	preferable	to silver. ----	Do you <sup>s</sup>	
Or, m.	préférable, adj.		argent, m.	vous, pro.	
prefer <sup>t</sup>	England	to France?	Corn	grows	
préférez, v.	Angleterre, f.	France, f.	Blé, m.	croît, v.	
for	men,	and	grass	for cattle. --	
pour, p.	homme, m.	et, c.	herbe, f.	bétail, m.	aimez, v.
wisdom. ---	Do	'not <sup>s</sup>	neglect <sup>s</sup>	study. --	
sagesse, f.	ne pas, adv.		négligez, v.	étude, f.	
Avoid	leisure. ---	She	comes from	church. --	
Évitez, v.	loisir, m.	Elle, pro.	vient, v.	église, f.	
We	speak	of America,	and	not	
Nous, pro.	parlons, v.	Amérique, f.	non pas, adv.		
of Poland. ----	Grant	us	peace. ---		
Pologne, f.	Accordez, v.	nous, pro.	paix, f.		
Honour	is	due	to kings. --	They	
Honneur, m.	dû, p. p.	roi, m.	Ils, pro.		
come from	Africa. ----	Pride	disgraces	man. --	
viennent, v.	Afrique, f.	Orgueil, m.	dégrade, v.		
Charity	patiently <sup>s</sup>	bears <sup>t</sup>	injuries <sup>s</sup> .		
Charité, f.	patiemment, adv.	souffre, v.	injure, f.		

This article is also placed before nouns used in a *specific sense*, or denoting a particular object, in which case the article is likewise expressed in English : ex.

<i>L'homme que vous m'avez recommandé est fort habile,</i>	The man whom you recommended to me is very skilful.
--	---

*Les poires de votre jardin*    *The pears of your garden*  
*sont excellentes,*                      *are excellent.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

Where . is the master of the house? - - The  
*Où,adv. est maître,m. maison,f.*  
 prince spoke to the king. - - To the third\*  
*prince,m. parla,v. troisième,adj.*  
 page of the book. - - The<sup>1</sup> lazy<sup>2</sup> do<sup>3</sup> not<sup>5</sup>  
*page,f. livre,m. paresseux,adj.pl. en*  
 love<sup>4</sup> work<sup>6</sup>. - - - - Justice is the mistress and  
*aiment,v. ouvrage,m. Justice,f. maîtresse,f.*  
 queen of virtue. - - Send the child to school. - -  
*reine,f. Envoyez,v. enfant,m. école,f.*  
 Walk in the garden. - - Tranquillity  
*Promenez-vous,v. dans,p. jardin,m. Tranquillité,f.*  
 of soul is the height of felicity. - - Give the tooth  
*âme,f. comble,m. félicité,f. Donnez,v. cure-*  
 picks to the gentlemen. - - - - Education is to the  
*dent,m. Messieurs,m. Education,f.*  
 mind, what cleanliness is to the body. - - The  
*esprit,m. ce que,pro. propreté,f. corps,m.*  
 life of man is short. - - The enemies were on  
*vie,f. courte,adj. ennemi,m. étoient,v. sur,p.*  
 the mountain. - You admire the beauty of  
*montagne,f. Vous,pro. admirez,v. beauté,f.*  
 the ladies. - - To the thickness of the walls. - - We  
*dame,f. épaisseur,f. muraille,f.*  
 go to the park. - - - - It is the will of the em-  
*allons,v. parc,m. C'est,v. volonté,f. em-*  
 peror. - - - - The fate of nations is governed  
*pereur,m. sort,m. nation,f. gouverné,p.p.*  
 by Providence. - - You play with the boys.  
*par,p. Providence,f. jouez,v. avec,p. garçon,m.*  
 - - Revenge is the pleasure of a weak<sup>2</sup> mind<sup>1</sup>. - -  
*Vengeance,f. plaisir,m. un foible,adj.*  
 Italy is the garden of Europe. - - The most noble  
*Italie,f. Europe,f. plus,adv. noble,adj. \**

\* Adjectives take no article unless used substantively.

of virtues is charity. -- Carry the grammar to the  
*Portez, v. grammair, f.*

boys, and the dictionary to the girls. -- -- -- He  
*dictionnaire, m. fille, f. Il, pro.*

comes from the Indies. -- Give me the loaf.

*vient, v. Inde, f. moi, pro. pain, m.*

This article being declinable in French, and consequently admitting of different variations, ought to be repeated before all the *substantives* of a sentence, as well as before adjectives used as substantives, and agree with them in *gender* and *number* : ex.

*Le sel, la moutarde, et* The salt, mustard, and oil,  
*l'huile, sont sur les tables,* are on the tables.

*Le blanc, le rouge et le noir,* White, red and black,  
*sont trois différentes couleurs,* are three different colours.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Prefer virtue to riches, friendship to  
*Préférez, v. richesses, f. pl. amitié, f.*

money and utility to pleasure. -- The father, mother,  
*argent, m. utilité, f. plaisir, m. père, m. mère, f.*

and children are dead. -- The men, women, and children  
*sont, v. morts, p. p. femme, f.*

dren of the village were all at the burial. -- -- --  
*village, m. étoient, tous, adj. à, p. enterrement, m.*

Children generally<sup>2\*</sup> like apples and pears.  
*ordinairement, adv. aiment, v. pomme, f. poire, f.*

I like yellow and grey. -- Peace and plenty  
*aime, v. jaune, m. gris, m. abondance, f.*

make men happy. -- -- -- Wheat and barley  
*rendent, v. heureux, adj. Froment, m. orge, f.*

are dear. -- -- I hate milk, butter, and cheese. --  
*chers, adj. lait, m. beurre, m. fromage, m.*

Bring the knives and forks. -- -- Patience  
*Apportez, v. couteau, m. fourchette, f. Patience, f.*

and perseverance are necessary. -- -- The desire  
*persévérance, f. nécessaire, adj. désir, m.*

\* Place simple adverbs after verbs, and in compound tenses before the participles.

of glory, riches, power, and pleasure, is a  
*gloire, f. richesse, f. pl. pouvoir, m. une*  
 disease of the mind. - - - Have you passed  
*maladie, f. âme, f. Avez, v. passé, p. p.*  
 through Spain, Portugal, or Holland? - Pre-  
*par, p. Espagne, f. Portugal, m. ou Hollande, f.*  
 fer always virtue, prudence, and good sense  
*toujours, adv. prudence, f. bon, adj. sens, m.*  
 to beauty. - - Put the wine, beer, and cider on  
*Mettez, v. vin, m. bière, f. cidre, m. sur, p.*  
 the table. - - (It is said) that America, France, and  
*table, f. On dit que*  
 Spain have made peace with England.  
*ont, v. fait, p. p.*

On the contrary, this article, though expressed in English, must be omitted in French, before a noun employed as an apposition, or definition of the noun which precedes; and when it precedes a noun in the nominative or accusative case, denoting *dignity, office, or business*: ex.

*Alexandre, fils de Philippe,* Alexander the son of Philip.

*Mon ami demeure à Londres, ville capitale d'Angleterre,* My friend lives in London, the capital city of England.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Jupiter, a god of the heathens, was the son of  
*dieu, m. païens, m. étoit, v. fils, m.*  
 Saturn, and the father of the other gods. - - Robert,  
*Saturne autres, adj.*  
 duke of Normandy, the brother of Henry, king  
*duc, m. Normandie, frère, m. Henri,*  
 of England, was the son of William the con-  
*Guillaume, con-*  
 queror. - - My sister lives at York, the cap-  
*quérant, m. Ma, pro. sœur, f. demeure, v. à, p.*  
 ital city of the county of the same name.  
*comté, m. même, adj. nom, m.*

Mr. C\*\*\*, the rector of the parish of St. James, and  
                                 *curé, m.*                      *paroisse, f.*                      *Jâques*  
 his brother, the dean of the cathedral, were  
*son, pro.*                      *doyen, m.*                      *cathédrale, f.* *étaient,*  
 the sons of Mr. L\*\*\*, the first lord of  
   *premier, adj.*                      *seigneur*  
 the admiralty.  
                                 *amirauté, f.*

In several instances, the definite article is neither expressed in English nor in French, as in narrations, when the style is animated; and after the conjunction *ni*, when it implies a complete negation, otherwise it has an article, requiring in both cases the negation *ne* before the verb: *ex.*

*Conscience, honneur, intérêt,*                      *Conscience, honour, inter-*  
*tout est sacrifié; il n'a*                      *est, every thing is sacri-*  
*ni justice ni humanité,*                      *ficed; he has neither*  
   *justice nor humanity.*

*Ni l'or ni la grandeur ne*                      *Neither gold nor greatness*  
*nous rendent heureux,*                      *can make us happy.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The town was taken by storm: men,  
                         *ville, f.*                      *fut, v.*                      *prise, p. p.*                      *d'assaut, m.*  
 women, children, old people, (every body) was  
   *vieillard, m.*                      *tout, adj.*  
 put to death. - - Palaces, temples, public<sup>a</sup> build-  
*mis, p. p.*                      *à mort.*                      *Palais, m.*                      *édi-*  
*ings<sup>1</sup>,*                      *private<sup>2</sup>*                      *houses (every thing) was*  
*fice, m.*                      *particulière, adj.*                      *maison, f.*                      *tout*  
 destroyed. - - His father will<sup>a</sup> spare<sup>a</sup> neither<sup>3</sup>  
*détruit, p. p.*                      *Son, pro.*                      *épargnera, v.*                      *ne ni*  
*pains*                      *nor money. - - (He is) a fatherless child,*  
*peine, f. sing.*                      *C'est, v.*                      *orphelin, adj.*                      *ni*  
 he has neither parents nor friends. - - Neither the  
                         *a*                      *parent, m.*                      *ami, m.*  
 house nor bed are made for you.  
                                 *lit, m.*                      *sont faits,*

When, in English, two or more substantives, signifying different things, come together in a sentence,





## EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Mr. Richard, brother to the Prince's steward,  
*Mons. intendant, m.*  
 has married Miss Prescott, niece to the Constable  
*a, v. épousé, p. p. Mlle. nièce, f. connétable, m.*  
 of the Tower. - - - I have spoken to the Marchioness  
*Tour, f. parlé, p. p. Marquise, f.*  
 of \*\*\*, sister to the queen's first Lady of honour. - -  
*Dame, f.*

Mr. Henry, perfumer to the princess, has made  
*Henri, m. parfumeur, m. fait, p. p.*  
 a <sup>2</sup>considerable <sup>1</sup>fortune. - - - The heir to the  
*considérable, adj. fortune, f. héritier, m.*  
 crown of Portugal is the Prince of Brasil. - - My  
*couronne, f. du Brésil, m.*  
 father was witness to that quarrel. - - -  
*a été, p. p. témoin, m. cette, pro. querelle, f.*  
 I am a friend to <sup>2</sup>diligent <sup>1</sup>scholars, and an  
*suis, v. diligent, adj. écolier, m.*  
 enemy to idleness.  
*ennemi, m. paresse, f.*

After the adverb *bien*, when placed before a substantive and signifying *much*, *a great deal*, *many*, the genitive of this same article must always be used: *ex.*

<i>Bien du mérite,</i>	Much merit.
<i>Bien des amis,</i>	Many friends.
<i>Bien de l'argent,</i>	A great deal of money.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The children make much noise. - - - This man  
*font, v. bruit, m. Cet, pro.*  
 has (a great deal) of money, but he has also many  
*aussi, adv.*  
 enemies. - - - They <sup>2</sup>give <sup>1</sup>you much trouble  
*donnent, v. peine, f.*  
 now; but they will <sup>2</sup>give <sup>1</sup>you<sup>1</sup> afterward  
*à présent, adv. mais, c. donneront, v. ensuite, adv.*  
 much pleasure. - - - (There were) many ladies in  
*Il y avoit, v. dames en*

\*company (last night). - - - Mr. R. has read  
*compagnie hier au soir, adv. Mons. lu, p.p.*  
 many books, and he has acquired much, know-  
*livre, m. acquis, p.p. connois-*  
 ledge. - - - To teach youth (we must  
*sances, s.f. pl. Pour, p. enseigner, v. jeunesse, f. (il faut, v.*  
 have) (a great deal) of patience.  
*avoir, v.)*

If the second substantive in French (which is the first in English) serve to denote some *particular commodity, use, quality, or liquor*, then it must be put in the dative: ex.

<i>Le pot au lait,</i>	The <sup>1</sup> milk <sup>3</sup> -pot <sup>2</sup> .
<i>La femme aux pommes,</i>	The <sup>1</sup> apple <sup>3</sup> -woman <sup>2</sup> .
<i>Une cruche à l'eau,</i>	A water-jug.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Tell the servant to bring<sup>2</sup>  
*Dites, v. au or à la domestique, m. & f. de apporter, v.*  
 me<sup>1</sup> the tea-cannister, sugar - dish, and cream-  
*me, pro. thé, m. boîte, f. sucre, m. pot, m. crème, f.*  
 basin. - - - Go to the wine-cellar and bring<sup>2</sup> us<sup>1</sup> the  
*bassin, m. Allez, v. vin, m. cave, f. apportez*  
 vinegar - bottle. - - - ('There is) the oyster-woman. - - -  
*vinaigre, m. bouteille, f. Voilà huître, f. pl.*  
 I live in\* the hay - market, my cousin in the  
*foin, m. marché, m. mon, pro.*  
 fish-market, and my sister in the poultry-market. - -  
*poisson, m. sing. ma, pro. volaille, f.*  
 Give me the oil-bottle, pepper - box, and mustard-  
*moi, pro. huile, f. poivre, m. boîte, f. moutarde, f.*  
 pot. - - - The butter-boy, the greens-girl, the  
*beurre, m. légume, m. pl.*  
 hot<sup>3</sup> - rolls<sup>2</sup> man,<sup>1</sup> and the gingerbread-woman,  
*chauds, adj. pain, m. pl. pain d'épices, m.*  
 called here. - - - We had cabbage - soup,  
*ont passé, p.p. ici, adv. eûmes, v. chou, m. pl. de la soupe,*

\* *In* is generally *en*, when immediately followed by a noun, and *dans* when followed by an article or pronoun.

a rice - pudding, a (leg of mutton) with caper -  
*un riz, m. pouding, m. gigot, m. capre, f. pl.*  
 sauce, and ice - cream. - - We shall have pease  
*de la sauce, s. glace, f. aurons, v. pois, m.*  
 porridge, a salt<sup>d</sup> cod,<sup>1</sup> with egg-sauce, and a  
*de la soupe, une salée, adj. morue, f. œuf, m. pl.*  
 turbot with lobster-sauce. - - I bought a plum -  
*homard, m. pl. ai acheté raisins secs, m.*  
 cake, an apple - tart, and two gooseberry and  
*gâteau, m. pomme, f. pl. tarte, f. groseille, f. pl.*  
 cherry pies.  
*cerise, f. pl. tourte.*

## DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE PARTITIVE.

### SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *du pain*, some bread.  
 Gen. Abl. *de pain*, of or from some bread.  
 Dat. *à du pain*, to some bread.

### Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de la viande*, some meat.  
 Gen. Abl. *de viande*, of or from some meat.  
 Dat. *à de la viande*, to some meat.

### Masculine or Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *de l'argent*, some money.  
 Gen. Abl. *d'argent*, of or from some money.  
 Dat. *à de l'argent*, to some money.

The plural is the same for both genders.

Nom. Ac. { *des livres*, some books,  
                   *des auteurs*, some authors.  
 Gen. Ab. { *de livres*, of or from some books.  
                   *d'auteurs*, of or from some authors.  
 Dat. { *à des livres*, to some books.  
                   *à des auteurs*, to some authors.




N. B. In asking a question, the English generally make use of *any*, which, in French, must be rendered by the same article, as *some* : ex.

*Y a-t-il du pain ici ?*                    Is there *any* bread here ?  
*Avez-vous de la viande ?*            Have you *any* meat ?

This article must be used wherever the English word *some*, or *any*, is either expressed or understood, and ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence : ex.

Du pain et de l'eau lui suffisent, Bread and water are sufficient for him.  
 Apportez du vinaigre, de la Bring some vinegar, mustard, oil and forks.  
 moutarde, de l'huile et des fourchettes,  
 Avez-vous de l'argent à Have you any money to  
 nous prêter ? lend us ?

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Bread, meat, and water, are things necessary  
 sont, v. chose, f. nécessaires, adj.  
 to man. - - I drink wine and water. - - She eats  
 bois, v. mange, v.  
 cheese. - - - Bring me some mustard. - - - Have you  
 fromage, m.  
 bought some paper, pens, and ink ? - - Send  
 acheté, p. p. papier, m. plume, f. encre, f.  
 him some bread, meat, and potatoes. - - - Do you<sup>2</sup>  
 lui pomme de terre, f.   
 sell fruit<sup>3</sup> ? - - Buy some tea and sugar. - -  
 vendez, v. fruit, m. Achetez, v. thé, m.  
 Will you eat some beef with turnips and  
 Voulez, v. manger, v. bœuf, m. navet, m.  
 carrots ? - - Do you drink beer ? - - (Is there) any  
 carotte, f.  buvez, v. bière, f. Y a-t-il  
 wine in the cellar ? - - - (Was there) any oil in the  
 Y avoit-il  
 bottle ? - - I<sup>1</sup> have<sup>2</sup> given<sup>4</sup> him<sup>2</sup> bread, money,  
 donné, p. p. lui, pro.  
 and clothes. - - She has modesty and prudence. - -  
 habit, m. modestie, f. prudence, f.  
 He has bought some dishes and plates. - - Will  
 plat, m. assiette, f.  
 you have some milk or cream ? - - I eat fish, eggs,  
 œuf, m.

greens, artichokes, and asparagus. - - - Bread, meat,  
*légume, artichaut, m. asperge, f. pl.*  
 fish and vegetables, often<sup>2</sup> make<sup>1</sup> a good  
*végétaux, m. pl. souvent, adv. font, v. bon*  
 dinner.  
*diner, m.*

If the substantive be preceded by an adjective, instead of *du, de la, des*, we must use *de* or *d'*: as,

	Masculine.	Fem.	Masc. or Fem.
N. Ac. }	<i>De mauvais vin,</i>	<i>De bonne eau,</i>	<i>D'excellent pain,</i>
G. Abl. }	Bad wine,	Good water,	Excellent bread.
Dat.	<i>à de mauvais vin,</i>	<i>à de bonne eau,</i>	<i>à d'excellent pain,</i>
	To bad wine.	To good water.	To excellent bread.

## PLURAL.

N. Ac. }	<i>De bons livres,</i>	<i>d'habiles gens,</i>
G. Ab. }	Good books.	Learned men.
Dat.	<i>à de bons livres,</i>	<i>à d'habiles gens,</i>
	To good books.	To learned men.

N. B. This last rule is without exception. But some persons find it difficult to distinguish between the genitive of the definite and this article; now let them but parse, and they will perceive that in this phrase: *Lon-res est le centre du bon goût*, *du* is no more than the genitive of the definite article denoting what kind of *taste*.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

You always<sup>2</sup> read<sup>1</sup> good books. - - 'Bad wine<sup>2</sup>  
*toujours, adv. lisez, v.*  
 is<sup>4</sup> 'not<sup>5</sup> worth<sup>4</sup> good water. - - - He speaks to learned  
*vaut, v. parle, v.*  
 men. - - - I have heard good news. - - -  
*gens, f.\* appris, p. p. bonne, adj. nouvelle, f. pl.*  
 You have fine fruit. - - - She has worthy  
*avez, v. beau, adj. digne, adj.*  
 friends. - - Bring me good pens. - - Onions, celery,  
*Oignons, m. céleri, m.*

\* *Gens*, preceded by an adjective, is of the feminine gender; but when the adjective follows, it is put in the masculine.

leeks, chervil, and (a great deal) of meat make  
*poireau*,m. *cerfeuil*,m. *beaucoup*,adv. *font*,v.  
 what the French call good  
*ce que*,pro. *François*,m.pl. *appellent*,v.  
 broth. - - - I prefer good water to bad cider. - - -  
*bouillon*,m. *cidre*,m.  
 I have discoursed with learned people. - - My father  
*conversé*,p.p. *gens*,f.  
 has in his garden good plums, fine peaches,  
*son*,pro. *prune*,f. *belle*,adj. *pêche*,f.  
 and very large apricots. - - - Miss Sharp  
*très*,adv. *gros*,adj. *abricot*,m. *Mlle*.f.  
 has fine eyes. - - Paris is the centre of wit.  
*beau*,*œil*,m. *bel esprit*,m.

**DECLENSION OF THE ARTICLE INDEFINITE,**  
*used before proper names of persons and places, and in the*  
*Gen. and Abl. the e is cut off before a vowel or an h*  
*mute, as usual.*

**SINGULAR.—Masculine.**

Nom. Acc. *Pierre*, Peter.  
 Gen. Abl. *de Pierre*, of Peter.  
 Dat. *à Pierre*, to Peter.

**Feminine.**

Nom. Acc. *Marie*, Maria.  
 Gen. Abl. *de Marie*, of Maria.  
 Dat. *à Marie*, to Maria.

Nom. Acc. *Antoine*, Antony.  
 Gen. Abl. *d'Antoine*, of Antony.  
 Dat. *à Antoine*, to Antony.

Nom. Acc. *Londres*, London.  
 Gen. Abl. *de Londres*, of London.  
 Dat. *à Londres*, to London.

**N. B.** It is necessary to observe, that the particle  
*To*, used after a word signifying coming, going, returning,  
 or sending to, placed before the name of a kingdom, republic,  
 country, province, or county, must be rendered in  
 French by the preposition *en*, without any article : ex.

*Mon frère est allé en Italie;* My brother is gone to Italy.  
*Il doit bientôt retourner en Amérique,* He is soon to go back to America.

On the contrary, *to* must be rendered by *de*, when immediately preceded by the words *road*, or *path-way* : ex.

*Le chemin de Londres,* The road to London.  
*Le chemin de Paris,* The way to Paris.

It must be observed that the *proper names* of most of the islands and other countries both in the East and West-Indies, and a few places in Europe, do not follow the above rule, but take the definite article, such as *l'Abyssinie*, Abyssinia; *le Brésil*, Brasil; *le Caire*, Cairo; *le Canada*, Canada; *la Guadeloupe*, Guadeloupe; *la Jamaïque*, Jamaica; *le Japon*, Japan; *la Martinique*, Martinico; *le Pérou*, Peru; *la Virginie*, Virginia; *le Mexique*, Mexico; and a few others: ex.

<i>Venir</i>	{ <i>de l'Abyssinie,</i> <i>du Brésil,</i> <i>du Caire,</i> }	<i>to come</i>	{ from Abyssinia, from Brasil, from Cairo.
<i>Aller</i>	{ <i>à la Chine,</i> <i>au Canada,</i> <i>au Japon,</i> }	<i>to go</i>	{ to China, to Canada, to Japan.

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE RULES.

(Here is) John's brother. - - Speak to Martha. - -  
*Voici, adv. Jean* *Parlez, v. Marthe.*

It is Peter's hat. - - - She goes to Richmond. - - -

*C'est, v. chapeau, m. va, v.*

He comes from Paris. - - - You have Mr.  
*vient, v. Mons.*

Richard's sword. - - - When<sup>r</sup> will<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> go<sup>2</sup> to  
*épée, f. Quand, adv. irez, v.*

France? - - I know not, for my father says  
*sais, v. ne pas, adv. car, c. dit, v.*

that he (will<sup>2</sup> send) me<sup>3</sup> soon to Canada or  
*que, c. il, pro. enverra, v. bientôt, adv.*

Jamaica. - - Give me Laura's cap. - - - I (am going)  
*Laure bonnet, m. vais, v.*



to Roxbury. - - - I have found      Andrew's waistcoat.  
    *trouvé, p.p. André, m. veste, f.*

She (shall come back) to England (next year)  
    *reviendra, v. l'année prochaine*

to see her brother who is arrived from  
    *pour voir, v. son, qui, pro. est, v. arrivé, p.p.*

Japan and China. - - Carry that to Stephen. - -  
    *Portez, v. cela, pro. Etienne.*

(Here is) the road to Medford. - - - My mother  
    *Ma, pro.*

intends      • to send      my sister to Portugal  
    *se propose de, v. envoyer, v. ma, pro.*

or Spain, and thence to Rome, and my cousin (is to)  
    *de là doit, v.*

go to Mexico or Cairo.  
    *aller, v. ou, c*

The genitive of this article *de* is used after nouns and adverbs of *quantity*, whether expressed in English or not; after the negation *pas* or *point*, no or not; the word *que*, what, standing for, how much, or how many, and, *quelque chose*, something, *rien*, nothing; before names of countries, kingdoms and provinces, when preceded by a noun expressing a personal title, &c. or by a verb signifying *coming*, *arriving*, or *returning from* : ex.

*Tant de pommes,*

So many apples.

*Tant d'argent;*

So much money.

*Point de repos,*

No rest.

*Que de peines et de soins !*

What care and trouble !

*Quelque chose\* de bon,*

Something good.

*Il arrive de France,*

He arrives *from* France.

*Rien de mauvais,*

Nothing bad.

*Le roi d'Angleterre,*

The king *of* England.

*Elle vient d'Amérique,*

She comes *from* America.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

I have bought      six yards of cloth. - - - Bring

*acheté, p.p. six aune drap, m.*

me three pounds      of veal,      and two pounds of

*trois livre veau, m. deux*

\* It must be observed, that the word *chose*, standing by itself, is of the feminine gender; but, being joined to the word *quelque*, it is of the masculine.

mutton. - - She has a great number of children. - -  
*mouton, m. un grand, adj. nombre, m.*  
 He has (too much) vanity. - - - You have less merit,  
*trop, adv. vanité, f. moins, adv.*  
 but more wisdom. - - What a noise you make. - -  
*mais, c. plus, adv. sagesse. bruit, m. faites, v.*  
 (How many) fools in the world ! - - Do 'not' give<sup>3</sup>  
*fou monde, m. ne pas, adv.*  
 her<sup>2</sup> (too many) pears. - - I' have<sup>2</sup> 'no'<sup>4</sup> daugh-  
*lui, pro. trop, adv. ai ne point, adv.*  
 ters.<sup>5</sup> - - (So much) pride does 'not' become<sup>3</sup> him<sup>2</sup>. - -  
*Tant, adv. orgueil, m. sied, v. lui, pro.*  
 (There is) something noble in his physiognomy. - -  
*Il y a, v. sa, pro. physionomie.*  
 'We have (so many) grapes. - - - They have a little  
*raisin, m. un peu, adv.*  
 money. - - I know the king of Prussia. - - Did you  
*connois, v. Prusse, f. Avez, v.*  
 see the duke of Bavaria with the archbishop  
*vu, p. p. duc, m. Bavière, f. archevêque, m.*  
 of York ? - - He commanded an army of forty  
*commandoit, v. une armée, f. quarante*  
 thousand men. - - - She<sup>1</sup> says<sup>2</sup> 'nothing'<sup>4</sup> true<sup>5</sup>. - - -  
*mille dit, v. ne rien, adv. vrai, adj.*  
 You speak of Alexander, king of Macedonia. - -  
*parlez, v. Alexandre, m. Macédoine, f.*  
 Do you<sup>2</sup> come<sup>1</sup> from Italy ? - - - No, I come  
*venez, v. Non, adv. viens, v.*  
 from Africa.

### Afrique.

*De* is likewise placed before nouns governed by another substantive, of which they express the *character, cause, country, matter, nature, and quality* ; and after the *adjectives of number*, when they are followed by a participle passive : ex.

<i>Une maison de briques,</i>	A <sup>1</sup> brick <sup>3</sup> house <sup>2</sup> .
<i>Un bonnet de nuit,</i>	A night cap.
<i>Une cuiller d'argent,</i>	A silver spoon.
<i>Du poisson de rivière,</i>	River fish.
<i>Du vin de Bourgogne,</i>	Burgundy <sup>2</sup> wine <sup>1</sup> .
<i>Quatre de renvoyés,</i>	Four (sent away.)

## EXERCISE UPON THIS ARTICLE.

Your<sup>1</sup> sister<sup>2</sup> has<sup>3</sup> a<sup>4</sup> silk<sup>5</sup> gown<sup>5</sup> and a gold<sup>6</sup>  
*Votre, pro. sœur, f. a, v. une soie, f. robe, un or, m.*  
 thimble. - - We drink Champagne wine. - - - - It is a  
*dé, m. buvons, v. C'est, v.*  
 marble pillar. - - - - They have a country  
*marbre pillier, m. une campagne*  
 house built with oak wood. - -  
*maison construite, p. p. de, p. chêne bois.*  
 Edinburgh is the capital city of the kingdom  
*Edinbourg, m. capitale, adj. ville, f. royaume, m.*  
 of Scotland. - - Shut the fore - door. - - A lady  
*Ecosse. Fermez, v. devant porte, f. Une*  
 of wit is a jewel of worth. - - - - (He is) a man  
*esprit un joyau, m. prix. C'est, v.*  
 of honour. - - She has bought silver buckles  
*honneur. argent boucle, f.*  
 and diamond ear - rings. - - - - Have you  
*diamant pendans-d'oreille, m. Avez, v.*  
 spoken to the silk-merchant? - - Give me the  
*parlé, p. p. marchand, m.*  
 upper - crust. - - Bring me my straw - hat and  
*dessus, croûte, f. mon paille chapeau, m.*  
 my night - cap. - - - - Miss Brown's chamber - maid and  
*nuit bonnet, m. Mlle. chambre fille, f.*  
 Mrs. Rose's house-keeper are two sis-  
*Mme. femme de charge, f. deux*  
 ters. - - The rich make use of silver plate,  
*riche, m. pl. se servent, v. vaisselle*  
 and the poor make use of iron forks  
*pauvre, m. pl. font, v. usage, m. fer, m.*  
 and pewter spoons. - - - - The enemies had a  
*étain, m. cuiller. eurent, v.*  
 hundred men killed, seventy wounded, and  
*cent tués, p. p. soixante-dix blessés, p. p.*  
 forty lost.  
*quarante perdus, p. p.*

*De* is placed after the adjectives signifying dimension, as *épais*, thick; *gros*, big, large; *haut*, high, tall; *large*, wide, broad; *long*, long; and *profond*, deep; though there is no article expressed in English: ex.

*Une table longue de dix pieds et large de huit,* A table ten feet long and eight broad.

But there is a more elegant way, which is, to turn the adjective of dimension into the substantive; then the words of measure and those of dimension are preceded by *de*: ex.

*Une table de dix pieds de longueur et de huit de largeur,* A table ten feet long and eight broad.

In this last example it may be seen, that the French and English are parallel with each other; therefore, in the following exercise, the adjective and substantive are put down, that the learner may translate it both ways.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I saw a tree eighteen feet large.  
*J'ai, v. vu, p.p. un arbre, m. dix-huit pied, m. gros-*  
 ----- I have a box four inches thick,  
*seur\*, une boîte, f. quatre ponce, m. épais-seur,*  
 ten feet long, and six broad. -- I know  
*dix pied, m. long-ueur, large-ur. connois, v.*  
 a man seven feet high. ----- (It is) a ditch  
*un sept haut-ur. C'est, v. un fossé, m.*  
 nine feet six inches deep and five feet broad.  
*neuf profond-ur cinq*  
 (There is) a room fifty paces long and  
*Voilà une chambre, f. cinquante pas, m.*  
 twenty broad. --- The walls of our garden  
*vingt muraille, f. notre, pro.*  
 are or (have) thirty feet three inches high, and two  
*sont, v. or font, v. trente trois deux*  
 feet broad. -- I have a tree eighteen feet round  
*un arbre, m. dix-huit gros-seur, f.*  
 and sixty high.

\* Read *gros*, adjective, *grosseur*, substantive, without separation, and so of the others. See the rules to form the feminine gender, p. 50.

See the rule upon *avoir* and *être* next page.

If the learner translate this last sentence by the adjective of dimension, he must use the word *sont*, which is the proper word of the English *are*, and follows the preceding rule : but if he turn the adjective of dimension into its substantive, the word *sont*, *are*, is to be rendered into French by the verb *ont*, have, and *de* before the word of measure is suppressed.

Literal example by the adjective :

*Notre chambre est longue de vingt pieds et large de douze,*      Our room is long by twenty feet and wide by twelve.

By the substantive :

*Notre chambre a vingt pieds de longueur et douze de largeur,*      Our room has twenty feet in length and twelve in width.

When two substantives are joined together, both making a compound word in English, the first of which denotes the *form* or *use* of the second, the latter must be placed before the former in French, and followed by the particle *à*, in the sense of *for* ; ex.

*Un moulin à papier,*      A paper<sup>s</sup> mill<sup>l</sup>.  
*Une boîte à poudre.*      A powder<sup>s</sup> box<sup>l</sup>.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Gun - powder was invented by a monk.  
*Canon, m. poudre, f. fut, v. inventée, p.p. par, p. moine, m.*  
 The servant has lost the steel, and cannot  
                                  *perdu, p.p. briquet, m. ne peut pas*  
 light the candle. - - - If you go to London  
*allumer, v. chandelle, f. Si, c. allez, v.*  
 to-morrow, bring me a toupee - iron. - Have you  
*demain, adv. apportez, v. toupet, m. fer, m.*  
 seen the water-mill which my father has bought?  
*vu, p.p. que, pro. acheté, p.p.*  
 No, but I have seen the wind-mill which your  
*Non, adv. vent, m.*

brother has built at Greenwich. --- I have  
*fait bâtir, v.* à  
 found your sister's work - bag. --- William has for-  
*ouvrage sac, m.* *Guillaume a dé-*  
 bidden his children to go to the dancing room.  
*fendu à ses d'aller danser salle, f.*

# DECLENSION of UN, M. UNE, F. A or AN.

## SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *un livre*, a book.  
 Gen. Abl. *d'un livre*, of or from a book.  
 Dat. à *un livre*, to a book.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *une plume*, a pen.  
 Gen. Abl. *d'une plume*, of or from a pen.  
 Dat. à *une plume*, to a pen.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have a hat and a sword. --- She speaks  
*chapeau, m.* *épée, f.* *parle, v.*  
 of an officer. --- He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> given<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to<sup>5</sup> a  
*officier, m.* *donné, p.p.* *le, prop.*  
 sailor. -- (There are) a bird and a cage. ---  
*matelot, m.* *Voilà oiseau, m.* *cage, f.*  
 An ungrateful man is a monster (in the) eyes of a  
*ingrat, m.* *monstre, m.* *aux œil, m.*  
 sensible<sup>2</sup> man<sup>1</sup>. -- Alexander was a great warrior,  
*sensé, adj.* *Alexandre, m.* *étoit, v.* *guerrier, m.*  
 and a very learned philosopher. -- A fine  
*très, adv.* *savant, adj.* *philosophe, m.* *belle, adj.*  
 flower in a garden is an ornament.  
*fleur, f.* *ornement, m.*

It must be observed, that the English article *a* or *an*, before nouns of measure, weight, and number, must be rendered in French by the definite articles, *le, la, les*; and by the preposition *par*, used for *time* and *space* in the sense of *each, every, or per*: ex.

<i>Deux chelins le cent,</i>	Two shillings a hundred.
<i>Un écu le boisseau,</i>	A crown a bushel.
<i>Cinq chelins par semaine,</i>	Five shillings a week.
<i>Une guinée par mois,</i>	One guinea a month.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Barley	sells	for three shillings a bushel. . . .
<i>Orge, f.</i>	<i>se vend, v.</i>	
That	ale (is worth)	six pence a pint. . . .
<i>Cette, pro.</i>	<i>ale, f. vaut, v.</i>	<i>sou, m. pinte, f.</i>
Beef	costs eight	pence a pound. . . .
<i>Bœuf, m.</i>	<i>coûte, v. huit, adj.</i>	<i>livre, f.</i>
This	lace cost	a crown an ell. . . . He
<i>Cette, pro.</i>	<i>dentelle, f. coûta, v.</i>	<i>écu, m. aune, f.</i>
sells	his best cloth	a guinea a yard. . .
<i>vend, v.</i>	<i>son, pro. meilleur drap, m.</i>	<i>une verge, f.</i>
Burgundy wine	(is sold) nine	shillings a bottle. . .
	<i>le vin se vend, v. neuf, adj.</i>	
My	shoemaker sold <sup>2</sup>	me <sup>1</sup> two pair of
<i>Mon, pro.</i>	<i>cordonnier, m. a vendu, p. p.</i>	<i>paire, f.</i>
shoes	(at the rate) of <sup>2</sup> half <sup>1</sup> a guinea a pair. . . .	My
<i>soulier</i>	<i>à raison demi</i>	
master comes	twice	a week. . . . My uncle goes
	<i>vient, v. deux fois, adv.</i>	<i>va, v.</i>
to France thrice	a year. . . .	She gives three
	<i>trois fois, adv. an, m.</i>	<i>donne, v.</i>
shillings a day	and ten pence a mile.	
	<i>jour, m.</i>	<i>mille, m.</i>

According to the rule p. 33, *a* or *an* is not expressed in French before the second noun when it qualifies the first; the same article is likewise omitted when the verb *être* precedes the substantive; excepting when that verb has *ce* for its nominative: in the first instance the noun is employed as an adjective, in the second as a substantive; thus *il est homme* signifies, he has the feelings of a man, whilst *c'est un homme* means, there is a man.

*M. D., membre de la chambre des communes*      *M. D., a member of the house of commons.*

*Etes-vous Anglois ?*

Are you an Englishman ?

*Non, Monsieur, je suis François,*

Nor, sir, I am a Frenchman.

### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I saw the Duke of C\*\*\*, a prince of the blood,  
*J'ai vu duc, m. sang, m.*  
 who (was speaking) to Mr. F., a member of  
*qui, pro. parloit, v.*  
 parliament. - - His cousin is a surgeon, and his brother  
*parlement, m. Son chirurgien, m.*  
 is a physician. - - My sister is a milliner,  
*médecin, m. marchande de modes, f.*  
 my brother is a tailor, and I am a carpenter. - -  
*tailleur, m. charpentier, m.*  
 I have read Castor and Pollux, a French opera. - -  
*opéra, m.*  
 Bristol, a sea - port, passes now  
*mer, f. port, m. passe, v. à présent, adv.*  
 for the second city of the kingdom of Eng-  
*pour, p.*  
 land. - - - Is she a duchess, or a marchioness ?  
*Est, v. duchesse, f. marquise, f.*  
 - - - No, she is a countess.  
*comtesse, f.*

### OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives form their plural as the substantives.

#### RULE to form their FEMININE GENDER.

Many adjectives in *al* have no plural for their masculine ; as *conjugal*, conjugal ; *fatal*, fatal ; *filial*, filial ; *natal*, natal ; *naval*, naval ; *total*, total ; and some few others, with which a little practice will soon acquaint the learner.

Adjectives ending in *e* mute are of both genders : ex.

*Un jeune homme,*

A young man.

*Une jeune femme,*

A young woman.



Adjectives ending with one of the following letters, *d, e, i, l, n, r, s, t*, and *u*, form their feminine by adding an *e* mute : ex.

Masc. <i>Grand,</i>	Fem. <i>grande,*</i>	great, tall, large.
<i>Poli,</i>	<i>polie,</i>	polite.
<i>Aimé,</i>	<i>aimée,</i>	loved.
<i>Civil,</i>	<i>civile,</i>	civil.
<i>Demi,</i>	<i>demie,</i>	half.
<i>Nu,</i>	<i>nue,</i>	naked.

The last two adjectives are indeclinable when they precede a substantive, but are declinable when they follow it : ex.

<i>Une demi-livre,</i>	A half-pound.
<i>Une livre et demie,</i>	A pound and a half.
<i>Nu tête,</i> bare head, }	<i>la tête nue.</i>
<i>Nu pieds,</i> bare feet, }	<i>les pieds nus.</i>

There are a few ending in *an, as, el, il, eil, ien, in, es, et, is, on, os, ot*, and *ul*, that double the final letter, before an *e*, mute, for the feminine : ex.

Masc. <i>Gras,</i>	Fem. <i>grasse,</i>	fat.
<i>Gentil,</i>	<i>gentille,</i>	genteel.
<i>Eternel,</i>	<i>éternelle,</i>	eternal.
<i>Pareil,</i>	<i>pareille,</i>	alike.
<i>Chrétien,</i>	<i>chrétienne,</i>	christian.
<i>Épais,</i>	<i>épaisse,</i>	thick.
<i>Bon,</i>	<i>bonne,</i>	good.

\* When that adjective precedes a substantive singular of the feminine gender, beginning with a consonant, we often suppress, in French, both in the pronunciation and writing the *e*, which is supplied by an apostrophe as in the following instances.

<i>A grand' peine,</i>	with hard labour.
<i>Avoir { grand' faim, }</i>	to be { very hungry.
<i>{ grand' soif, }</i>	{ very thirsty.
<i>{ grand' peur, }</i>	{ very much frightened.
<i>Faire grand' chère,</i>	to live well, to fare sumptuously.
<i>La grand' mère,</i>	the grand mother.
<i>La grand' messe,</i>	the high mass.
<i>La grand' chambre,</i>	the high court.

Should however the word *grande* be preceded by *très, fort*, very, *une*, one, or *la plus*, the most, then the final *e* must be added ; as,

<i>Une fort grande salle,</i>	A very large room.
-------------------------------	--------------------

Masc. <i>Gros,</i> <i>Sot,</i>	Fem. <i>grosse,</i> <i>sotte,</i>	big. foolish, simple.
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------	--------------------------

The following are very irregular, and cannot be comprised under any rule, viz.

Masc. <i>Beau, bel,*</i>	Fem. <i>belle,</i>	handsome, fine.
<i>Bénin,</i>	<i>bénigne,</i>	benign.
<i>Favori,</i>	<i>favorite,</i>	favourite.
<i>Fou, fol,*</i>	<i>folle,</i>	foolish, crazy.
<i>Frais,</i>	<i>fraîche,</i>	fresh.
<i>Long,</i>	<i>longue,</i>	long.
<i>Malin,</i>	<i>maligne,</i>	malicious.
<i>Mou, mol,*</i>	<i>molle,</i>	soft.
<i>Nouveau, nouvel,*</i>	<i>nouvelle,</i>	new, novel.
<i>Vieux, vieil,*</i>	<i>vieille,</i>	old.

Adjectives ending in *c* add *he* to the *c* for their feminine : ex.

Masc. <i>Blanc,</i>	Fem. <i>blanche,</i>	white.
<i>Franc,</i>	<i>franche,</i>	sincere.
<i>Sec, -</i>	<i>sèche,</i>	dry, &c.

The four following are excepted.

Masc. <i>Caduc,</i>	Fem. <i>caduque,</i>	in decay.
<i>Grec,</i>	<i>Grecque,</i>	Greek.
<i>Public,</i>	<i>publique,</i>	public.
<i>Turc,</i>	<i>Turque,</i>	Turkish.

Those ending in *f* change *f* into *ve* for the feminine : ex.

Masc. <i>Bref,</i>	Fem. <i>brève,</i>	short.
<i>Naïf,</i>	<i>naïve,</i>	plain, ingenuous.
<i>Neuf,</i>	<i>neuve,</i>	new, not old.
<i>Veuf,</i>	<i>veuve,</i>	widowed.
<i>Vif,</i>	<i>vive,</i>	quick.

Adjectives ending in *x*, change *x* into *se* : ex. \*

Masc. <i>Douloureux,</i>	Fem. <i>douloureuse,</i>	painful, dolorous.
<i>Heureux,</i>	<i>heureuse,</i>	happy, &c.
<i>Jaloux,</i>	<i>jalouse,</i>	jealous.

\* These adjectives are used before substantives beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated.

The following are excepted :

Masc. <i>Doux,</i>	Fem. <i>douce,</i>	sweet.
<i>Faux,</i>	<i>fausse,</i>	false.
<i>Perplex,</i>	<i>perplexe,</i>	perplexed.
<i>Préfix,</i>	<i>préfixe,</i>	prefixed.
<i>Roux,</i>	<i>rousse,</i>	reddish.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

French adjectives must agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case : ex.

### SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Le bon livre,</i>	the good book.
Gen. Abl.	<i>Du bon livre,</i>	of or from the good book.
Dat.	<i>Au bon livre,</i>	to the good book.

### PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bons livres,</i>	the good books.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bons livres,</i>	of or from the good books.
Dat.	<i>aux bons livres,</i>	to the good books.

### SINGULAR.—Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>La bonne plume,</i>	the good pen.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de la bonne plume,</i>	of or from the good pen.
Dat.	<i>à la bonne plume,</i>	to the good pen.

### PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>Les bonnes plumes,</i>	the good pens.
Gen. Abl.	<i>des bonnes plumes,</i>	of or from the good pens.
Dat.	<i>aux bonnes plumes,</i>	to the good pens.

### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

The tall man, the little woman, and the  
*petit, adj.*

pretty children, whom I met yesterday  
*joli, adj. que, pro. ai rencontrés, p.p. hier, adv.*  
with their grandmother (were going) to London :  
*alloient, v.*

they were all very hungry and thirsty. - - - The polite  
*avoient, v.*

inhabitants<sup>1</sup> of that fine city treat all the  
*habitant, m.      cette, pro.      traitent, v.*  
 strangers in a civil<sup>2</sup> and frank<sup>3</sup> manner.<sup>1</sup> - - -  
*étranger, m.      de une      manière, f.*  
 Lean<sup>2</sup> sheep<sup>1</sup> grow fat in good  
*Maigre, adj.      les brebis, f. pl.      deviennent, v.      dans, p.*  
 pastures. - - - Constant<sup>2</sup> study<sup>1</sup> joined to a great  
*pâturage, m.      étude, f.      joint, p. p.*  
 application makes men learned. - - - The new<sup>2</sup>  
*application, f.      rend, v.      savant, adj.      neuf*  
 coat,<sup>1</sup> which you <sup>2</sup>gave <sup>1</sup>me, is  
*habit, m.      que, pro.      avez donné, p. p.*  
 better than the old great-coat which my  
*meilleur, adj.      que, c.      redingote, f.*  
 father had bought at his tailor's. - - We went  
*avoit achetée chez, p.      allâmes, v.*  
 yesterday to the high court where we found all  
*trouvâmes, v.*  
 the judges already met.  
*déjà, ad.      assemblés, p. p.*

As two or more substantives in the singular are equivalent to a plural, the verb and adjective, or participle past, not immediately following them, must be put in the plural, when they refer to two or more substantives in the singular, and that adjective or participle is to be put in the masculine, if these substantives be of different genders : ex.

*Le frère, la sœur, le neveu,      The brother, sister, ne-*  
*et la nièce, sont tous      phew, and niece are all*  
*morts,      dead.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The book, paper, pencil, and penknife, which  
*papier, m.      crayon, m.      canif, m.      que*  
 you lent<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup>, are excellent. - - - 'The  
*avez prêté, p. p.      me, pro.      excellent, adj.*  
 pen, ruler, inkhorn and grammar which my bro-  
*règle, f.      écritoire, f.*

ther has bought, are very good. - - - The king,  
*très,adv.*  
 queen, prince, and princesses were gone. - - - The  
*étoient,v. sorti,p.p.*  
 corn, wheat, rye, pease and beans, in a word, all  
*seigle,m. fève,f. en mol,m.*  
 the grains which were on the ground,  
*grain,m. qui,pro. étoient,v. sur,p. terre,f.*  
 were frozen. - - - My father's house, and my uncle's  
*furent,v. gelé,p.p.*  
 (country-seat) are (very much) alike.  
*château,m. bien,adv. semblable,adj.*

When two or more substantives of different genders  
 are immediately followed by an adjective or participle  
 past, these may agree in gender and number with the last  
 substantive, particularly when the substantives are sy-  
 nonymous or nearly so ; any other case met with in  
 authors is either a poetical licence or an oversight : ex.

*Il gouverne avec un pou- He governs with an abso-  
 voir et une autorité ab- lute power and autho-  
 solue, rity.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He studies with an incredible<sup>3</sup> application<sup>1</sup> and  
*étudie,v. incroyable,adj.*  
 courage<sup>2</sup>. - - - He who has for his guides  
*courage,m. Celui,pro. qui,pro. guide,m.*  
 consummate<sup>3</sup> zeal<sup>1</sup> and prudence<sup>2</sup> deserves  
*consommé,adj. un zèle,m. une prudence,f. mérite,v.*  
 the general<sup>3</sup> esteem<sup>1</sup> and applause<sup>2</sup> of his  
*estime,f. applaudissement,m. ses,pro.*  
 fellow-citizens. - - - I found the doors, the  
*concitoyen,m. ai trouvé,p.p. porte,f.*  
 windows, and the shutters shut.  
*fenêtre,f. volets,m. fermé,p.p.*

## THE PLACE OF THE ADJECTIVE IN A SENTENCE.

Some adjectives are always placed before their substantives, and others after them; but there is a kind of adjectives, which may either precede or follow their substantives, as the euphony of the sentence requires.

The following are commonly placed before.\*

<i>Beau</i> , handsome, fine.	<i>Joli</i> , pretty.
<i>Bon</i> , good.	<i>Méchant</i> , wicked.
<i>Brave</i> , brave.	<i>Mauvais</i> , bad.
<i>Cher</i> , dear.	<i>Meilleur</i> , better.
<i>Chétif</i> , vile, poor, mean.	<i>Moindre</i> , less.
<i>Galant</i> , well-bred.	<i>Petit</i> , little, small.
<i>Grand</i> , great, tall.	<i>Saint</i> , holy.
<i>Gros</i> , big, large.	<i>Tout</i> , all.
<i>Honnête</i> , honest, civil.	<i>Vieux</i> , old.
<i>Jeune</i> , young.	<i>Vrai</i> , true.

### EXERCISE ON THE FOREGOING ADJECTIVES.

I have seen a handsome lady, who (was  
                   *vu*,p.p.                                   *dame*,f.   *qui*,pro.  
 speaking) to an old gentleman. --- He had  
*parloit*,v.                                   *monsieur*,m.   *Il*,pro.   *avoit*,v.  
 a fine hat and a pretty sword. - - Your little  
                   *chapeau*,m.                                   *épée*,f.   *Votre*,pro.  
 sister deserved a better fate. - - I know a young  
                   *méritoit*,v.                                   *destin*,m.   *connois*,v.  
 man who has a good horse, but a bad stable. ---  
   *cheval*,m.                                   *écurie*,f.

\* No general rule can be given on this subject however, for of those adjectives enumerated here above, many may be placed after and receive a new signification, thus *un galant homme* means a well-bred man, *un homme galant*, a gallant, &c. Practice and observation only will give that knowledge.—See next rule.

He<sup>1</sup> has<sup>3</sup> lent<sup>4</sup> it<sup>2</sup> to an honest man. -- The  
*a prêté, p.p. le, pro.*  
 apostle Paul was a holy man. --- My brother has  
*apôtre, m.*  
 bought a good watch. --- Your father was a  
*acheté, p.p. montre, f. étoit, v.*  
 brave general, and a well-bred man. --- You have  
*avez, v.*  
 lost all your money. ---- Vile creature, I have  
*perdu, p.p. créature, f.*  
 heard your wicked conversation. - - - Mr. A. is a  
*entendu, p.p. conversation, f.*  
 great man, and the best of all fathers.  
*homme*

Some adjectives have different meanings according as they are placed before or after their substantive, as, *une femme sage*, a wise woman: *une sage femme*, a midwife; and *une grosse femme*, a big woman; *une femme grosse*, a pregnant woman; *un homme honnête*, a civil man; *un honnête homme*, an honest man; a little practice will soon remove any of these apparent difficulties.

The following adjectives must be placed after their substantives.

1. All participles used as adjectives; as,

*Une personne reconnoissante,* A grateful person.  
*Du bœuf rôti,* Roast beef.

2. All adjectives expressing the *shape* or *form*; as,

*Une table ronde,* A round table.  
*Une chambre carrée,* A square room.

3. All adjectives expressing the *colour* or *taste*; as,

*Un chapeau noir,* A black hat.  
*Un habit rouge,* A red coat.  
*Une pomme douce,* A sweet apple.  
*Une liqueur amère,* A bitter liquor.

4. All adjectives expressing the *matter* of which a thing is composed ; as,

<i>Des parties sulfureuses,</i>	Sulphurous parts.
<i>Un corps aérien,</i>	An aerial body.

5. All adjectives expressing the quality of *hearing* and *touching* ; as,

<i>Un instrument sonore,</i>	A sonorous instrument.
<i>Une voix harmonieuse,</i>	An harmonious voice.
<i>Un bois dur,</i>	A hard wood.
<i>Un corps mou,</i>	A soft body.

6. All adjectives expressing the name of nations ; as,

<i>L'empire Romain,</i>	The Roman empire.
<i>La poésie Angloise,</i>	The English poetry.

7. All adjectives, which, when used by themselves, convey the meaning of a substantive, as *rich*, *blind*, &c.

<i>Un homme riche,</i>	A rich man.
<i>Une femme aveugle,</i>	A blind woman.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

An ignorant young man is despised by (every body.) --- You have an English hat, and she has a French gown. - He reads an Italian proverb. - *méprisé, p.p. de, p. tout le monde, m. Anglois, adj.*

*François, adj. robe, f. lit, v. Italien, adj. proverbe, m.*

I like (very much) the German tongue and *aime, v. beaucoup, adv. Allemand, adj. langue, f.*

the Spanish dress. - - - (It is) a square place.

*Espagnol, adj. habillement, m. C'est, v. carré, adj. placé, f.*

She likes sweet wine. - - Your sister has an harmonious voice. - - - I have bought a white gown

*voix, f. blanc, adj.*

and a black cloak. --- You have a faithful

*noir, adj. mantelet, m. fidèle, adj.*



servant. - - - - - I eat green pease, with  
*domestique, m. et, f. mange, v. vert, adj.*  
 boiled mutton. - Bring me a pound and a half  
*bouilli, p.p. mouton, m. demi, adj.*  
 of cherries, and half a pound of currants. - We had a  
*cérise, f. groseille, f. etimes, v.*  
 kind reception, and we played at a di-  
*favorable, adj. accueil, m. jouâmes, v. à, p. di-*  
 verting game. - He lives in a cold country.  
*vertissant, adj. jeu, m. demeure, v. froid, adj. pays, m.*  
 - - You have left the windows and the door  
*laissé, p.p. fenêtre, f. porte, f.*  
 open. - - Will you have a bit of roast  
*morceau, m. rôti, p.p.*  
 chicken? - - Do you<sup>s</sup> read<sup>t</sup> the Punic war? - -  
*poulet, m. lisez, v. Punique, adj. guerre, f.*  
 He has made a rash vow. - - Your sister  
*fait, p.p. téméraire, adj. vœu, m.*  
 is an agreeable lady. - - I like a grey stuff. - -  
*agréable, adj. gris, adj. étoffe, f.*  
 (It was) really a tragical history.  
*C'étoit, v. réellement, adv. tragique, adj. histoire, f.*

When two or more adjectives belong to one substan-  
 tive, the surest way is to place them after it, with the  
 conjunction *et*, and, before the last; and if an adject-  
 ive be used in a sentence without a substantive, this  
 adjective must always be rendered in French by the  
 masculine gender.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

We have a just, wise, and bountiful king. - -  
*juste, adj. sage, adj. bienfaisant, adj.*  
 Mr. Brown's daughter is with a sincere and  
*Monsieur, m. sincère, adj.*  
 generous lady. - - I have a scholar of a solid,  
*généreux, adj. écolier, m. solide, adj.*  
 bright, and lively genius. - - The wicked  
*brillant, adj. vif, adj. esprit, m. méchant, adj. pl.*  
 (shall be) punished. - - Miss Preston is a  
*seront, v. puni, p.p. Mademoiselle, f.*

young, handsome, and well-shaped lady. - - She has  
*bien-fait*, adj.  
 married a sober, virtuous, and amiable  
*épousé*, p.p. *sobre*, adj. *vertueux*, adj. *aimable*, adj.  
 man.—The good (shall be) praised.—The diligent  
*seront*, pl. *loué*, p.p. *diligent*, adj. pl.  
 (shall be) rewarded.  
*récompensé*, p.p.

## DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

Adjectives and adverbs are the only kind of words that will admit of different degrees of *more* or *less* in the several qualities of persons or things.

There are two degrees of comparison :

1. *Le comparatif*, the comparative.
2. *Le superlatif*, the superlative.

Some grammarians admit of another degree, which they call *positive* : but this is merely an adjective used in its simple signification, without expressing any increase or diminution : ex. *joli*, pretty ; *aimable*, lovely.

The *comparative* refers to some other person or thing, and shows its *equality*, *excess* or *defect* : it is therefore of three sorts :

1. *Le comparatif d'égalité*, The comparative by equality.
2. *Le comparatif d'excès*, The comparative by excess.
3. *Le comparatif de défaut*, The comparative by defect.

The comparative by *equality* is formed by placing the adverbs *autant*, as much, as many ; *aussi*, so, or as, before an adjective ; and *que*, as, after it : ex.

<i>Votre oncle a autant d'argent, et autant d'amis que mon père,</i>	Your uncle has <i>as much</i> money, and <i>as many</i> friends <i>as</i> my father.
<i>Ma sœur est aussi ambitieuse que vous,</i>	My sister is <i>as</i> ambitious <i>as</i> you.
<i>Mon frère est aussi savant que le vôtre,</i>	My brother is <i>as</i> learned <i>as</i> yours.

**N. B.**—From the preceding examples and the following, it will be easily seen that when the adverbs, *tant*, so much, so many; *autant*, as much, as many; *plus*, more, and *moins*, less, are immediately followed by a substantive, that substantive must be preceded by *de*. The learner will also observe that *si* and *aussi*, so, as; generally precede adjectives, when a comparison is made by either; whereas *tant* and *autant* are always followed by a noun or verb, the French conjunction *que*, Englished by either *as*, *than*, or *that*, being the term of the comparison; *plus* or *moins* may precede either an adjective, a noun, or verb.

*Than*, after *more* or *less*, *plus* ou *moins*, followed by a noun of number, is rendered in French by *de*, and not by *que*: ex.

<i>Je perds plus d'un Louis et</i>	I lose more than a Louis and
<i>vous gagnez moins de cinq</i>	you gain less than five
<i>francs,</i>	francs.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Alexander was as ambitious	as	Cæsar. --
<i>étoit, v. ambitieux, adj.</i>	<i>que, c.</i>	<i>César, m.</i>
I am as tall	as you. --	Miss D. has as much live-
<i>suis, v. haut, adj.</i>	<i>Mlle a, v.</i>	<i>viva-</i>
liness, and she is as amiable as her	cousin. --	If my fa-
<i>cité, f. est, v.</i>	<i>sa, pro. cousine, f. Si, c.</i>	
ther were as rich as my uncle, he (would make) a better		
<i>étoit, v.</i>	<i>oncle, m. feroit, v.</i>	
use of his riches. - We have as many books as your		
<i>usage, m. ses, pro.</i>	<i>autant, adv. vos, pro.</i>	
brothers, and they are as learned as we. - I am as honest		
<i>sont, v.</i>	<i>nous, pro.</i>	
and civil as my companions. -- You owe	me more	
<i>compagnon, m.</i>	<i>devez, v.</i>	
than two dollars, and you pay me less than fifty cents.		
<i>gourde</i>	<i>payez</i>	<i>sou, m.</i>

The comparative by excess is formed by placing the adverb *plus*, more, before an adjective: ex.

<i>Sa cousine est plus diligente</i>	Her cousin is more diligent
<i>que moi, et est plus savante</i>	than I, and is more learned
<i>que vous,</i>	ed than you.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Miss A. is handsomer and more learned than  
*Mlle* *que, c.*  
 her sisters. -- Lucia is taller and more proud  
*Lucie, f.* *orgueilleux, adj.:*  
 than her little cousin. --- His sister is more  
*sa, pro.* *f.* *Sa, pro.*  
 covetous than he. --- Nothing is pleasanter to  
*avare, adj.* *lui, pro.* *Rien ne, adv.* *agréable, adj.*  
 the mind than the light of truth. ---  
*esprit, m.* *lumière, f.* *vérité, f.*  
 Nothing is more lovely than virtue, and  
*aimable, adj.*  
 nothing is more desirable than wisdom. ---  
*désirable, adj.* *sagesse, f.*  
 My daughter is taller than your son by\* two inches. ---  
*de* *pouce, m.*  
 Your brother is taller than you by the<sup>2</sup> whole<sup>1</sup> head<sup>3</sup>. ---  
*tout* *tête, f.*  
 In winter the roads are always worse than  
*En hiver, m.* *chemin, m.* *plus mauvais, adj.*  
 in summer. -- He gave<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> a more beautiful eagle.  
*été.* *donna* *aigle, f.*

The comparative by defect is formed by placing the adverb *moins*, less, before an adjective; or *tant*, so much, so many; or *si*, so; with the negation *ne pas*, or *point*, not; or *ne, ni*, neither, nor, before them: ex.

*Votre cousine est moins noble* Your cousin is *less* noble  
*que vous,* *than you.*  
*Il n'est pas si orgueilleux que* He is not *so* proud as his  
*sa sœur,* *sister.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Mrs. P\*\*\* is less polite than her daughter,  
*Mme* *poli, adj.*  
 but her daughter (is not) so revengeful as she.  
*n'est pas, adv.* *vindictif, adj.*  
 You are<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>not<sup>3</sup> so dutiful as your brother.  
*êtes, v.* *ne pas, adv.* *obéissant, adj.*  
 My father is not so rich as yours, but he has  
*le vôtre, pro.*

\* By, after a comparison is rendered into French by *de*.

not so much self-love. - - - - Miss Goodwill has less wit  
*amour-propre, m. Mlle*

than her mother. - - - - Paris (is not) so populous as  
*peuple, adj.*

London.—Your companion is neither so prudent nor  
*n'est ni ni*  
 so circumspect as you.

It must be observed, that in sentences in which the  
 above adverbs *more* or *less* are repeated to express a  
 comparison, the definite article *the*, preceding either, is  
 totally suppressed in French: as,

Plus on est pauvre, moins on The poorer\* people are, the  
*a d'embarras,* less care they have.

Plus je la vois, plus je la The more I see her, the  
*hais,* more I hate her.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The more a thing is difficult, the more honour-  
*chose, f. difficile, adj. hono-*

able<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup> is<sup>2</sup>. - - - The less you give to your chil-  
*drable, adj. elle, pro. donnez, v. vos*

dren, the less they spend. - - - The 'richer' they<sup>2</sup>  
*ils, pro. dépensent, v.*

are<sup>3</sup>, the more covetous they are. - - The more a  
*avare, adj.*

young man studies, the more learned he grows.  
*étudie, v. savant, adj. devient, v.*

The more a drunkard drinks, the more thirsty he is. - -  
*ivrogne, m. boit, v. altéré, adj.*

The more odious laziness is, the more we should  
*odieux, adj. paresse, f. devrions, v.*

avoid<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>. - - The less you apply, the less you  
*éviter, v. la, pro. vous vous appliquez, v.*

learn. - - The more they know<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>, the less  
*apprenez, v. connaîtront, v. fut.*

they will esteem<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup>.  
*estimeront, v. fut.*

The above comparative adverbs, *si, aussi, tant, autant, plus* and *moins*, must be repeated, in French, before

\* *Poorer, richer*, and all similar forms are rendered into French by  
*more poor, more rich*; observe well the construction of the above sen-  
 tence.

each adjective, noun, verb, or adverb, in the sentence :  
ex.

<i>Volre frère est aussi savant</i>	Your brother is <i>as</i> learned
<i>et aussi éclairé que mon</i>	and enlightened <i>as</i> my
<i>cousin,</i>	cousin.
<i>M. Robert n'a ni tant de</i>	Mr. Robert has neither <i>so</i>
<i>bien ni tant d'esprit que</i>	<i>much</i> wealth nor wit <i>as</i>
<i>M. Dubois,</i>	Mr. Dubois.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

My father has *as* many (apple - trees)  
*autant,adv.* *pommier,m.*  
 and (pear - trees) in his orchard *as* (there are)  
*poirier,m.* *verger,m.* *il y en a,v.*  
 in yours. - - - His eldest brother (will be) more  
*le vôtre.* *aîné, adj.* *sera, v.*  
 attentive, industrious, and rich than he. - - -  
*attentif,adj.* *industrieux,adj.* *lui, pro.*  
 Miss A\*\*\* has less wit, less liveliness, and becom-  
*vivacité* *agré-*  
 ingness than her sister. - - She has *as* much virtue  
*mens*  
 and good sense *as* beauty and modesty. - - My  
*sens* *Mon, pro.*  
 cousin is *as* merry, lively, and amiable *as* his  
*gai,adj.* *enjoué,adj.* *ses,pro.*  
 school-fellows.  
*compagnon,m.*

The same rule is to be observed with respect to the adverbs used in forming the superlative degree.

The three following adjectives are comparative by themselves, *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; and *moindre*, less; which signify *plus bon*, *plus mauvais*, *plus petit*; and *aîné*, elder, or eldest, is used for *plus âgé*, or *le plus âgé*.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The watch which my grand-father has bought  
*montre,f.* *que,pro.* *grand-père,m.* *achetée,p.p.*  
 is better than the clock which he gave to  
*pendule, f.* *a donnée, p.p.*  
 my mother. - - - My friend's buckles are better than  
*mère,f.* *boucle,f.*

those of his uncle, but mine are worse  
*celles, pro. oncle, m. les miennes, pro.*  
 than his. - - - - - The life of a slave is  
*les siennes, pro. vie, f. esclave, m.*  
 ten times worse than death itself. - - - - - The  
*dix fois, adv. mort, f. même, adv.*  
 pain which I endure is less than that which  
*peine, f. que souffre, v. celle, pro. qui, pro.*  
 is inflicted on galley-slaves.  
*infligée, p. p. aux galérien, m.*

The *superlative* expresses the highest degree of any quality. There are two kinds of superlatives: 1. The *relative* which expresses the quality of a person or thing above all others of the same kind. In this case, one of the following articles, *le, la, les, de, du, de la, des, à, au, à la, aux*, precede the adverbs *plus*, standing then for *most, mieux*, best, *moins*, least, before an adjective; or the adjectives *meilleur*, best, *moindre*, least, *pire*, worst: *ex.*

*Votre sœur est la plus belle* Your sister is the hand-  
*et la meilleure femme de* somest and best woman  
*la ville,* in the town.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The vine is one of the <sup>2</sup>most useful<sup>3</sup>\* and agree-  
*vigne, f. un les plus utiles, adj. pl.*  
 able gifts<sup>1</sup> of Providence<sup>5</sup>. - - Virtue is <sup>1</sup>the<sup>3</sup> most<sup>4</sup> pre-  
*don, m. Providence, f. pré-*  
 cious<sup>5</sup> thing<sup>2</sup> † in the world. - - The lion is the  
*cieux, adj. chose, f. du monde, m.*  
 strongest and most courageous of all animals. - - -  
*fort, adj. courageux, adj. animal, m.*  
 (There is) the handsomest lady in London. - - She is  
*Voilà, adv. de*  
 so touchy, that she will not bear the least  
*bourru, adj. veut, v. souffrir, v.*  
 joke. - - - - Miss P. is the mildest, politest, and most  
*raillerie, f. doux, adj. poli, adj.*  
 affable of all her sisters. - - Ingratitude is  
*affable, adj. ses, pro.*

\* See the gender of adjectives, p. 50. † See the note in the page that follows this.

the greatest of all vices. - - - If France were as rich  
   *vice, m.*   *étoit, v.*  
 as England, (it would be) the best country in the world.\*  
   *ce seroit, v.*   *pays, m.*

The *absolute* simply expresses the quality of a person or thing in its highest degree. This happens when one of the adverbs *très, fort, bien, very, infiniment*, infinitely, precedes an adjective; and when any of the comparatives by excess or defect are preceded by one of the possessive pronouns *mon, ton, son, notre, votre, leur, &c.* they become superlatives: ex.

*Votre oiseau est très-joli,*           Your bird is very pretty.  
*Vous êtes mon meilleur ami,*    You are my best friend.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

God is a being infinitely great and perfect. - - -  
   *être, m.*   *parfait, adj.*  
 I am your most humble and obedient  
   *très, adv.*   *obéissant, adj.*  
 servant. - - - The front of your house is very  
*serviteur, m.*   *façade, f.*  
 beautiful. - - - - You are very good, but your brother  
*beau.*  
 is very wicked. - - - - My uncle has a very fine coun-  
   *méchant, adj.*   *cam-*  
 try - house, and very spacious<sup>2</sup> gardens<sup>1</sup>. - - -  
*pagne*   *spacieux, adj.*  
 My best friend is dead. - - - - Our common  
   *Notre, pro. commun, adj.*  
 enemy has 'the<sup>3</sup> most<sup>4</sup> inveterate<sup>5</sup> hatred<sup>2</sup> against  
   *invétééré, adj. haine, f. contre, p.*  
 this country. - - - - Their least embarrassments  
*ce, pro. pays, m.*   *Leurs, pro. embarras, m.*

\* It may be observed in some of these examples, that the preposition *in*, following an adjective in the superlative degree, must be rendered in French by one of these articles *de, du, de la, des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which it belongs. The preposition *by*, when it follows an adjective in the comparative degree, is rendered by *de* only.



make their greatest delight. . . . . Pride and  
*font, v.* *délices, f. pl.* *Orgueil, m.*  
 passion are his least defects.  
*colère, f.* *ses, pro.* *défaut, m.*

## OF NUMBERS.

There are two kinds of numbers: 1st, The *absolute*, which simply relates the number of the things spoken of, viz.

<i>Un</i> , (femin. <i>une</i> ,)	One.	
<i>Deux</i> ,	Two.	
<i>Trois</i> ,	Three.	
<i>Quatre</i> ,	Four.	
<i>Cinq</i> , ( <i>q</i> is sounded,)	Five.	
<i>Six</i> , (pron. <i>siss</i> ,)	Six.	
<i>Sept</i> , (pron. <i>set</i> ,)	Seven.	
<i>Huit</i> , ( <i>t</i> is sounded,)	Eight.	
<i>Neuf</i> , ( <i>f</i> is sounded,)	Nine.	
<i>Dix</i> , (pron. <i>diss</i> ,)	Ten.	
<i>Onze</i> ,	Eleven.	
<i>Douze</i> ,	Twelve.	
<i>Treize</i> ,	Thirteen.	
<i>Quatorze</i> ,	Fourteen.	
<i>Quinze</i> ,	Fifteen.	
<i>Seize</i> , ( <i>sei</i> is broad,)	Sixteen.	
<i>Dix-sept</i> , (pron. <i>diss-set</i> ,)	Seventeen.	
<i>Dix-huit</i> , (pron. <i>diz-uit</i> ,)	Eighteen.	
<i>Dix-neuf</i> , (pron. <i>diz-neuf</i> ,)	Nineteen.	
<i>Vingt</i> , ( <i>gt</i> are dropped,)	Twenty.	
<i>Vingt et un</i> ,	} <i>g</i> is dropt, but <i>t</i> is sounded.	Twenty-one.
<i>Vingt-deux</i> ,		Twenty-two.
<i>Vingt-trois</i> , &c. }		Twenty-three, &c.
<i>Trente</i> ,	Thirty.	
<i>Trente et un</i> ,	Thirty-one.	
<i>Trente-deux</i> , &c.	Thirty-two, &c.	
<i>Quarante</i> ,	Forty.	
<i>Cinquante</i> ,	Fifty.	
<i>Soixante</i> , (pron. <i>soissante</i> ,)	Sixty.	
<i>Soixante et un</i> ,	Sixty-one.	
<i>Soixante et deux</i> , &c.	Sixty-two, &c.	

<i>Soixante et dix,</i>	Seventy.
<i>Soixante et onze, &amp;c.</i>	Seventy-one, &c.
<i>Quatre-vingts, (gts are dropped, and gt in the following too,)</i>	Eighty.
<i>Quatre-vingt-un,</i>	Eighty-one.
<i>Quatre-vingt-deux, &amp;c.</i>	Eighty-two, &c.
<i>Quatre-vingt-dix, &amp;c.</i>	Ninety, &c.
<i>Cent, (t in cent is dropped, and in the following too,)</i>	A or one* hundred.
<i>Cent-un,</i>	A or one* hundred and one, &c.
<i>Deux-cents, (x is dropped, and the two final consonants in the following also, and before any other word, beginning with a consonant,)</i>	Two hundred.
<i>Trois Cents,</i>	Three hundred.
<i>Neuf cents, (f dropped,)</i>	Nine hundred.
<i>Mille, mil,†</i>	A or one* thousand.
<i>Deux mille,</i>	Two thousand.
<i>Trois mille, &amp;c.</i>	Three thousand, &c.
<i>Cent mille, &amp;c.</i>	A or one* hundred thousand, &c.
<i>Neuf cent mille, (f dropped,)</i>	Nine hundred thousand.
<i>Un million,</i>	A million.

These *absolute numbers* are declined with the article indefinite *de, à,* and are always placed before the substantive to which they are joined without any article intervening; and they are invariable in their form, except *quatre-vingt*, eighty; *cent*, a hundred; and *million*, a million; which take an *s* in their plural, when immediately followed by a substantive: ex.

<i>Quatre-vingts femmes,</i>	Eighty women.
<i>Deux cents hommes,</i>	Two hundred men.

\* It will be seen by the following, that the English particle *a* or *one* is not expressed in French: ex.

*Je l'ai vu et lui ai parlé cent fois, mille fois,* I have seen him and spoken to him a hundred times, a thousand times.

† Mentioning the date of the year, we must write, *mil*, and not *mille*: ex. *L'an mil huit-cent quinze*, the year 1815.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I was in the company of seven gentlemen and  
*compagnie, f. MM.*  
 nine ladies. -- He has spoken to three officers and  
*dame parlé, p. p.*  
 two generals. -- If I had a hundred guineas I would<sup>2</sup>  
*avois, v. guinée en*  
 lend<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> eighty. -- The army of our  
*prêteroïs, v. armée, f. nos, pro.*  
 allies was composed of a hundred thousand  
*allié, m. étoit composée, p. p.*  
 men of foot, and twenty thousand of horse. -- -  
*infanterie cavalerie.*  
 They took fifteen hundred men prisoners,  
*priront, v. prisonnier,*  
 killed four thousand, wounded a thousand,  
*en tuèrent, v. en blessèrent, v.*  
 and (carried away) above two millions in specie. -- -  
*emportèrent, v. plus de espèces.*  
 The battle (was fought) in one thousand eight hun-  
*bataille, f. se livra, v. en*  
 dred and fourteen, at three o'clock (in the) morning.  
*en heure, f. du matin.*

These numbers are employed as substantives, in some cases, as in the game of cards, and in dates : ex.

<i>Le huit de cœur,</i>	The eight of hearts.
<i>Nous partîmes de Boston</i>	We left Boston on the fif-
<i>le quinze,</i>	teenth.
<i>Je reviendrai le douze,</i>	I shall return on the twelfth.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Will you but tell<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup>, if you have the seven of  
*seulement dire*  
 clubs ? - Yes, I have<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>, and the ten of spades too. - The  
*trèfle ? ai le pique aussi.*

nine of diamonds (is missing) in this pack. -- I (shall be)  
*carreau manque ce jeu. serai*

absent for a week or two, but you may be certain, that

I shall be here on the twenty-fifth. -- Tell my sister  
*pouvez Dites à*

that I expect<sup>2</sup> her<sup>1</sup> on the seventeenth. -- -- -- You may  
*attends la*

date your letter the twenty-sixth. -- -- -- The  
*dater, v. du*

sixteenth (will be) her birth-day. -- -- -- The ten of  
*sera son jour de naissance, m.*

diamonds is not good. -- I have the ace of spades. --  
*carreau as pique.*

We (shall have) a holiday on the twenty-fifth instant. -- --  
*aurons du courant.*

Congress met on the third of December. -- --  
*s'est assemblé*

We received the President's Message on Friday, the  
*recumes*  
 fifth of this month, it is most excellent.

*ce très*

In every instance therefore the cardinal numbers must be used in French when speaking of the days of the month, though the ordinal be used in English; excepting for *le premier*, the first, speaking of the first day of every month: as,

*Le premier de Mai,*

The first of May.

*Le deux de Novembre,*

The second of November.

*C'est aujourd'hui le quatre  
 d'Août.*

To day is the fourth of  
 August.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My friend will come (to see<sup>2</sup>) us<sup>1</sup> on the fifth of  
*viendra, v. voir, v.*

next<sup>2</sup> month<sup>1</sup>. -- Lady<sup>2</sup> - day<sup>1</sup> falls  
*prochain, adj. mois, m. Notre Dame jour, m. tombe, v.*  
 on the twenty-fifth of March. -- In the leap<sup>2</sup>

*Mars, m. bissextile, adj.*

year<sup>1</sup> the month of February has one day more,  
*année, f.* *Février, m.* *de plus, adv.*  
 which is the twenty-ninth. -- The first of November  
*qui, pro.* *Novembre, m.*  
 is (all-saints - day,) and the fifth of the same month  
*la toussaint* *même, adj. mois, m.*  
 is the day of the <sup>2</sup>Gun powder <sup>1</sup>plot. -----  
*des poudres, pl. conspiration, f.*  
 Come on the first day of July.  
*Venez, v.* *Juillet, m.*

2. *The ordinal numbers.* This class of numerals, beside the simple notation, signifies the order or rank of things, viz.

<i>Le premier ou unième,</i>	The first.
<i>Le second ou deuxième,</i>	The second.
<i>Le troisième,</i>	The third.
<i>Le quatrième,</i>	The fourth.
<i>Le cinquième,</i>	The fifth.
<i>Le sixième,</i>	The sixth.
<i>Le septième,</i>	The seventh.
<i>Le huitième,*</i>	The eighth.
<i>Le neuvième,</i>	The ninth.
<i>Le dixième,</i>	The tenth.
<i>Le onzième,*</i>	The eleventh.
<i>Le douzième,</i>	The twelfth.
<i>Le treizième,</i>	The thirteenth.
<i>Le quatorzième,</i>	The fourteenth.
<i>Le quinzième,</i>	The fifteenth.
<i>Le seizième,</i>	The sixteenth.
<i>Le dix-septième,</i>	The seventeenth.
<i>Le dix-huitième,</i>	The eighteenth.
<i>Le dix-neuvième,</i>	The nineteenth.
<i>Le vingtième,</i>	The twentieth.
<i>Le vingt-et-unième,</i>	The twenty-first.
<i>Le vingt-deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	The twenty-second, &c.
<i>Le trentième,</i>	The thirtieth.
<i>Le trente-deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	The thirty-second, &c.
<i>Le quarantième,</i>	The fortieth.

\* No elision is to be made in the article before *onze, onzième; huit, huitième*; for we say, *le, du, au, la, de la, à la, &c. onze, onzième, &c.*

<i>Le cinquantième,</i>	The fiftieth.
<i>Le soixantième,</i>	The sixtieth.
<i>Le soixante-et-dixième,</i>	The seventieth.
<i>Le quatre-vingtième,</i>	The eightieth.
<i>Le centième,</i>	The hundredth.
<i>Le cent unième,</i>	The hundred and first.
<i>Le cent deuxième, &amp;c.</i>	The hundred and second, &c.
<i>Le deux centième,</i>	The two hundredth.
<i>Le millième,</i>	The thousandth.

These ordinal numbers are declined with the article definite *le, la, &c.* and are placed before their substantives: ex.

*Le premier jour du mois,*      The first day of the month.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE RULE PAGE 70.

On the eleventh of June I received twelve letters,  
*Juin ai reçu, v.*  
 but the eleventh<sup>2</sup> has afforded<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> more  
*procuré, p.p. me, pro. plus, adv.*  
 pleasure than the others. - - - Mrs. B. is the fifth  
*autre, pro. Mme*  
 lady whom I saw to day. - - - The spring  
*que, pro. ai vue, p.p. aujourd'hui, adv. printemps, m.*  
 begins on the twenty-first or twenty-second of  
*commence, v. ∞*  
 March. - - - He cannot spend the sixth  
*Mars. ne peut pas, v. dépenser, v.*  
 part of his fortune. - - - The eleventh of No-  
*partie, f. sa, pro. fortune, f.*  
 vember, which is the eleventh month of the year,  
*année, f.*  
 was 'the<sup>3</sup> dullest<sup>4</sup> day<sup>2</sup> of the<sup>5</sup> whole<sup>5</sup> month<sup>7</sup>.  
*ful triste, adj. tout, adj.*

Speaking of sovereigns, we use the *absolute* number in French, though the ordinal be used in English, except the *first* and *second*; and we place it after the substantive, as in English, without expressing the article *the*: ex.

George Trois,  
Louis Seize,  
Henri Quatre,  
Henri Premier,  
George Second,

George the Third.  
Lewis the Sixteenth.  
Henry the Fourth.  
Henry the First.  
George the Second.

and not, Henri Un, George Deux.

We say, for the following *solitary names* of an *Emperor* and a *Pope*, as a distinction from other sovereigns,

Charles Quint,  
Sixte Quint,

Charles the Fifth.  
Sixtus the Fifth.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Edward the Sixth, the son of Henry the  
Edouard, m.  *fils*  
Eighth, and the grand - son of Henry the Seventh,  
 *petit, adj.*

was<sup>2</sup> <sup>1</sup>but<sup>3</sup> nine years old when he began  
*avoit, v. ne que an quand, c. commença, v.*  
to reign. - - - - - Henry the Fifth, King of England,  
*à régner, v. roi, m.*

the son of Henry the Fourth, and father of Henry  
the Sixth, married Catharine, the daughter of  
*épousa, v. Cathérine*

Charles the Sixth, king of France; conquered the  
*conquit, v.*

greatest part of that kingdom, and died (in the)  
*partie, f. ce, pro. royaume, m. mourut, v. au*

midst of his victories. - - - (Long live) George  
*milieu ses, pro. victoire, f. Vive, v.*

the Third, grand - son to George the Second. - - -  
*petit, adj.*

Charles the Fifth, Emperor of Germany and king of  
*Allemagne, roi, m.*

Spain; and Sixtus the Fifth, one of the popes, were  
*pape, m. étoient, v.*

two great men.  
*grand, adj.*

The definite article *the* is also suppressed in French before the ordinal number, when it is preceded by a noun used to quote a *chapter, article, or page* of a book;

but, should the ordinal number precede the noun, the construction is the same in French as in English, and the article is expressed: *ex.*

*Livre troisième,*

Book the third.

*Le troisième livre,*

The third book.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

What you (look for) you (will find<sup>2</sup>) it<sup>1</sup>  
*Ce que, pro. cherchez, v. trouverez, v. le, pro.*  
 in the Second Book of Samuel, chapter the third,  
*Samuel, chapitre*  
 verse the ninth, page the first, and line tenth.  
*verset page, f. ligne*  
 ----- We read in Telemachus, book the  
*lisons, v. dans Télémaque,*  
 seventh, page the hundred and twenty-fifth, that  
*que*  
 Mentor pushed Telemachus into the sea, and  
*poussa, v. mer, f.*  
 threw<sup>3</sup> himself<sup>1</sup> (into it<sup>2</sup>) afterward with  
*jeta, v. se, pro. y, adv. ensuite, adv.*  
 him. --- Our master forgives the first time,  
*lui, pro. Notre, pro. pardonne, v. fois, f.*  
 threatens the second, and always<sup>2</sup> punishes<sup>1</sup>  
*menace, v. toujours, adv. punit, v.*  
 the third.

#### RECAPITULATORY or promiscuous EXERCISES upon all the preceding RULES. Review them well be- fore you write.

Ignorance is the mother of admiration,  
*Ignorance, f. est, v. mère, f. admiration, f.*  
 error, and superstition. ---- The covetous de-  
*erreur, f. superstition, f. avare, adj. pl. mé-*  
 spise the poor. ----- Humility is the basis of  
*prisent, v. pauvre, adj. pl. Humilité, f. base, f.*  
 Christian virtues. - Pride is generally the effect  
*Chrétien, adj. Orgueil, m. effet, m.*  
 of ignorance. - - Give me some bread, meat,  
*Donnez, v. moi, pro.*



turnips, and water. -- Merit and favour are  
*navet,* *Mérite, m.* *faveur, f.* *sont, v.*  
 the two springs of envy. ---- Interest, pleasure,  
*source, f.* *envie, f.* *Intérêt,*  
 and glory, are the three motives of the actions  
*motif, m.* *action,*  
 and conduct of men. -- Is<sup>2</sup> it<sup>3</sup> 'not<sup>4</sup>  
*conduite, f.* *Est, v.* *ce, pro.* *ne pas, adv.*  
 Peter's book? ---- Your father is gone to London,  
*allé, p. p.*  
 where he has bought some horses and cows, which  
*vache, f.* *que, pro.*  
 he intends to send to Canada or Jamaica.  
*se propose, v.* *d'envoyer, v.* *ou*  
 ---- The father's house and the son's garden  
*maison, f.* *jardin, m.*  
 (are adjoining.) ---- He found the windows  
*se joignent, v.* *trouva, v.*  
 and the doors shut. -- Truth is the bond of  
*Vérité, f.* *lien, m.*  
 union and the basis of human happiness:  
*union, f.* *base, f.* *humain, adj.* *bonheur, m.*  
 without it (there is no) confidence in  
*sans, p.* *elle, pro.* *il n'y a point* *confiance, f.*  
 friendship, and no security in promises. --  
*amitié, f.* *point, adv.* *sûreté* *promesse, f.*  
 The love of liberty and independence is the  
*amour, m.* *liberté, f.*  
 character of noble minds. --- Iron, steel,  
*caractère, m.* *âme, f.* *Fer, m.* *acier, m.*  
 and brass are more useful than gold and  
*cuirre, m.* *utile, adj.*  
 silver. -- The smith has (at last) repaired  
*serrurier, m.* *enfin, adv.* *réparé, p. p.*  
 the two jacks, and the cook (is  
*tourne-broche, m.* *cuisinière, f.* *fait*  
 roasting) the meat. -- I have seen the inside of the  
*rôlir, v.* *dedans, m.*  
 church. --- Bring me my powder-box, and  
*église, f.* *ma, pro.*  
 my toupee-iron. -- I take a lesson three times  
*mon, pro.* *prends, v.*

a week. - - - The study of grammar is<sup>3</sup> 'neither<sup>3</sup> so  
*étude, f.* *ne ni, c.*  
dry nor so dull, as (it is thought.) - - -  
*sec, adj.* *triste, adj.* *on se l'imagine, v.*  
Have some prudence and patience, and you (will have)  
*Ayez, v.* *aurez, v.*  
success. - - - - A good conscience is to the soul  
*succès, m.* *conscience, f.* *âme, f.*  
what health is to the body. - - - Merit and  
*ce que, pro.* *santé, f.* *corps, m.*  
virtue are the only source of true  
*unique, adj.* *véritable, adj.*  
nobility. - - - Religion, commerce, and arms  
*noblesse, f.* *Religion, f.* *commerce, m.* *arme, f.*  
are proper instructions for a young prince. - -  
*propre, adj.* *instruction, f.* *à*  
Her father has been made a knight  
*Son, pro.* *été, p. p.* *fait, p. p.* *chevalier, m.*  
of the order of the Bath, and her grandfather  
*ordre, m.* *Bain, m.*  
was a knight of the order of the Garter. - - -  
*étoit, v.* *Jarretièrre, f.*  
He has not (so much) profit, but more honour. - -  
*tant, adv.* *profit*  
Fortune's favours are seldom the prize of  
*faveur, f.* *rarement, adv.* *prix, m.*  
virtue. - - - Gaming is the son of avarice, and the father  
*Jeu, m.*  
of despair. - - - This cloth is equal to some  
*désespoir, m.* *Ce, pro.* *drap, m.* *comparable, adj.*  
silk. - - I see the coast of England. - - The example  
*soie, f.* *vois, v.* *côte, f.* *exemple, m.*  
of a good life is a lesson for the rest of man-  
*vie, f.* *pour, p.* *reste, m.* *genre*  
kind. - The French fleet was destroyed  
*humain, m.* *François, adj.* *flotte, f.* *fut, v.* *détruite, p. p.\**  
by the brave Admiral Nelson, on the first of August,  
*Amiral, m.* *en* *Août, m.*  
one thousand seven hundred and ninety eight. - - - -

\* For the agreement of participles, see p. 344.

The eldest<sup>2</sup> son<sup>1</sup> of the king of England  
*aîné,adj.*  
 bears the title of Prince of Wales as  
*porte,v. titre,m. Galles comme,adv.*  
 presumptive heir to the crown. - - - Lewis  
*présomptif,adj. héritier couronne,f. Louis*  
 the sixteenth was the grand-son of Lewis the fif-  
*petit,adj.*  
 teenth. - - - William, surnamed the Con-  
*Guillaume,m. surnommé,p.p. Con-*  
 queror, King of England and Duke of Nor-  
*quérant,m. Duc,m. Nor-*  
 mandy, was one of the greatest generals of the  
*mandie*  
 eleventh century. - - - He (was born) at Falaise, and  
*siècle,m. naquit,v. à*  
 was the natural son of Robert, Duke of Nor-  
*naturel,adj. Nor-*  
 mandy, and of Arlotte, a furrier's daughter. - - - He  
*mandie fourreur,m. fille*  
 died at Herméntrude, in France, on the ninth of  
*mourut,v. à*  
 September, one thousand eighty-seven. - - - Mrs. Nel-  
 son's servant knows the price of all the provisions.  
*servante,f. sait,v. prix,m. denrée,f.*  
 - - She bought yesterday some chickens at one shilling  
*poulet,m. à*  
 and three pence a piece. - - - She came from America  
*vint,v. Amérique*  
 in three weeks. - - - Thomas was formerly a mu-  
*en,p. étoit autrefois,adv. mu-*  
 sician, now he is a dancing - master,  
*sicien, à présent,adv. danse, maître*  
 to-morrow he (will be) a painter. - - This  
*demain,adv. sera,v. peintre. Cette,pro.*  
 water is very agreeable to the smell. - - - - We  
*odorat,m.*  
 (are going) to Coxheath, to see the camp. - - I  
*allons,v. voir,v. camp,m.*  
 have in my ward-robe five coats, sixteen waistcoats,

twenty-two pair of stockings, and forty-six hand-  
 kerchiefs. - - - The road <sup>chemin, m.</sup> to Roxbury is very bad  
 choir in winter. - - - Bring us good wine, good beer,  
 en, p. hiver.  
 and the oil-bottle. - - The front <sup>façade, f.</sup> of the king's  
 palace (is not) so beautiful as I thought. - - - Gene-  
<sup>n'est pas</sup> rosity <sup>croyois, v.</sup> excites <sup>Géné-</sup> admiration. - - - Charles the second,  
<sup>rosité, f.</sup> <sup>excite, v.</sup> <sup>admiration, f.</sup>  
 the son of Philip the fourth, the grandson of Philip  
<sup>Philippe</sup>  
 the third, and the great grand-child of Philip the  
<sup>arrière petit - fils</sup>  
 second, left his kingdom to Philip the fifth. - -  
<sup>laissa, v.</sup> <sup>son, pro.</sup>  
 On the eighteenth of February one thousand four  
<sup>Février</sup>  
 hundred and seventy-eight, the Duke of Clarence,  
<sup>Duc</sup>  
 brother to King Edward the fourth, was drowned in  
<sup>frère, m.</sup> <sup>Edouard</sup> <sup>ful, v. noyé, p. p.</sup>  
 a butt of malmsey-wine. - The inhabitants of the  
<sup>tonneau, m.</sup> <sup>malvoisie</sup> <sup>habitant, m.</sup>  
 city of Dublin have presented a petition to  
<sup>ville, f.</sup> <sup>ont, v.</sup> <sup>présenté, p. p.</sup> <sup>adresse, f.</sup>  
 the king. - - - Good cider <sup>cidre</sup> is preferable to bad  
 wine. - - That man always wears a green hat, a white  
<sup>a, v.</sup>  
 shirt, red shoes, and black stockings. He has  
<sup>chemise, f.</sup> <sup>bas, m.</sup>  
 many children and plenty of money. - - The  
<sup>bien, adv.</sup> <sup>beaucoup, adv.</sup> <sup>argent, m.</sup>  
 longer the day is, the shorter is the night. - - You have  
<sup>jour, m.</sup> <sup>nuit, f.</sup>  
 a fine hat. - - Shame is a mixture of the grief  
<sup>Honte, f.</sup> <sup>mélange, m.</sup> <sup>chagrin, m.</sup>

and fear which infamy causes. - - Religion,  
*crainte, f. que, pro. infamie, f. cause, v.*  
 morality, government, fine arts, in a word,  
*morale, f. gouvernement, m. beau en, p.*  
 (every thing) is overturned. - - Homer was the  
*tout renversé, p. p. Homère fut, v.*  
 first poet who personified the divine at-  
*poète, m. personnifia, v. divin, adj. at-*  
 tributes, human passions, and physical  
*tribut, m. humain, adj. physique, adj.*  
 causes. - - - Pride and vanity are often the source  
*vanité, f. souvent, adj.*  
 of the misfortunes of mankind. - - - - - We sell  
*malheur, m. vendons, v.*  
 good bread, excellent meat, and very large  
*gros, adj.*  
 fishes; but<sup>1</sup> we<sup>2</sup> have<sup>4</sup> <sup>3</sup>neither<sup>5</sup> gold nor  
*poisson; mais, c. avons, v.*  
 silver. - - (Is there) any beer in the cellar? - -  
*Y a-t-il cave, f.*  
 Mrs. B. is a good, virtuous, prudent, and  
*vertueux, adj.*  
 generous lady: she has a daughter as beautiful as an  
*filles, f.*  
 angel, but she has neither so much docility nor af-  
*ange, m.*  
 fability as her cousin. - - Pindar (was born) at  
*Pindare, m. naquit, v.*  
 Thebes, a city of Greece. - - Malta is a small island,  
*Grèce. Malthe île, f.*  
 but it produces some corn, cotton, honey,  
*elle, pro. produit, v. coton, m. miel, m.*  
 figs, and the finest oranges in the world. - - The  
*figue, f. beau, adj. orange, f.*  
 inhabitants of that fine country are all catholics,  
*pays*  
 and go every Sunday to hear high mass. - The  
*vont, v. tous les Dimanches*  
 pleasure of the mind is greater than the pleasure  
*esprit*

of the body, and the diseases of the mind are  
*corps, m. maladie, f.*  
 more pernicious than the diseases of the body. - -  
*pernicieux, adj.*

Health, honours, and fortune united together,  
*Santé, f. uni, p. p.\* ensemble, adv.*  
 cannot satisfy the heart, of man. - - -  
*ne peuvent, v. satisfaire, v. cœur, m.*

(It is) in the sixth page of the second book, chapter  
*C'est, v.*

the third. - - Miss W's. father, a banker in the  
 Strand, is one of the richest men in town, but  
*Strand, m.*

she is prouder and more haughty than  
*orgueilleux, adj. hautain, adj.*  
 if she were the handsomest woman in Europe. - - -  
*étoit, v.*

Their son arrived yesterday at Portsmouth from  
*Leur, pro. arriva*

Peru and Martinico, in the St. George, a ninety-  
*Pérou Martinique,*

gun ship. - - - Hypocrisy is a homage which  
*canon vaisseau, m. hommage, m. que, pro.*

vice pays to virtue. - - A judicious answer  
*vice, m. rend, v. judicieux, adj. réponse, f.*

does more honour than a brilliant repartee. - - -  
*fait, v. brillant, adj. repartie, f.*

Give me a knife and fork. - - - My father has bought  
 one-and-thirty fine grey horses. - - (He is) an  
*gris, adj. C'est, v.*

intrepid man, and a man of honour and pro-  
*intrépide, adj. pro-*

bity. - - - - Mr. C\*\*\*, the queen's jeweller, has a  
*bié. jouailler*

very prudent wife, and the most faithful, indus-  
*fidèle, adj. indus-*

trious, and honest servant in London. - -  
*trieux, adj. honnête, adj. domestique †*

\* See page 344. † See the remarks on the prepositions *in* and *by*, in the note, in the degrees of comparison, page 66.

He found beauty, youth, riches, wisdom,  
*trouva, v. jeunesse,*  
 and even virtue, united in her per-  
*même, adv. réuni, p.p. sa, pro.*  
 son. - Thomas has discretion, but he has no  
*discretion, f. ne point, adv.*  
 wit. - - They have a quantity of apples and pears. - -  
*quantité, f.*  
 Vienna, the capital of the empire of Germany,  
*Vienne Allemagne,*  
 is a fine city. - - The more pleasing plays  
*agréable, adj. spectacle, m.*  
 are, the more dangerous they are. - - The rich,  
*dangereux, adj. pl.*  
 the poor, the young, the old, the learned, and the  
*savant, adj.*  
 ignorant, are all subject to death. - - True friends are  
*sujet, adj. mort, f. Vrai, adj.*  
 almost as rare as good writers. - - The famous  
*rare, adj. écrivain, m. fameux, adj.*  
 mine of Potosi, in Peru, is above two hundred  
*mine, f. du plus, adv.*  
 and fifty fathoms deep. - - Henry the first, king of Eng-  
*loise Henri*  
 land, and brother to William Rufus, died the richest  
*le Roux, mourut, v.*  
 prince in Europe. - - Paul is taller than you by an inch,  
*\* pouce, m.*  
 but Mrs. Nichol's brother is the tallest of all.  
*Mme*

### SECT. III.

#### OF PRONOUNS.

There are seven sorts of PRONOUNS ;

1. *Les Pronoms personnels,* Pronouns personal.
2. *Les Pronoms conjunctifs,* Pronouns conjunctive.

\* See the Note, page 66.

- |                                      |                         |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 3. <i>Les Pronoms possessifs,</i>    | Pronouns possessive.    |
| 4. <i>Les Pronoms démonstratifs,</i> | Pronouns demonstrative. |
| 5. <i>Les Pronoms relatifs,</i>      | Pronouns relative.      |
| 6. <i>Les Pronoms interrogatifs,</i> | Pronouns interrogative. |
| 7. <i>Les Pronoms indéfinis,</i>     | Pronouns indefinite.    |

### OF PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

*Pronouns personal* are those which directly denote the persons, and supply the place of them.

There are three persons :

The first is the person who speaks : ex.

<i>Je parle,</i>	I speak.
<i>Nous parlons,</i>	We speak.

The second is the person spoken to : ex.

<i>Tu parles,</i>	Thou speakest.
<i>Vous parlez,</i>	You speak.

The third is the person spoken of : ex.

<i>Il or elle parle,</i>	He or she speaks.
<i>Ils or elles parlent,</i>	They speak.

Both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

<i>Je or moi, I.</i>	<i>Nous, we.</i>
<i>Tu or toi, thou.</i>	<i>Vous, you or ye.</i>

Masculine.

<i>Il or lui, he, it.</i>	<i>Ils, or eux, they.</i>
---------------------------	---------------------------

Feminine.

<i>Elle, she, it.</i>	<i>Elles, they.</i>
-----------------------	---------------------

The above pronouns are never to be used but as nominatives to the verbs. The rest are declined with the article indefinite : ex.

First Person for both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

G. A. <i>de moi, of or from me.</i>	<i>de nous, of or from us.</i>
Dat. <i>à moi, to me.</i>	<i>à nous, to us.</i>
Acc. <i>moi, me.</i>	<i>nous, us.</i>



## Second Person for both Genders.

## SINGULAR.

G. A. <i>de toi</i> , of or from thee.	<i>de vous</i> , of or from you.
Dat. <i>à toi</i> , to thee.	<i>à vous</i> , to you.
Acc. <i>toi</i> , thee.	<i>vous</i> , you.

## PLURAL.

## Third Person.

## SINGULAR.

G. A. <i>de lui</i> , of or from him.	<i>d'elle</i> , of or from her.*
Dat. <i>à lui</i> , to him.	<i>à elle</i> , to her.*
Acc. <i>lui</i> , him.	<i>elle</i> , her.*

## PLURAL.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

G. A. <i>d'eux</i> , of or from them.	<i>d'elles</i> , of or from them.
Dat. <i>à eux</i> , to them.	<i>à elles</i> , to them.
Acc. <i>eux</i> , them.	<i>elles</i> , them.

There are two other pronouns of the third person, viz.

## SINGULAR and PLURAL. Both Genders.

1st. G. A. <i>de soi</i> , of or from	{ oneself, himself, herself, themselves.
Dat. <i>à soi</i> , to oneself, himself, &c.	
Acc. <i>soi</i> , oneself, himself, &c.	

N. B. Though it have been said, that the personal pronouns are used for the names of persons, it must not thence be concluded, that they are never employed for the names of animals or inanimate objects : this seldom happens in the first and second persons ; but the personal pronouns, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, may denote every object in nature, either animate or inanimate : ex.

*Ce chien est fort beau, mais*      That dog is very handsome,  
*il est trop gras,*                      but it is too fat.

\* *Her*, when a personal pronoun, is to be rendered by *elle*, *la*, or *lui* ; but, when joined to a noun, by the pronoun possessive, *son*, *sa*, *ses*.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

This picture is very old, but it is  
*Ce, pro. portrait, m. ancien, adj.*  
 well painted. -- The house which I bought  
*bien, adv. peint, p. p. que, pro. ai acheté, p. p.*  
 is well situated, but I assure<sup>2</sup> you<sup>1</sup> that it  
*situé, adj. assure, v. que, adv.*  
 costs<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> much. ---- The books which  
*coûte, v. me, pro. beaucoup, adv.*  
 you saw in my library are good  
*vîtes, v. ma, pro. bibliothèque, f.*  
 books, but they are badly bound. ----- Your  
*mal, adv. relié, p. p. Vos, pro.*  
 buckles (would be) much more in the fashion, if  
*boucle, f. seroient, v. à mode, f.*  
 they were smaller. --- My hat is quite  
*étoient, v. Mon, pro. tout, adv.*  
 new, but it is too big. ----- Their  
*neuf, adj. trop, adv. grand, adj. Leur, pro.*  
 coach is old, but it is as good as if  
*carrosse, m. vieux, adj. si, c.\**  
 it were new.  
*étoit, v. neuf.*

2d. The general and indefinite pronoun, *on*, one, is always considered as a nominative of the masculine gender, and can never be used (in French) but in the singular, though the meaning be plural; ex. When we say, *On chante*, *on mange*, we sing, *they* sing; *one* eats, or *people* eat; we mean, *some men* or *women* sing, eat.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

People imagine that when they are  
*On, pro. s'imaginer, v. que quand, adv. on est, v.*  
 rich, they are happy; but they (are mistaken)  
*on heureux, adj. on se trompe, v.*  
 very often; for, the more one has, the  
*très, adv. souvent, adv. car, c.*  
 more one wishes to have. ----- When we are  
*veut, v. en avoir, v. on*

\* *Si* loses the *i* before *il*, he; *ils*, they.

(raised up) to honours, or *élevé, p.p.* we are invested *ou que, c.* *revêtu, p.p.*  
 with some dignity, we (are to) expect *de quelque, adj.* *dignité, f.* *doit, v.* *s'attendre, v.*  
 to be criticised. - - - - (Some persons) reported *à être critiqué, p.p.* *On, pro.* *rapporta, v.*  
 last week, that in France they *dernier, adj.* *semaine, f.* *en*  
 talk of peace. *parle, v.*

The word *même*, self, is very often joined to the personal pronouns, to denote, in a more special manner, the person spoken of : as,

<i>Moi-même</i> , myself.	<i>Soi-même</i> , oneself.
<i>Toi-même</i> , thyself.	<i>Nous-mêmes</i> , ourselves.
<i>Lui-même</i> , himself.	<i>Vous-mêmes</i> , yourselves.
<i>Elle-même</i> , herself.	<i>Eux-mêmes</i> , or <i>elles-mêmes</i> themselves.

#### OBSERVATIONS on the PRONOUNS *Je* and *Moi*, *Tu* and *Toi*, *Il* and *Lui*, *Ils* and *Eux*.

*Je* and *moi* are used in two different senses, though both in the nominative case ; *Je* is always followed or preceded immediately by a verb to which it is the nominative case, and has no need to be joined to another pronoun : but *moi* always requires to be followed by one pronoun or more, either expressed or understood : ex.

<i>Qui a pris mon livre ?</i>	Who took my book ?
<i>C'est moi,</i>	It is <i>I</i> . That is,
<i>C'est moi qui l'ai pris,</i>	It is <i>I</i> who took it.

*Moi* must be used instead of *Je* before an infinitive mood, or at the end of a sentence, when it is intended to express something sudden, as *grief*, &c. ; when *I*, in English, is followed by the pronoun relative *who* or *whom*, or is preceded by the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as *c'est*, it is ; and lastly, whenever any difference or distinction is intended between persons ; in which case it must be immediately followed by *Je* : ex.

<i>Moi lui parler !</i>	<i>I speak to him or her !</i>
<i>Moi qui vous aime,</i>	<i>I who love you.</i>

*Il étoit à pied et moi j'étois à cheval,*      *He was on foot, and I was on horseback.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Who (was calling<sup>2</sup>) me<sup>1</sup>? -- It was not  
*appeloit, v. me, pro. Ce étoit ne pas, adv.*  
 I. ---- The boy wants to speak<sup>2</sup> (to you<sup>1</sup>). --- I  
*désire, v. ∞ parler, v. vous.*  
 who am older than he, I, go and speak<sup>2</sup>  
*âgé, adj. lui, pro. aller, v. ∞*  
 (to him<sup>1</sup>!) No, I will not go, (let him come)  
*lui, pro. Non, adv. veux, v. y aller, qu'il vienne, v.*  
 himself. --- It is I who (am to), be rewarded  
*dois, v. récompensé, p. p.*  
 instead of him. --- My father commanded the  
*au lieu lui, pro. commandoit, v.*  
 horse, and I commanded the foot. ---- He  
*cavalerie, f. commandois infanterie, f.*  
 could not do<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup> in one day, and I  
*put, v. faire, v. le, pro. en, p.*  
 did it in the space of three hours. ----  
*ai fait, v. dans, p. espace, m. heure.*  
 When the enemy appeared, my companions  
*parut, v. mes, pro.*  
 (ran away) and I remained alone.  
*priront la fuite, v. restai, v. seul, adj.*

The same rule is to be attended to with respect to  
*toi, lui, eux, &c. : as,*

<i>Toi qui me parles,</i>	<i>Thou who speakest to me.</i>
<i>Lui que je méprise,</i>	<i>He whom I despise.</i>
<i>Eux que je respecte,</i>	<i>They whom I respect.</i>

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

How darest thou answer thy  
*Comment, adv. oses, v. répondre à, v. ton, pro.*  
 master in so<sup>2</sup> insolent<sup>1</sup> a<sup>1</sup> manner<sup>2</sup>? thou  
*de si, adv. insolent, adj. . manière, f.*  
 whom he loves, thou for whom he takes  
*que, pro. aime, v. pour, p. qui, pro. prend, v.*  
 so much pains. ---- He and they, not (being able)  
*peine, sing. pouvant, v.*

(to agree,) were obliged to part. - - - - -  
*s'accorder, v. furent, v. obligé, p.p. de se séparer, v.*  
 It is I who wrote the letter but it is he  
                                   *ai écrit, p.p. lettre, f.*  
 who <sup>2</sup>carried it. - - - It is <sup>1</sup>neither <sup>3</sup>I, nor  
                                   *a portée, p.p. la, pro. Ce ne ni, c. ni, c.*  
 thou, nor he, who have broken the windows,  
                                   *avons, v. cassé, p.p. fenêtre, f.*  
 but it is they who have <sup>2</sup>done <sup>3</sup>it.  
                                   *ont, v. fait, p.p. le, pro.*

After these remarks, it is also necessary to observe here, that *je*, I, and *nous*, we, never admit of an adjective or participle immediately after it, except in *acts*, or *deeds*, *notes*, or *bills*, *receipts*, and the like: ex.

*Je, soussigné, demeurant à* I, the undersigned, living in  
                                   *Londres, déclare, &c.* London, declare, &c.  
*Nous, soussignés, reconnais-* We, the undersigned, ac-  
                                   *sons avoir reçu de Mons.* knowledge to have re-  
                                   *D\*\*, la somme de—* ceived from Mr. D\*\*, the  
   sum of—

## OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

These pronouns are called *conjunctive*, because they are *always joined* to some verb by which they are governed, and are generally used for the dative or accusative case of the personal pronouns. There are three persons in the conjunctive as in the personal, which are,

For the First Person, both Genders.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Dat. or Ac. *Me, Moi,\** me, or to me, *Nous*, us, or to us,  
                                   for *à moi*, or *moi*.                   for *à nous*, or *nous*.

For the Second, both Genders.

Dat. or Ac. *Te, Toi,\** thee, or to thee, *Vous*, you, or to you,  
                                   for *à toi*, or *toi*.                   for *à vous*, or *vous*.

\* *Moi* and *toi* must be used instead of *me* or *te*, after the second person singular or plural of the imperative mood, conjugated without a negative: ex.

*écoutez-moi,*  
*suivez-moi,*

hear me.  
 follow me.

## For the Third.

## SINGULAR.—Masculine.

Dat. <i>Lui</i> ,	{ to him, to it,	} for à <i>lui</i> ,
Acc. <i>Le</i> ,	{ him, it,	} for <i>lui</i> .

## Feminine.

Dat. <i>Lui</i> ,	{ to her, to it,	} for à <i>elle</i> .
Acc. <i>La</i> ,	{ her, it,	} for <i>elle</i> .

## PLURAL.—Both Genders.

Dat. <i>Leur</i> ,	{ to them,	} for à <i>eux</i> ,m. à <i>elles</i> ,f.
Acc. <i>Les</i> ,	{ them,	} for <i>eux</i> ,m. <i>elles</i> ,f.

Dat. or Acc. <i>Se</i> ,	{ oneself, himself,	} for à <i>soi</i> , or <i>soi</i> .
	{ herself, themselves,	

Five of these pronouns are used for the dative or accusative case, and are of both Genders, viz.

*Me* or *moi*, *te* or *toi*, *nous*, *vous*, *se* : ex.

<i>Vous me parlez,</i>	You speak to me.
<i>Il vous croit,</i>	He believes you.
<i>Vous me priez de, &amp;c.</i>	You desire me to, &c.

In the first example, *me* is the dative case, because it may be turned by *à moi*, to me; in the second, *vous* is the accusative, &c.

*Lui*, and *leur* are used in the dative only, and are of both genders :

<i>Je lui parle,</i>	I speak to him or to her.
<i>Vous leur écrivez,</i>	You write to them.

The three others are used for the accusative, and may be applied to things animate or inanimate, viz.

*Le*, mas. him, it; *la*, fem. her, it; and *les*, masc. and fem. them : ex.

<i>Je le vois tous les jours,</i>	I see him every day.
<i>Je le sais,</i>	I know it.
<i>Nous la connoissons,</i>	We know her.
<i>Il les enverra ce soir,</i>	He will send them to-night.

The pronoun personal may be placed before or after the verb, agreeably to the English construction; but the conjunctive pronouns are to be placed (in French) before the verbs by which they are governed, though they come after them in English: ex.

<i>Je parle,</i>	I speak.
<i>Avons-nous parlé,</i>	Have we spoken?
<i>Il me parle,</i>	He speaks to me.
<i>Nous les connoissons,</i>	We know them.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Your brother bought yesterday a very good book,  
*acheta, v.*  
 and after having<sup>2</sup> read<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup>, he gave<sup>2</sup> it<sup>1</sup>  
*après, p. avoir, v. lui, p. p. le, pro. donna, v.*  
 to my sister. - - - You speak of my cousin,  
*ma, pro. mon, pro.*  
 do you know him? - - - I see her and speak  
*connoissez, v. vois, v. parle, v.*  
 to her (every day). - - - Do you<sup>2</sup> know<sup>1</sup> your  
*tous les jours. savez, v. vos, pro.*  
 lessons? - - - We know them all. - - - I (will carry)  
*leçon, f. savons, v. tout, adj. mènerai, v.*  
 them to my brothers, but I (will write)  
*chez, p. mes, pro. écrirai, v.*  
 to them before. - - - I find him more reason-  
*auparavant, adv. trouve, v. raison-*  
 able than his sister. - - Your dog (is\*)  
*nable, adj. sa, pro. chien, m. a*  
 thirsty,) shall<sup>2</sup> I<sup>3</sup> give<sup>2</sup> him<sup>1</sup> water? - - They are  
*soif, donnerai, v. lui*  
 tired, and I give them some rest.  
*fatigué, p. p. donne, v. repos, m.*

In the second person singular and the first and second persons plural of a verb in the imperative mood conjugated affirmatively, the conjunctive pronouns come after the verb: but if the verb be conjugated negatively, the pronouns follow the above rule: ex.

\* See page 174.

*Donnez-lui de l'argent,* Give him money.  
*Ne lui donnez pas de pain,* Do not give him any bread.

EXERCISE ON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Send them some apples, but do not send  
*Envoyez, v.*  
 them any plums. - - I give you these books,  
*prune, f. donne, v. ces, pro.*  
 but do not lend them to your brother. - - -  
*prêtez, v. votre, pro.*  
 You may tell it to my father, but do not  
*pouvez, v. dire, v. mon, pro.*  
 tell it to my mother. - - Believe me, go  
*dites, v. ma, pro. Croyez, v. allez, v.*  
 and speak to them, but do not insult them. - -  
*parler, v. insultez, v.*  
 Have you returned (to her) the handkerchief  
*rendu, p.p. mouchoir, m.*  
 which she has lent you? - - Send it to-morrow,  
*que prêté, p.p. demain, adv.*  
 do not forget it. - - Bring me some cho-  
*oubliez, v. Apportez, v. cho-*  
 colate, but bring<sup>3</sup> me<sup>2</sup> no<sup>4</sup> sugar.  
*colat, m.*

When two imperatives are joined by either of the conjunctions, *et*, and; *ou*, or; the conjunctive pronoun or pronouns may precede the last imperative by which it is governed; but that construction is not now much used: ex.  
*Cherchez-le, et lui dites de* Look for him, and tell him  
*venir ici, or dites lui de, &c.* to come hither.

After the verbs *se fier à*, to trust to, *penser à*, *songer à*, to think of, *viser à*, to aim at, *courir à*, *accourir à*, to run to, *venir à*, to come to, and some of the reflexive verbs followed by a preposition governing a dative case, the pronouns must be placed after the verb, especially if used in opposition or contradiction to each other; or denote the order in which a thing ought to be done: and if there be more than one dative pronoun, the first only may be placed before the verb, and the others after: ex.



<i>Fiez-vous à moi,</i>	<i>Trust to me.</i>
<i>Nous pensons à vous,</i>	<i>We think of you.</i>
<i>Cela s'adresse à toi,</i>	<i>That is addressed to thee.</i>
<i>Je cours à lui,</i>	<i>I run to him.</i>
<i>Il me parle aussi bien qu'à vous et à eux.</i>	<i>He speaks to me as well as to you and them.</i>

EXERCISE ON THESE AND THE PRECEDING RULES.

Bring me my hat, or send it to me by the carrier. - - - Trust to him, but do not trust to them, and do not believe them. - - Think of us, and write to us as soon as you can. - - - Go and see her, and carry her these flowers. - - - Send me my clock, or bring it to me yourself. - - - Do not give it to my sister, give it to me. Why do you prefer her to me, and give her all your affection ?

When two or more of the conjunctive pronouns come together in the same sentence, they must be arranged in the following order.

SINGULAR.

*Me*, m. & f. me, or to me,  
*Te*, m. & f. thee or to thee,  
*Se*, m. & f. oneself, himself, herself,

PLURAL.

*Nous*, m. & f. us or to us,  
*Vous*, m. & f. you or to you,  
*Se*, m. & f. themselves,

are to be placed before all others ;—next,

*Le*, m. him, it,  
*La*, f. her, it,

*Les*, m. & f. them,

And then,

*Lui*, m. & f. to him, to her,  
*Il me le promet,*  
*Je vous les donnerai,*

*Leur*, m. & f. to them.  
*He promised it to me.*  
*I will give them to you.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brother (will send) them to you, or he  
*enverra, v.*  
 (will bring) them to you himself. - - - He likes  
*apportera, v.* *aime, v.*  
 your<sup>s</sup> house<sup>s</sup> (very much<sup>1</sup>); for we showed  
*votre, pro.* *fort, adv.* *car, c.* *fines voir, v.*  
 it to him. - - - Carry it to them. - - - He will<sup>2</sup> 'not<sup>3</sup>  
*Portez, v.* *veu, v.* *ne pas*  
 sell<sup>6</sup> it<sup>4</sup> to them<sup>5</sup>, but he will give it to  
*vendre, v.* *veut donner, v.*  
 you. - - - If they ask a favour, will you  
*Si, c.* *demandent, v.* *grâce, f.* *en*  
 refuse it to them? - - - Why do you  
*refuserez, v.* *Pourquoi, adv.* *en*  
 give it to him? Had you not promised  
*donnez, v.* *Avez, v.* *promis, p. p.*  
 it to her? - - - He speaks to me, and not to you. - -  
*parle, v.* *non pas*  
 If they behave themselves well, I will  
*comporter, v.*  
 reward them. - - - He had promised it to  
*récompenserai, v.* *avoit, v.*  
 him, but he gave it to me.  
*a donné, p. p.*

N. B. There are three other conjunctive pronouns, commonly called particles relative, or supplying pronouns; they are *en*, *y*, and *le*, and follow the foregoing rules for placing them, *y* taking the precedence of *en*, when they meet together in a sentence.

*En* always denotes a genitive or ablative, and relates to some object mentioned before: it is rendered in English by *of* or *from* him, her, it, them; *about* him, her, it, &c.; *with* or *without* him, her, it, &c.; *at* it, &c.; *for* it, &c.; *upon* it, &c.; *any, one, ones, none, some, some of, &c.*; *thence, thereof*, and sometimes it is elegantly understood in English. especially when immediately followed by a numeral adjective or a noun of quantity, though it must be absolutely expressed in French: ex.

*Nous en parlons,*

We speak of him, of her, of it, of them; about him, about her, about it, about them.

*Pen suis fâché,*

I am sorry for it.

*Donnez-lui en,*

Give him some, (of it.)

*Lui en avez-vous porté ?*

Did you carry him or her any? (of them.)

*Ne lui en envoyez pas,*

Send him or her none.

*Nous en venons,*

We come from it or thence.

*Combien avez-vous de domestiques ? Nous en avons six,*

How many servants have you? We have six, (of them.)

*Avez-vous un jardin à la campagne ? Oui, nous en avons un très-joli,*

Have you a garden in the country? Yes, we have a very pretty one, (of them.)

In the third, fourth, fifth sentences, it should be observed, that the pronouns *of it*, or *of them*, &c. are elegantly understood in English, according to the object or objects mentioned before.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have heard	that your uncle is arrived,
<i>ouï dire, v.</i>	<i>arrivé, p.p.</i>
and I am <sup>3</sup> very <sup>4</sup> glad <sup>5</sup>	of it <sup>2</sup> . - - She spoke <sup>3</sup> to
<i>aise, adj.</i>	<i>parla, v.</i>
him <sup>1</sup> of it <sup>2</sup> . - - - Talk <sup>3</sup>	no <sup>1</sup> more <sup>4</sup> of it <sup>2</sup> , for I <sup>1</sup>
<i>Parlez, v.</i>	<i>ne plus, car, c.</i>
will <sup>3</sup> not <sup>2</sup> hear <sup>5</sup>	of it <sup>5</sup> (any more <sup>4</sup> ). - -
<i>veux, v. ne entendre parler, v.</i>	<i>plus, adv.</i>
I <sup>1</sup> thank <sup>4</sup> you <sup>2</sup> for it <sup>3</sup> . - - Do you <sup>4</sup> not <sup>5</sup> see <sup>3</sup>	
<i>remercie, v.</i>	<i>voyez, v.</i>
the <sup>6</sup> beauty <sup>7</sup> of it <sup>2</sup> ? - - They are	sorry for
	<i>sont, v. fâché, adj.</i>
it. - - Since you have no pears	in your garden,
<i>Puisque, c. poire</i>	
I (will send) you some. - - - They <sup>1</sup> have <sup>4</sup> stolen <sup>5</sup>	
<i>enverrai, v.</i>	<i>ont, v. volé, p.p.</i>

from us<sup>2</sup> the<sup>2</sup> greatest<sup>7</sup> part<sup>2</sup> of them<sup>3</sup>. - - My  
*partie, f. Mon, pro.*  
 brother has written a letter to your sister, and  
*écrit, p. p.*  
 shown<sup>3</sup> me<sup>1</sup> the<sup>4</sup> two<sup>5</sup> first<sup>6</sup> lines<sup>7</sup> of it<sup>2</sup>. - - -  
*a montré, p. p. ligne, f.*  
 Will you lend me some books? With all  
*Voulez, v. prêter, v. De, p.*  
 my heart, I (will lend) you some very pretty  
*cœur, m. prêterai, v.*  
 ones. - - Do you<sup>2</sup> think<sup>1</sup> that<sup>3</sup> she<sup>4</sup> has<sup>7</sup> spoken  
*croyez, v. ait, v. subj. parlé, p. p.*  
 to him<sup>5</sup> of it<sup>6</sup>? - - If I had money, I (would give)  
*avois, v. donnerois, v.*  
 you some, but you know, as well as I do,  
*mais, c. savez, v.*  
 how scarce<sup>3</sup> it<sup>1</sup> is<sup>2</sup> now. - - - - Send<sup>4</sup>  
*combien, adv. rare, adj. à présent, adv. Envoyez, v.*  
 me<sup>2</sup> none<sup>3 5</sup>. - - - Have<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> any<sup>1</sup>? - - - Do<sup>1</sup> you<sup>4</sup>  
*ne en pas Avez, v.*  
 remember<sup>3</sup> it<sup>2</sup>?  
*souvenez, v. en.*

Y is used for the dative only: it is Englished by *to it, to them, of it, in it, upon it, thither, there, &c.* and very often not expressed in English, though it must be in French. It seldom supplies the place of animate objects, except when connected with the verbs *fier*, to trust; *penser*, to think; and the like in a reply: ex.

<i>J'y consens,</i>	I agree to it.
<i>Nous y penserons,</i>	We shall think of it.
<i>Ne vous y fiez plus,</i>	Trust them no more.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I<sup>1</sup> never<sup>5</sup> (will<sup>4</sup> consent) (to<sup>3</sup> it,) and<sup>1</sup>  
*ne jamais, adv. consentirai, v.*  
 I<sup>1</sup> neither<sup>4</sup> will<sup>3</sup> speak<sup>6</sup> nor<sup>7</sup> write<sup>9</sup> to  
*ne ni veux, v. parler, v. ni, c. écrire, v.*  
 him<sup>2</sup>. - - Believe me, go and see them, do  
*Croyez, v. allez, v.*

'not<sup>s</sup> 'confide<sup>2</sup> (in<sup>3</sup> it.) - - We<sup>1</sup> have<sup>4</sup> forced<sup>5</sup>  
*fiez vous, v.* *avons, v. forcé, p. p.*  
 them<sup>2</sup> to it<sup>3</sup>. - - - I (will carry<sup>2</sup>) my<sup>3</sup> brother<sup>4</sup> thither<sup>5</sup>  
*mènerai, v.*  
 myself<sup>5</sup>. - - He<sup>1</sup> (will carry<sup>5</sup>) them<sup>3</sup> to you<sup>2</sup> thither<sup>4</sup> him-  
*portera, v.*  
 self. - - Did you think of what you had  
*Avez, v. pensé, p. p. à ce que, pro. aviez, v.*  
 promised me? - - - No, but I<sup>2</sup> will think<sup>4</sup>  
*promis, p. p. Non, adv. penserai, v.*  
 (of it<sup>3</sup>.) - - (It is) a good book, we<sup>1</sup> read<sup>3</sup> excellent<sup>4</sup>  
*y C'est, v. on, pro. lit, v.*  
 things<sup>5</sup> in it.<sup>2</sup> - - Our orchards are very fruit-  
*choses, f. Nos, pro. verger, m. fer-*  
 ful, we see all sorts of fruits in  
*tile, adj. on, pro. voit, v. sorte, f. fruit*  
 them. - - Since those people have deceived  
*Puisque, c. ces, pro. gens, pl. trompé, p. p.*  
 you, do not trust them (any more.) - - Often when a  
*on fiez, v. plus, adv. Souvent, adv.*  
 friend is dead we<sup>1</sup> think<sup>4</sup> of him<sup>3</sup> 'no  
*mort, adj. on, pro. pense, v.*  
 (longer<sup>5</sup>.)  
*plus, adv.*

*Le* which in English is either not expressed, or most commonly rendered by *so*, likewise prevents the repetition of one or more words, and supplies the place of the same. It is indeclinable when it relates to, and holds the place of, one adjective or more, a verb, or a whole member of a sentence : ex.

*Vous m'avez cru belle, mais* You have thought me hand-  
*je ne le suis pas,* some, but I am not (*so*.)  
*Nous étions embarrassés, et* We were embarrassed, and  
*nous le sommes encore,* are *so* yet.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My ' brothers were ill yesterday  
*Mes, pro. étoient malade, adj. hier, adv.*

and are so still *encore,adv.* to-day. - - - I am *aujourd'hui,adv.*  
 satisfied with my fate, but my sister is not.  
*content,adj. de sort,m. ma,pro.*  
 I had heard that your sister was married,  
*avois,v. ouï dire,p.p. que étoit,v. marié,p.p.*  
 but my cousin tells me that she is not. - - -  
*mon,pro. dit,v.*  
 - Our master rewards us when we deserve  
*Notre,pro. récompense,v. méritons,v.*  
 it. - - - Children (ought to) apply to their  
*doivent,v. s'appliquer,v. leurs,pro.*  
 studies as much as they can. - - - I thought  
*autant,adv. peuvent,v. croyais,v.*  
 your brother was diligent, but I mistook,  
*étoit,v. me suis trompé,p.p.*  
 for he is not, and 'never' (will be<sup>3</sup>) so<sup>2</sup>.  
*ne jamais,adv. sera,v.*

On the contrary, *le* is declinable when it relates to, and holds the place of, one substantive or more; then *le* is used for the masculine, *la* for the feminine, and *les* for the plural: ex.

*Etes-vous le fils de mon ami M. D\*\* ? Oui, je le suis,* Are you my friend Mr. D's son? Yes, I am, (him.)  
*Etes-vous la mère de ce bel enfant ? Oui, je la suis,* Are you the mother of that fine child? Yes, I am, (her.)  
*Etes-vous les tantes de M. Brown ? Oui, nous les sommes,* Are you Mr. Brown's aunts? Yes, we are, (them.)  
*Est-ce là votre livre ? Oui, ce l'est,* Is this your book? Yes, it is, (it.)

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

(It is said) that you are the son of my neighbour  
*On dit,v. que voisin,m.*  
 Mr. Peter, are you so? Yes, Sir, I  
*Pierre,m. Monsieur,*

am. - - - Are you the sister of Mrs. Adams ? Yes,

I am. - - She is very amiable, <sup>Mme</sup> and so<sup>3</sup> are<sup>4</sup> you<sup>2</sup> also<sup>5</sup>. - -  
*aimable,adj. aussi.*

Are you the ladies <sup>dame,f.</sup> whom my mother <sup>que</sup> expects ?  
*attend,v.*

Yes, we are. - - <sup>1</sup>Are <sup>1</sup>these <sup>2</sup>young <sup>3</sup>people the  
*(Sont-ils) ces,pro. jeune,adj. gens,pl.*

scholars <sup>écolier,m.</sup> whom you have taught ? Yes, madam,  
*enseignés,p.p.*

they are. - - (Is that) the horse <sup>Est-ce là</sup> which you bought  
*cheval,m. que avez acheté*

from my brother ? Yes, it is. - - - (Are these) the  
*Sont-ce là*

houses which you built ? Yes, they are.  
*avez fait bâtir,v. sont.*

N. B. It must be observed, that the following pronouns, *me, te, se, le, la, and les*, can never be used after a preposition ; as we cannot say, *j'étois avec le, avec la*, I was with *him*, with *her* ; but we must use the personal pronouns, *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle, and eux*, or *elles*, and say, *j'étois avec lui, avec elle, &c.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The nosegay <sup>bouquet,m.</sup> which I <sup>que</sup> gathered <sup>ai cueilli,p.p.</sup> in our

garden is for <sup>pour,p.</sup> her, and not <sup>non pas,adv.</sup> for him. - - He

was <sup>étoit,v.</sup> with me when we received <sup>reçûmes,v.</sup> a letter from

them. - - If he do not come <sup>vient,v.</sup> soon <sup>bientôt,adv.</sup> we (will set

out) <sup>sans,p.</sup> without him. - - - Your <sup>Vos,pro.</sup> sisters have <sup>mécon-</sup>dis-

pleased me, I am very angry <sup>tenté,p.p.</sup> with <sup>suis</sup> them. <sup>fâché,adj. contre,p.</sup>

- - Your brothers have broken <sup>ont</sup> these <sup>cassé,p.p.</sup> windows, I <sup>ces,pro.</sup>

am sure of it, for I was behind them, and  
*sûr, adj. car, c. etois derrière, p.*  
 John was with me.  
*Jean, etoit*

Y and *en* always go last in a sentence, except the pronoun of the first person *moi*, which, in the imperative mood of a verb conjugated affirmatively, is placed after *y* and *en* : ex.

*Il vous y en enverra,* He will send some to you  
*thither.*  
*Apportez-y en moi,* Bring me some hither.

N. B. The above pronouns, when governed by two or more verbs, must be repeated, in French, before every governing verb ; though most generally expressed but once in English, and after the last verb : ex.

*Votre fils vous aime et vous* Your son loves and fears  
*craint,* you.  
*Je le plains et l'encourage,* I pity and encourage him.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You have very fine roses in your garden : when  
*avez, v.*  
 I am in the country, pray send me some hither.  
*serai, v. à de grâce envoyez, v.*  
 - - May God bless and reward her ! *saïd*  
*Que Dieu bénisse, v. récompense, v. dit, v.*  
 the prince. - - I 'neither<sup>s</sup> will<sup>2</sup> sell<sup>6</sup> nor<sup>7</sup> give<sup>10</sup>  
*ne ni veux, v. vendre donner, v.*  
 'them<sup>9</sup> (to 'you<sup>8</sup>). - - Our master rewards and punishes  
*punit, v.*  
 us when we deserve it. - - - Often beauty seduces  
*séduit, v.*  
 and deceives us. - - - That child has good parents, he  
*trompe, v. Cet*  
 cherishes, honours and respects them.  
*chérit, v. honore, v. respecte, v.*



**N. B.** Bear constantly in mind the place of these words in a sentence, first the preposition, next the negation *ne*, then the pronouns in the order above mentioned: **ex.**

*Faites-moi souvenir de ne* Remind me not to give him  
lui en point donner, any.

## OF PRONOUNS POSSESSIVE.

These pronouns are called *possessive*, because they always denote property or possession.

There are two sorts of possessive pronouns, viz. absolute and relative.

The *absolute* are so called, because they must always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it (and not with the possessor as in English) in *gender*, *number*, and *case*:—They are,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc.	Fem.	Both Genders.	
<i>Mon, Ma, or Mon,</i>	} before a vowel, or a mute, as	<i>mon âme,</i>	<i>Mes, my.</i>
<i>Ton, Ta, or Ton,</i>		<i>ton âme,</i>	<i>Tes, thy.</i>
<i>Son, Sa, or Son,</i>		<i>son âme,</i>	<i>Ses, his, her, or its.</i>
Both Genders.			
<i>Notre,</i>		<i>Nos, our.</i>	
<i>Votre,</i>		<i>Vos, your.</i>	
<i>Leur,</i>		<i>Leurs, their.</i>	

They are declined with the article Indefinite *de, à*: **ex.**

### SINGULAR.

#### Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mon père*, my father.  
Gen. Abl. *de mon père*, of or from my father.  
Dat. *à mon père*, to my father.

#### Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *ma mère*, my mother.  
Gen. Abl. *de ma mère*, of or from my mother.  
Dat. *à ma mère*, to my mother.

## PLURAL.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *mes frères*, my brothers.

Gen. Abl. *de mes frères*, of or from my brothers.

Dat. *à mes frères*, to my brothers.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *mes sœurs*, my sisters.

Gen. Abl. *de mes sœurs*, of or from my sisters.

Dat. *à mes sœurs*, to my sisters.

The others are declined as the preceding.

These pronouns ought to be repeated before every substantive in a sentence, though but once expressed in English; they must agree in gender and number with the noun before which they are placed, that is, with *the thing possessed* and not *the possessor*; they must also be used in French, when speaking to any of our relations or friends, though they be suppressed in English: ex.

*J'ai perdu mon chapeau et mes gants,* I lost *my* hat and gloves.

*Bon jour, mon père,*

Good day, father.

*Etes-vous là, ma sœur?*

Are you there, sister?

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Give me my dictionary and grammar. - - She  
*dictionnaire, m.      grammair, f.*

had lost her gloves and fan. - - - Have  
*avait, v. perdu, p.p.      éventail, m. Avez, v.*

you found your pen? - - - His daughter is  
*trouvé, p.p.      plume, f.      fille, f.*

older than my son, but her son (is not)  
*plus âgée      fils, m.      n'est pas, v.*

so tall as my nephew. - - - Her brother says  
*grand, adj.      neveu, m.      dit, v.*

that he will<sup>1</sup> not<sup>4</sup> refuse<sup>3</sup> you<sup>2</sup> what you ask  
*refusera, v.      ce que      demandez, v.*

of him. - - Dear father, pray forgive me. - - My  
*de grâce*

ambition is the only cause of my impru-  
*ambition, f.      seul, adj.      cause, f.      impru-*

dence. - - - I have seen your father, mother, bro-  
*dence, f.      ai, v. vu, p.p.*

thers, and sisters. - - - Her affection for me is  
*affection, f. pour, p.*  
 false. - - - Good night, cousin, I hope that you  
*faux, adj. soir, m. espère, v. que*  
 (will come) soon to see my country-  
*viendrez, v. bientôt, adv. voir, v.*  
 house and gardens. - - - Your horses and carriage  
*cheval, m. carrosse, m.*  
 are very beautiful, but the queen's horses and carriages  
*beau, adj.*  
 are much more so.  
*beaucoup, adv.*

When, in English, these pronouns are used in a sentence, speaking of any part of the body, they are not to be expressed in French, but the preposition *in* and the pronoun are rendered by the article definite; the personal pronoun being sufficient to determine in French the possession: ex.

*J'ai mal aux yeux,* I have a pain in my eyes.  
 and not *dans mes yeux,*  
*Il se cassa le bras,* He broke his arm.  
 and not *son bras.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My mother has (a pain) in her head. - - - I have  
*a, v. mal à, p. tête, f.*  
 (a pain) in my ear, and she has (a pain) in her  
*oreille, f.*  
 teeth. - - - When I eat meat, I have always  
*dent, f. mange, v. toujours, adv.*  
 a pain in my stomach. - - The man who fell from  
*estomac, m. tomba, v.*  
 the roof of our house, dislocated his wrist,  
*toit, m. se démit, v. poignet, m.*  
 broke his right leg, sprained  
*droit, adj. jambe, f. se donna une entorse*  
 his left foot, dislocated his shoulders,  
*au gauche, adj. pied, m. se disloqua, v. épaule, f.*  
 and hurt his head. - - - When I run fast,  
*se blessa, v. cours, v. vite, adv.*

I (am afraid) of falling and breaking my  
*crains, v. tomber, v. de me casser, v.*  
 arm or neck.

*Its, their*, having a reference to inanimate or irrational objects, and placed in another member of the sentence from that wherein the object referred to is itself expressed, are not made into French by *son, sa, ses, &c.* but by the pronoun *en* placed before the verb, and the articles *le, la, les* : ex.

*Paris est une grande ville, Paris is a large city, but its*  
*mais les rues en sont trop streets are too narrow,*  
*étroites, (that is, the streets of it.)*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Windsor is a fine town, I admire its  
*ville, f. admire, v.*  
 situation, walks, and streets. - - This  
*situation, f. promenade, f. rue, f. Cette, pro.*  
 house is well situate, but its architecture  
*situé, adj. architecture, f.*  
 does not please me much. - - - His coach is  
*plait, v. beaucoup, adv. carrosse, m.*  
 beautiful, (every body) admires its painting  
*tout le monde, m. admire, v. peinture, f.*  
 and ornaments. - - - The shops of London are  
 (very fine,) foreigners especially see their  
*superbe, adj. étranger, m. sur-tout, adv.*  
 riches and cleanliness with pleasure and astonish-  
 ment. - - - The walks of your (country-seat) are well  
*allée, f. château, m.*  
 kept, I like their regularity.  
*tenu, p. p. régularité, f.*

The *relatives* are never joined to any substantive; for the substantive to which they refer is always implied in the pronoun. They are,

#### Masculine.

#### Feminine.

##### SING.

##### PLUR.

##### SING.

##### PLUR.

<i>Le mien,</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>la mienne,</i>	<i>les miennes,</i>	<i>mine.</i>
<i>Le tien,</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>la tienne,</i>	<i>les tiennes,</i>	<i>thine.</i>
<i>Le sien,</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>la sienne,</i>	<i>les siennes,</i>	<i>his or hers.</i>

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

SING.	PLURAL.	SING.	PLURAL.
<i>Le nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>la nôtre,</i>	<i>les nôtres, ours.</i>
<i>Le vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>la vôtre,</i>	<i>les vôtres, yours.</i>
<i>Le leur,</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>la leur,</i>	<i>les leurs, theirs.</i>

They are declined with the article definite ; ex.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. <i>Le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne, mine.</i>
Gen. Abl. <i>Du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne, of or from mine.</i>
Dat. <i>Au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne, to mine.</i>

## PLURAL.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. <i>Les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes, mine.</i>
Gen. Abl. <i>Des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes, of or from mine.</i>
Dat. <i>Aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes, to mine.</i>

The rest are declined as the preceding.

When any one of these relative pronouns is used after the verb *être*, to be, signifying *to belong to*, it must be expressed in French by one of the pronouns personal in the dative ; and when joined to a noun substantive, it ought to be rendered by a pronoun possessive absolute, and the substantive must be put in the genitive plural :  
ex.

*Ce livre est à moi,*

This book is *mine*, (that is, *belongs to me*.)

*C'est un de mes amis,*

He is a friend *of mine*, (that is, *one of my friends*.)

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Your daughter is handsomer than mine, but  
*beau, adj.*

mine has more wit than yours. --- Her house is  
*esprit*

more convenient than ours, but yours is not so  
*commode, adj.*

well situate as theirs. --- This hat is mine and  
*Ce, pro.*

not yours, but this sword is yours and  
*non pas* *cette*, pro.  
 not his. - - - I lost a book of mine, and a friend  
*ai perdu*, p.p.  
 of yours found it. - - - He sold me a knife,  
*a trouvé*, p.p. *couteau*, m.  
 but this knife was not his, it was a friend of his  
*était* *c'était*  
 who had lent it to him.  
*avait prêté*, v.

## OF PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE.

These pronouns are called *demonstrative*, because they distinguish, in a precise manner, the persons or things to which they are applied. They are,

### SINGULAR.

#### Masculine.

*Ce, cet*,\*  
*Celui*, he, that,  
*Celui-ci*,  
*Celui-là*,

#### Feminine.

*cette*, this, that.  
*celle*, she, that.  
*celle-ci*, this.  
*celle-là*, that.

### PLURAL.

#### Masculine.

*Ces*,  
*Ceux*,  
*Ceux-ci*,  
*Ceux-là*,  
*Ce qui, ce que*, what.  
*Ceci*, this ; *cela*, that.†

#### Feminine.

*ces*, these, those.  
*celles*, they, these, those.  
*celles-ci*, these.  
*celles-là*, those.

The last two are always of the masculine gender, and of the singular number.

\* *Cet* is used before a noun masculine beginning with a vowel, or H mute: ex. *cet oiseau*, this bird ; *cet honneur*, this honour.

† The word *that*, coming between two verbs, and followed by a noun or pronoun, is then a conjunction, and must be rendered into French by *que*, even when implied in English: ex.

*Je sais que votre frère est marié*, I know *that* your brother is married, or, I know your brother is married.

These pronouns are declined with the article indefinite, *de, à* : ex.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *ce livre*, this or that book.  
 Gen. Abl. *de ce livre*, of or from this book.  
 Dat. *à ce livre*, to this book.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces livres*, these books.  
 Gen. Abl. *de ces livres*, of or from these books.  
 Dat. *à ces livres*, to these books.

## SINGULAR.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *cette plume*, this or that pen.  
 Gen. Abl. *de cette plume*, of or from this pen.  
 Dat. *à cette plume*, to this pen.

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc. *ces plumes*, these pens.  
 Gen. Abl. *de ces plumes*, of or from these pens.  
 Dat. *à ces plumes*, to these pens.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

Nom. Acc. *celui*, he, him, that.  
 Gen. Abl. *de celui*, of or from him.  
 Dat. *à celui*, to him.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc. *celle*, she, her, that.  
 Gen. Abl. *de celle*, of or from her.  
 Dat. *à celle*, to her.

## PLURAL.

## Masc.

## Fem.

N. Acc. *ceux*, *celles*, they, them, those, such as.  
 G. Abl. *de ceux*, *de celles*, of or from those.  
 Dat. *à ceux*, *à celles*, to those.

The others are declined as the preceding.

N. B. *He, she, they, him, her, them*, being immediately followed in a sentence by *who, whom, or that*, used in an indeterminate sense, not relating to any individual mentioned before, and only implying *any person, one or any body*, must not be rendered in French by the personal pronouns, *il, elle, &c.* but by the above pronouns, *celui, celle, &c.*

The same rule must be observed with respect to *such as, such that*, used in English in the same sense as *he who, they who* : ex.

Celui ou celle qui pratique la vertu vit heureux,	He or she who practices virtue lives happy.
Ceux qui méprisent la science n'en connoissent pas le prix,	Such as despise learning do not know its value, (the value of it.)

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He who supports	idleness makes himself
<i>encourage, v.</i>	<i>se rend, v.</i>
despicable. - - - She whom you saw at my	
<i>méprisable, adj.</i>	<i>que, pro. vîtes, v. chez, p.</i>
brother's is not yet	married. - - - You
<i>encore, adv.</i>	<i>marié, p. p.</i>
punish him who is not guilty. - - - Men com-	
<i>punissez, v.</i>	<i>coupable, adj. ordi-</i>
monly <sup>2</sup> hate <sup>1</sup> him whom they fear. - - -	
<i>nairement, adv. haïssent, v. que, pro. craignent, v.</i>	
-She whom you hate is my best friend. - - - You	
<i>haïssez, v.</i>	<i>amie, f.</i>
have punished him who did not deserve it,	
<i>puni, p. p.</i>	<i>méritoit, v.</i>
and rewarded her who was guilty. - - - We	
<i>récompensé, p. p.</i>	
(ought to) pray for them who persecute	
<i>devons, v.</i>	<i>qui, pro. persécutent, v.</i>
us. - - - Of all virtues, that which most <sup>2</sup> dis-	
<i>qui, pro. le plus, adv. dis-</i>	
tinguishes <sup>1</sup> a Christian is charity. - - - This book and	
<i>tingue, v.</i>	



that which I lent you are the two best. - - -

*que, pro. ai prêté, p.p.*

Such as seem (to be) happy, are not

*qui, pro. paroissent, v. être, v.*

always so.

*toujours, adv.\**

*Ce, cette, ces*, this, that, these, those, most always precede the substantive to which they are joined, and agree with it in gender, number, and case. On the contrary, *celui, celle, celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là*, this, that, &c. either in the singular or plural, are never joined to any noun; for the noun to which they refer is always implied in the pronoun: ex.

*J'ai vu le portrait du père* I have seen the father's  
*et celui du fils,* picture, and *that* of the son.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

She who dines with us, is my brother's wife. - - -

*dine, v. avec, p. femme, f.*

She brought her picture, and that of her

*a apporté, p.p. portrait, m.*

husband. - - - I have seen the king's palace, and

*mari, m. palais, m.*

that of the queen. - - - That gold watch, which

*montre, f. que, pro.*

you showed me, is not yours, it is that of

*avez montrée, p.p. c'est, v.*

your brother. - - - I have lost my buckles and

*perdu, p.p.*

those of your cousin. - - - Your books and those of

*cousin, m.*

your little sister are torn. - - - I know this

*petit, adj. déchirés, p.p. connois, v.*

cap, it is that of your mother.

*bonnet, m. c'est, v.*

N. B. The pronoun *that*, either in the singular or plural, is often suppressed in English, and supplied by

\* See the Rule, page 95.

an apostrophe and an *s*, thus (*'s*), at the end of the noun substantive as above, but it must be expressed in French by the above pronouns *celui*, *celle*, and according to the gender and number of the object to which it refers: ex.

*Il a pris mon chapeau et celui de mon père,* He has taken my hat and my father's, (*that is*, and *that* of my father.)

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You have torn my gown, and my sister's. - - -  
*déchiré, p.p. robe, f.*  
 I have found my hat and my brother's in the  
*trouvé, p.p.*  
 room. - - - The thieves came by night  
*chambre, f. voleur, m. entrèrent, v. de nuit, adv.*  
 into my father's house, they (broke open) my room  
*dans forcèrent, v.*  
 and my mother's, and stole my watch and  
*volèrent, v.*  
 my sister's. - - - You may, if you please, take  
*pouvez, v. voulez, v. prendre, v.*  
 your grammar and your brother's, but leave  
*laissez, v.*  
 mine and my friend's. - - - Our oranges and Mr.  
*orange, f.*  
 Savage's are the best that you can  
*Sauvage, on, pro. puisse, v.*  
 find.  
*trouver, v.*

Sometimes the particles *ci*, *là*, here, there, are also joined to the substantive following the pronouns, *ce*, *cette*, *ces*, to distinguish with more precision the objects to which they are applied: ex.

*Ce chapeau-ci*, this hat; *cette ville-là*, that town, &c.

N. B. The two following expressions, the former, *celui-là, m. celle-là, f. ceux-là, m. celles-là, f.*; the latter, *celui-ci, m. celle-ci, f. ceux-ci, m. celles-ci, f.* referring to substantives mentioned in a preceding sentence, are

elegantly used in French, and agree with the nouns, instead of *le premier*, *le second*, the repetition of which they avoid: ex.

*Un François et un Ecos- A Frenchman and a Scotch-  
sois se battirent hier à man fought yesterday with  
l'épée, celui-là, fut blessé swords, the former was  
à l'épaule, et celui-ci au wounded in the shoulder  
bras, and the latter in the arm.*

# EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Learn this lesson, it is not so difficult  
*Apprenez, v. difficile, adj.*  
as that. - - - I prefer this way to that road. - - -  
*préfère, v. chemin, m. route, f.*  
This room is much larger than that parlour. - -  
*grand, adj. salon, m.*  
These candles are better than those. - - -  
*chandelle, f.*  
(There was) a great battle between George  
*Il y eut, v. combat, m. entre, p.*  
and Stephen; the former had a broken<sup>a</sup> nose<sup>1</sup>,  
*Etienne, eut, v. le cassé, p. p. nez, m.*  
and the latter lost a tooth. - - - In the engagements  
*perdit, v. bataille, f.*  
which took place between the Austrians  
*qui, pro. eurent, v. lieu, m. Autrichien, m.*  
and the French, the former lost two  
*François, m. perdirent, v.*  
thousand men, and the latter fifteen hundred. - - -  
*homme,*  
Among the peaches which you sent<sup>a</sup> me<sup>1</sup> at two  
*Parm, p. pêche, f. que, pro. avez envoyées à*  
different times, I observed that the former  
*différent, adj. fois, f. ai remarqué, v.*  
were better than the latter.  
*étoient, v.*

*Ce qui*, in the nominative case, *ce que*, in the accusative, what. This pronoun is never joined to any noun; it always may be turned into *that which*, or the thing

*which* ; and *ceci, cela*, this, that, are only used when speaking of things, the word *thing* being always understood : ex.

<i>Je sais ce qui est arrivé,</i>	I know <i>what</i> has happened.
<i>Savez-vous ce que je pense ?</i>	Do you know <i>what</i> I think ?
<i>Ceci me plait,</i>	<i>This</i> pleases me ; i. e. <i>this thing, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Cela me fait peur,</i>	<i>That</i> frightens me ; i. e. <i>that thing, &amp;c.</i>

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

May	I know	what causes	your grief
<i>Puis, v.</i>	<i>savoir, v.</i>	<i>cause, v.</i>	<i>chagrin, m.</i>
and sadness ? - - -	Your father	has	(a good deal)
<i>tristesse, f.</i>			<i>beaucoup, adv.</i>
of friendship for you ; for,	he	'never'	
	<i>car, c.</i>	<i>ne jamais, adv.</i>	
refuses <sup>3</sup> you <sup>2</sup> what you ask		of him. - - -	
<i>refuse, v.</i>	<i>demandez, v.</i>	<i>à lui.</i>	
You seem	much	dejected,	tell me what
<i>paraissez, v.</i>	<i>bien, adv.</i>	<i>abattu, adj.</i>	<i>dites-moi</i>
vexes you. - - -	Go	and tell	my father what
<i>fâche, v.</i>	<i>Allez, v.</i>	<i>à dire à, v.</i>	
has passed here and do not forget		what you	
<i>s'est passé, v.</i>	<i>ici, adv.</i>	<i>oubliez, v.</i>	
have seen, and what you have heard. - - -			Give
		<i>entendu, p.p.</i>	
me this, and take	that. - - -	I prefer	this to
<i>prenez, v.</i>		<i>préfère, v.</i>	
that.			

#### OF PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

These pronouns are called *relative*, because they have always a reference to some other noun or pronoun in the discourse, either expressed or implied. They are declined as follows :

## SINGULAR and PLURAL.

## Both Genders.

Nom.	<i>qui,</i>	who, which, that.
Gen.	<i>de qui, or dont,</i>	of whom, whose,* of which.
Dat.	<i>à qui,</i>	to whom, to which.
Acc.	<i>que, qui,†</i>	whom, which, that.
Abl.	<i>de qui, dont,</i>	from whom, from which.

Acc.	<i>quoi, que,</i>	what.
Gen. Abl.	<i>de quoi, or dont,</i>	of or from what.
Dat.	<i>à quoi,</i>	to what.

## SINGULAR.

## Masculine.

## Feminine.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lequel,</i>	<i>laquelle, which.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>duquel, or dont,</i>	<i>de laquelle, of or from, &amp;c.</i>
Dat.	<i>auquel,</i>	<i>à laquelle, to which.</i>

## PLURAL.

Nom. Acc.	<i>lesquels,</i>	<i>lesquelles, which.</i>
Gen. Abl.	<i>desquels, or dont,</i>	<i>desquelles, of or from, &amp;c.</i>
Dat.	<i>auxquels,</i>	<i>auxquelles, to which.</i>

The noun, or pronoun, to which the pronoun relative has a reference, is called the *antecedent*, with which it must agree in gender and number: ex.

*Je connois un homme qui doit aller voir le camp,* I know a man *who* is to go and see the camp.

In this sentence *qui* has a reference to *homme*, man, because I can say, *lequel homme*, which man, &c.

*J'ai lu la lettre que vous m'avez envoyée,* I have read the letter (*that*) you sent me.

In this last sentence *que* has a reference to *lettre*, letter, because it may be said, *laquelle lettre*, which letter, &c.

\* *Whose*, being used interrogatively, must be rendered in French by *à qui*: ex.

*A qui est ce livre ?*

Whose book is this ?

† *Qui*, whom, is never used in the accusative but when it is governed by some of the prepositions: ex.

*Avec qui,* With whom.

*Pour qui,* For whom.

or when it signifies *what person*: ex.

*Amenes qui vous voudrez,*

Bring whom you please.

that is, *what person* you please.

The relative *que*, whom, which, or that, is sometimes understood in English, but it must always be expressed in French : ex.

*La dame que vous connoissez* The lady (*that*) you know  
*est arrivée,* is arrived.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The man who sold me these pens is very  
*a. vendu, v.*  
cunning. - - - The lady of whom you speak  
*rusé, adj. dame, f. parlez, v.*  
is not handsome. - - - Miss D\*\*\*, whom you love  
*Mlle aimez, v.*  
so much, is very ill. - - - The person to  
*tant, adv. malade, adj. personne, f.*  
whom I wrote last year has answered  
*ai écrit, v. passé, p. p. année, f. répondu, p. p.*  
me this morning. - - He who was with you, related  
*matin, m. étoit, v. a raconté, v.*  
to me (every thing) that had passed. - - -  
*tout ce qui s'étoit, v. passé, p. p.*  
She will not hear of the lady whom  
*veut, v. entendre parler, v.*  
he (is going to) marry. - - - Shun vice, and  
*va, v. épouser, v. Evitez, v. vice, m.*  
love what is good. - - - Who was with  
*aimez, v. bon, adj. étoit, v. avec, p.*  
you? - - - It was a gentleman, whose name<sup>s</sup> I<sup>s</sup>  
*Ce monsieur, m. nom, m.*  
know<sup>s</sup> not<sup>s</sup>. - - Men generally<sup>s</sup> love<sup>s</sup> him  
*sais, v. généralement, adv.*  
who flatters them. - - The man I sent you was  
*flatte, v. ai envoyé, p. p.*  
honest. - - Whose<sup>s</sup> sword<sup>s</sup> is<sup>s</sup> this<sup>s</sup>? - - You speak  
*parlez, v.*  
of the lady whose husband has been so ill.  
*mari, m. été, p. p.*

These pronouns, like the personal and conjunctive, when governed by two or more verbs, must be repeated (in French) before each governing verb, though most







in? - - To what shall we<sup>1</sup> apply<sup>2</sup> ourselves - -  
*entré, v. appliquerons, v. nous, pro.*  
 (There<sup>3</sup> is<sup>4</sup>) <sup>2</sup>nothing<sup>5</sup> for which he is<sup>2</sup> not<sup>1</sup>  
*Il y a, v. ne rien, adv. à soit, v. ne*  
 fit. - - - - In what do you intend to spend  
*propre, adj. à proposez-vous, v. de passer, v.*  
 your holidays?  
*vacance, f. pl.*

When we speak of irrational beings or inanimate things in the genitive, dative, or ablative cases, we make use of *lequel, laquelle*, which, &c. instead of *qui*; also after a preposition, and when who, whom, or which, refer to one or more objects on which the choice is to be formed: ex.

*Le cheval auquel vous donnez à boire,* The horse to which you give some drink.  
*La fenêtre sur laquelle vous appuyez,* The window upon which you lean.  
*Apportez lequel vous voudrez,* Bring which you please.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The trade to which you apply,  
*commerce, m. vous vous appliquez, v.*  
 and the profession to which you are devoted,  
*profession, f. dévoué, p. p.*  
 are very honourable. - - - (Is that) the horse for  
*Est-ce là, v.*  
 which you gave a hundred guineas? - - Lying  
*avez donné, p. p. Mensonge, m.*  
 is a vice for which young people (ought to)  
*gens, pl. doivent, v.*  
 have the greatest horror. - - - The table upon  
*horreur, f. table, f. sur, p.*  
 which you write, is broken. - - - The reasons  
*écrivez, v. cassée, p. p.*  
 upon which you ground your system are  
*appuyez, v. système, m.*

satisfactory. - - - (There are) four drawings, which  
*satisfaisant*,adj. *Voilà*,adv. *dessein*,m.  
do you choose? - - - (Here are) two pears, which  
*choisissez*,v. *Voici*,adv. *poire*,f.  
will you have? - - They are two sisters, which  
*voulez*,v. *sont*,v.  
do you like the best?  
*aimez*,v. *le mieux*,adv.

## OF PRONOUNS INTERROGATIVE.

They are called *interrogative*, because they are used only in asking questions, and have no antecedent: they are declined with the article indefinite.

### SINGULAR and PLURAL.

#### Both Genders.

Nom. Acc. *qui*, who, whom.  
Gen. Abl. *de qui*, of or from whom.  
Dat. *à qui*, to whom, whose.

Nom. Acc. *quoi*, or *que*, what ;\*  
Or, *qu'est-ce qui*, *qu'est-ce que*.  
Gen. Abl. *de quoi*, of or from what.  
Dat. *à quoi*, to what.

### SINGULAR.

#### Masculine.

#### Feminine.

N.A. *quel*, or *lequel*, *quelle*, or *laquelle*, what, which.  
G.A. *de quel*, *duquel*, *de quelle*, *de laquelle*, of or from, &c.  
Dat. *à quel*, *auquel*, *à quelle*, *à laquelle*, to what, which.

### PLURAL.

#### Masculine.

#### Feminine.

N.A. *quels*, or *lesquels*, *quelles*, or *lesquelles*, what, which.  
G.A. *de quels*, *desquels*, *de quelles*, *desquelles*, of or from, &c.  
Dat. *à quels*, *auxquels*, *à quelles*, *auxquelles*, to what, which.

\* When *what*, in English, signifies *How much*, it must be expressed in French by *combien*.

*Qui*, who, whom, as an interrogative pronoun, always refers to persons, and never to things; and it may be expressed by *quelle personne*? what person? *Quoi* and *que*, what, have always a reference to things and never to persons, and may be expressed by *quelle chose*? what thing? According to the French idiom, *quoi*, can never be put before a verb as its accusative, it is always *que*: ex.

*Qui est-là?*

Who is there?

*De quoi parlez-vous?*

What are you speaking of?

*Que voulez-vous?* or, *qu'est-ce que vous voulez?*

What do you want? (that is, What is it that you wish?)

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Who was the first king of France? --- Who can give credit to a young man who does not speak the truth? --- Of whom were you<sup>2</sup> speaking<sup>1</sup>, when I came? --- To whom did you lend my slate? --- Whom do you seek? --- Who told it to you? --- From whom do you know it? --- What are<sup>2</sup> you<sup>3</sup> doing<sup>3</sup>? --- What do you say? --- What do you ask of me? -- Who is the man who can boast of being without defect? -- What is the name of your father? --- What is his occupation? -- What are his amusements? --- What is his business? -- In what city does he<sup>2</sup> live<sup>1</sup>? ---

*fut, v.* *peut, v.*  
*ajouter, v.* *foi* *dit, v.*  
*vérité, f.* *parliez, v.*  
*vins, v.* *avez, v.* *prêté, p. p.*  
*ardoise, f.* *cherchez, v.* *a dit, v.*  
*savez, v.*  
*faites, v.* *dites, v.*  
*demandez, v.*  
*peut, v.* *se vanter, v.* *de être, v.* *sans, p.* *défaut?*  
*nom, m.*  
*occupation, f.* *sont, v.* *plaisir, m.*  
*sont, v.* *affaires, f. pl.* *ville, f.* *demeure, v.*

What is the country in which he was born?

*pays, m.*

*a pris naissance.*

In the last instances it may easily be seen, that *quel*, or *quelle*, what, is always joined to some substantive with which it must agree in gender and number.

In order to avoid repetition, *lequel*, *laquelle*, which are elegantly used as substantives for *quel*, or *quelle*, and the substantive to which it is joined; and then *lequel* must always be followed by a genitive, either expressed or understood: ex.

<i>Une de mes sœurs est mariée,</i>	One of my sisters is married.
<i>Laquelle est-ce ?</i> that is,	<i>Which</i> is it? that is,
<i>laquelle de vos sœurs est-ce ?</i>	<i>which</i> of your sisters is it?

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

One of your cousins is arrived from the  
*cousin, m. arrivé, p.p.*  
continent; which is it? --- An aunt of yours was  
*continent, m. étoit, v.*  
ill last week; which was  
*malade, adj. dernière, adj. semaine, f.*  
it? --- I have heard that two horses of yours  
*ouï dire, v.*  
were lost: tell me which. -- My brother  
*étoient, v. perdu, p.p. dites, v.*  
wrote to me, that two of your sisters (are going)  
*écrivit, v. vont, v.*  
to learn French: which are they? --  
*apprendre, v. François, m. sont, v.*  
They (were speaking) of a relation of his, and  
*parloient, v. parent, m.*  
of one of my friends; which were they?  
*amie, f.*

## OF PRONOUNS INDEFINITE.

These pronouns are called *indefinite* or *indeterminate*, because they generally are substituted for the name of a vague and indeterminate object. Among them some are used as nouns adjective, being always joined to a noun substantive; others are sometimes used as pronouns without a substantive, and sometimes as adjectives with a substantive.

*Aucun*, m. *aucune*, f.

*Autre*,

*Autrui*,

*Chacun*, m. *chacune*, f.

*Chaque*,

*L'un l'autre*, sing. m.

*Les uns*——*les autres*,

*L'un et l'autre*, sing. m.

*L'un ou l'autre*, sing. m.

*Ni l'un ni l'autre*, sing. m.

*Nul*, m. *nulle*, f.

*Pas un*, m. *pas une*, f.

*Personne*,

*La plupart de*, des,

*Plusieurs*,

*Quelconque*,

*Quelque*,

*Quelque chose*,

*Quelque—que*,

*Quel—que*, sing. m.

*Quelle—que*, sing. f.

*Quelque chose qui or que*,

*Quoi que*,

*Quoi que ce soit que*,

*Tout ce qui, or que*,

*Quelqu'un*, m. *quelqu'une*, f.

None, not any, any one.

Other, any other.

Others, other people.

Each, every one, every body.

Every, each.

One another, each other.

Some——others.

Some——some.

Both.

Either.

Neither.

No one.

Not one.

Nobody, none, no one, any one, any body.

Most.

Many, several.

Whatever, whatsoever.

Some, any.

Something, any thing.

Whosoever, whatsoever,

whatever, however,

howsoever, though, &c.

Whatever, whatsoever.

Some, some one, somebody, any body.

*Quiconque,  
Qui que ce soit, or fût,*

*Quoi que ce soit, or fût,*

*Rien,  
Tel, telle, tels, telles,  
Tel qui, tels qui,  
Telle qui, telles qui,  
Tout,  
Tout le monde,  
Tout—que,*

Whoever, whosoever.  
Whoever, nobody in the world, nobody at all, any body whatever, no man living, let him be who he will, or be who he may, &c.

Whatever, nothing in the world, nothing whatever.

Nothing, any thing.  
Such a one, such.  
Such as he, she, they, who, that, &c.  
Every, every thing.  
Every body, any body.  
As—as, for all, although, however, &c.

#### OBSERVATIONS on some of the above PRONOUNS.

*Aucun, aucune*, is never used but in the singular, and always requires *ne* before the verb; it relates to a person or thing mentioned before; but in interrogative sentences, and when it expresses a doubt, it is used without a negation: *ex.*

<i>Aucun ne s'est encore avisé de vous contredire,</i>	<i>None</i> has yet thought of contradicting you.
<i>Y a-t-il aucun (ou aucune) de vous qui le souffrît ?</i>	Is there <i>any</i> of you who would suffer it ?

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

None of the books which you saw me	
	<i>avez vu, p.p.</i>
buying, pleases me. - - - Of all the apples	
<i>acheter, v. plait, v.</i>	<i>pomme, f.</i>
which you gave me, none is yet	
	<i>avez données, p.p. encore, adv.</i>
fit to eat. - - - Is there any of you who	
<i>bon, adj. à manger, v. Y a-t-il,</i>	

applies to study as much as he can? - - - Among  
*s'applique, v. étude, f. le peut, v.*  
 all the ladies you know, is there any one who  
*dame, f. connoissez, v.*  
 (would have) married him? - - Philip is cer-  
*eût voulu, p. p. épouser, v. Philippe cer-*  
 tainly a very wicked man, for none  
*tainement, adv. méchant, adj. car, c.*  
 of his friends speak well of him. - - - Do you  
*parle, v.*  
 know any news? No, sir, I know  
*savez, v. nouvelle, monsieur, sais, v.*  
 none. - - I was in trouble, and none of  
*étois, v. dans, p. embarras, m.*  
 my friends have relieved me.  
*a, v. secouru, p. p.*

*Nul, pas un*, are always accompanied by a negation,  
 and can only be used as a nominative to the verb: *Per-*  
*sonne* is likewise attended with a negation, except in  
 sentences of doubt, admiration, or interrogation: *ex.*

<i>Nul ne peut se flatter d'être</i>	<i>No one can flatter himself</i>
<i>agréable à Dieu,</i>	<i>to be agreeable to God.</i>
<i>Pas un ne le croit,</i>	<i>Not one believes it.</i>
<i>Personne s'est-il jamais ex-</i>	<i>Did ever any body express</i>
<i>primé avec plus de grâce</i>	<i>himself with more grace</i>
<i>que Sheridan?</i>	<i>than Sheridan?</i>

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

No one in this world is free from  
*en, p. monde, m. exempt, adj.*  
 fault. - - - No one can pretend to be per-  
*défaut, m. prétendre, v. être, v. par-*  
 fectly happy in this land of mi-  
*suitement, adv. dans, p. terre, f.*  
 sery. - - All the sailors perished at sea,  
*matelot, m. ont péri, v. sur, p. mer,*

not one escaped. - - - The soldiers are all re-  
*a échappé, p.p.* *soldat, m.* *re-*  
 turned, not one has remained behind. - - -  
*venu, p.p.* *est, v.* *resté, p.p.* *derrière, adv.*  
 Nobody can boast of being without im-  
*se vanter, v.* *être, v.* *sans, p.*  
 perfections. - - As nobody speaks to you,  
*Comme, adv.* *parle, v.*  
 you ought not to speak to any body. - - - Did  
*devez, v.* *parler, v.* *A-t-il*  
 ever any body know in what happiness  
*jamais* *connu, p.p.* *en, p.* *bonheur, m.*  
 consists ?  
*consiste, v.*

*Autre* refers to persons and things, and is an adjective that precedes its substantive, unless used as a noun; but *autrui* refers to persons only, and is invariable, and can only be used in the genitive or dative case : ex.

*Cette plume n'est pas bonne,* This pen is not good, give  
*donnez-lui en une autre,* him another.  
*Ne prenez pas le bien d'au-* Do not take other people's  
*trui,* goods.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Your brother has lost his books, shall I  
*perdu, p.p.*  
 give him others ? - - - As you broke my  
*donnerai, v.* *avez cassé, pp.*  
 penknife, you will give me another. - - Other peo-  
*canif, m.* *donnerez, v.*  
 ple's opinions are not the rule of mine. - - -  
*sentiment, m.* *règle, f.*  
 Do not speak ill of other people, if you  
*parlez, v.* *mal, adv.*  
 will have nobody speak ill of you. - - -  
*voulez, v.* *que, c.* *parle, v.*  
 Always<sup>a</sup> remember<sup>1</sup> that principle of na-  
*souvenez-vous* *de ce principe, m.* *na-*



tural law, do not to others what you  
*turel,adj. loi,f. faites,v.*

would not wish that (they should do) to you. - -  
*voudriez,v. on fit,v.*

What are other people's troubles, if (they be com-  
*peine,f. si,c. on les com-*  
 pared) with ours.  
*pare,v. aux*

*Chaque* and *chacun* are not used indifferently ; *chaque*  
*always* requires a substantive after it, and *chacun* repre-  
 sents a noun not expressed in the sentence, both relating  
 to persons or things : ex.

*Chaque langue a ses idiomes* Each language has its pe-  
*particuliers,* cular idioms.  
*Chacun à son tour,* Every one in his turn.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Every thing in its time. - - Every virtue has  
*chose dans,p. tems,m.*  
 its reward, and each vice has its punishment. - -  
*récompense,f. châtiement,m.*

Let every seldier keep his post to  
*Que se tienne,v. à poste,m. pour,p.*  
 avoid any surprise from the enemy. - -  
*éviter,v. tout,adj. surprise,f. de la part de l'ennemi.*

Every one thinks and acts for himself. - - Do not  
*pense,v. agit,v. soi.*  
 speak all at once, but each in your turn. - - -  
*à la fois,adv. à*

England expects (that) every man (will do) his duty  
*attend,v. fera,v. devoir,m.*  
 in case of danger. - - Trees bear their fruits  
*en Arbre,m. portent,v.*

each in its season. - - (Let us give) to every  
*dans,p. rendons,v.*  
 one what belongs to him. - - - Let every one  
*appartient,v. Que*

meddle with his own business.  
*se mêle,v. de propre,adj. affaires,pl.*

*L'un l'autre* are susceptible of gender and number, and express a reciprocity in the action, and may be applied to persons or things ; and if there be a preposition in English, it must be placed between them : **ex.**

*Ils se haïssent l'un l'autre,* They hate each other.  
*Ils parlent mal l'un de l'autre,* They speak ill of one another.  
*Les voleurs se défient les uns des autres,* Thieves mistrust one another.

# EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Fire and water destroy one another. - - My  
*se détruisent, v.*  
 sisters can not bear each other. - -  
*peuvent, v.* *se souffrir, v.*  
 Love one another, said our Lord  
*Aimez-vous, v.* *dit, v.* *Seigneur, m.*  
 to his disciples. - - The seasons follow each  
*disciple, m.* *saison, f.* *se suivent, v.*  
 other without interruption. - - - Honest men  
*sans, p.* *gens*  
 (ought to) esteem one another. - - - They  
*devroient* *s'estimer.*  
 do justice to one another. - - - It is rare  
*se rendent, v.* *rare, adj.*  
 to hear two authors speak well of one  
*de entendre, v.* *auteur, m.* *dire, v.* *du bien, m.*  
 another. - - Multiplication teaches to multiply  
*Multiplication, f.* *enseigne, v.* *à multiplier, v.*  
 two numbers by each other. - - The columns  
*nombre, m.* *par, p.* *colonne, f.*  
 were close against one another.  
*étoient, v.* *serré, adj.* *contre, p.*

*L'un et l'autre* always require the verb in the plural, and may likewise be applied to persons or things : *ni l'un ni l'autre* require the verb to be put in the singular, if that pronoun be placed before the verb, and in the plural, if it come after it ; but in both cases the verb must be preceded by the negation **ne** : **ex.**

**L'un et l'autre ont raison,**      *Both are in the right.*  
**Ni l'un ni l'autre ne répond,**      *Neither of them answer.*  
     *or ils ne répondent ni l'un*  
     *ni l'autre,*

When the preposition relates to *both*, it must be placed before *l'un* and *l'autre*, and repeated; and *both* is not expressed in French when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and*: ex.

*Il reçoit de l'argent de l'un*      He receives money from  
     *et de l'autre,*      *both.*  
*Son frère et sa sœur sont*      *Both his brother and sister*  
     *morts,*      *are dead.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Both serve to the same purpose. - - - I  
     *servent, v.*      *même, adj.*      *usage, m.*  
 called on your cousins, and I heard  
*ai passé, p.p. chez*      *cousine, f.*      *ai appris, p.p.*  
 that both had been married a week be-  
*que avoient, v.*      *marié, p.p.*      *semaine, f.*      *au-*  
*fore. - - -* Honour your father and mother  
*paravant, adv.*      *Respectez, v.*  
 and endeavour to please both. - - Do you speak  
*tâchez, v.*      *de plaire, v.*      *à*      *parlez, v.*  
 of my brother or sister? I speak of both. - - Apples  
     *parle, v.*      *Pomme, f.*  
 and pears are good fruits, but peaches are pre-  
     *poire, f.*      *pêche, f.*      *pré-*  
 ferable to both. - - I wrote to both, but neither of  
*férable, adj.*      *ai écrit, v.*      *en*  
 them answered my letters. - Yesterday I expected  
     *en*      *a répondu, p.p. à*      *attendois, v.*  
 my two best friends, but neither of them came. - - I  
     *en*      *en*      *vint, v.*  
 will give it to neither of them. - - - Both religion  
*donnerai, v.*      *en*      *en*  
 and virtue are the bonds of civil society.  
     *lien, m.*

**Quelque—que.** *Quelque* immediately joined to a noun followed by *que*, expresses an indeterminate quality or quantity; it is declinable before a substantive and indeclinable before an adjective, and requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

*Quelques fautes que vous ayez faites, on vous pardonnera,*      *Whatever faults you may have committed, they will forgive you.*

*Quelque grandes que soient vos fautes, on vous pardonnera,*      *However great your faults be, they will forgive you.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whatever efforts people make to hide  
*effort, m. on, pro. fasse, v. pour, p. voiler, v.*  
 truth, it (is discovered) sooner or later. - - What-  
*se découvre, v. tôt, adv. tard, adv.*

ever services you (may have) done to your  
*service, m. ayez, v. rendus, p.p.*

country, it will reward you for them. - - What-  
*patrie, f. récompensera, v. \**

ever capacity a man may have, he ought not to  
*puisse, v. doit, v. se*

boast. - - However equitable your<sup>2</sup> offers<sup>3</sup> be<sup>4</sup>,  
*vanter, v. offre, f. soient, v.*

I do not believe they will be accepted. - - <sup>1</sup>Though<sup>3</sup>  
*crois, v. soient, v. acceptée, p.p.*

kings<sup>5</sup> be<sup>4</sup> (ever so) powerful<sup>2</sup> they die  
*soient, v. puissant, adj. meurent, v.*

as well as the meanest of their subjects. - - However  
*bas, adj. sujet, m.*

learned those ladies may be, they sometimes<sup>2</sup>  
*savant, adj. quelquefois, adv.*

mistake<sup>1</sup>.  
*se trompent, v.*

*Quel que, quelle que* must be thus divided, when it is immediately followed by a verb or a personal pronoun, and agree in gender and number with the noun to which it relates; it likewise requires the verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

\* See the Rule, page 92:

*Quelle que soit votre faute, on vous pardonnera,* *Whatever your fault may be, they will forgive you.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

*Whatever the enemy be, whose malice<sup>3</sup> you<sup>1</sup> dread,<sup>2</sup> you ought to rely on your apprehendez,v. devez,v. vous reposer,v. sur,p. innocence. - - Laws condemn all criminals, condemnent,v. criminel,m. whoever they may be. - - Whatever your intentions (may be) I think that you (are in the wrong). tion,f. soient avec tort. Whatever the reasons be which you (may allege,) raison,f. alléguiez,v. they are not sufficient. - - - Whatever these books suffisant,adj. livre,m. be, send them to me. - - Whatever her fortune be, fortune,f. he says he 'never' (will marry<sup>3</sup>) her<sup>2</sup>. dit,v. épousera,v.*

*Quelque chose qui or que, quoi que, quoi que ce soit que, tout ce qui or que, always relate to things, and never to persons; with this difference, that, in French, we generally begin the sentence with either quelque chose que or qui, quoi que, or quoi que ce soit que, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood: ex.*

*Quelque chose qu'on vous dise, ne le croyez pas, Whatever may be said to you, do not believe it. Quoi que ce soit qu'on vous dise, ne le croyez pas, Whatever they may say to you, do not believe it.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

*Whatever may happen to you in this world, puisse,v. arriver,v. monde,m. 'never' murmur<sup>2</sup> against divine providence, for murmurez,v. contre,p. car,c.*

whatever we may suffer, we deserve it. - - What-  
*souffrons, v. méritons, v.*  
 ever I (may do,) you always blame me. - - Who is  
*fasse, v. blâmez, v.*  
 the man who has stolen his money? I know not;  
*volé, p. p. sais, v.*  
 but whoever he (may be,) and whatever he may say,  
*soit, dise, v.*  
 if my father catch him, he shall be punished. - -  
*attrappe, v. puni, p. p.*  
 In whatever your master employs you, do it  
*à emploie, v. faites, v.*  
 heartily. - - - - Whatever you may say, your  
*de bon cœur, adv. disiez, v.*  
 brothers shall be punished, if they deserve it.  
*seront, v. \* méritent, v.*

On the contrary, we always make use of *tout ce qui*  
*or que*, when *whatever* can be turned into *all that which*,  
*or every thing which*; and may be placed either at the  
 beginning or in the middle of a sentence, according to  
 its situation in English, with the following verb in the  
 indicative mood: ex.

*Il fera toujours tout ce qu'il* He will always do *what-*  
*vous plaira,* ever, or *every thing*, you  
 please.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

In whatever you do, be guided by ho-  
*faites, v. guidé, p. p. hon-*  
 nesty, and probity; and in whatever you say,  
*nécessé, f. dites, v.*  
 never deviate from the path of truth. - -  
*vous écarter, v. sentier, m.*  
 Whatever is pleasing is not always useful. - - -  
*agréable, adj. utile, adj.*  
 Tell me whatever you think of me, and I will  
*Dites, v. pensez, v. di-*  
 tell you whatever I think of you. - - Never speak  
*rai, v.*

\* *Si* always loses the *i* before *il*, he; *ils*, they.

of whatever has passed between us both. - - She is  
*s'est passé, v. entre, p. deux.*  
 so curious, that she will know whatever I  
*curieux, adj. veut, v. savoir, v.*  
 do. - - Whatever glitters is not gold. - - I will pay  
*fais, v. luit, v. or. paierai, v.*  
 you to-morrow whatever I owe you.  
*dois, v.*

*Quelque* always expresses an indeterminate signification, and is generally joined to a substantive with which it agrees in number; and *quelqu'un, quelqu'une*, make *quelques-uns, quelques-unes*, in the plural: ex.

<i>Quelque homme,</i>	<i>Some man.</i>
<i>Quelque femme,</i>	<i>Some woman.</i>
<i>Quelqu'un m'a dit,</i>	<i>Some one has told me, &amp;c.</i>

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

When he comes to see us, he has  
*Quand, adv. vient, v. or voir, v.*  
 always some tale to tell us. - - He promised  
*conte, in. à faire, v. a promis, p. p.*  
 to bring me some filberts and chesnuts. - - - Have  
*de areline châtaigne.*  
 you heard any news? - - Somebody knocks  
*appris, p. p. nouvelle? frappe, v.*  
 at the door, go and open it. - - Is there  
*allez, v. or ouvrir, v. Y a-t-il, v.*  
 any of these ladies who has found my colour-box?  
*dame, f. ait, v. trouvé couleur,*  
 - - Have you any (raspberry trees) in your garden? I  
*framboisier, m.*  
 have some. - - Has he any vines? Yes, he has some.  
*A-t-il, vigne, f. Oui, adv.*

*Qui que ce soit*, speaking of persons only, may be Englished different ways; but when by *whoever, what person soever*, it must always be followed by the pronouns *il, elle* or *qui*, and sometimes by both, unless it be governed by a verb of preposition: ex.

*Qui que ce soit qui me* *Whoever* deceives me, shall  
*trompe, il sera puni, be punished.*

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Whoever despises the poor, is himself des-  
*méprise, v.* *lui-même mé-*  
 picable. - - Whoever speaks to you, do not answer. - -  
*prisable, adj.* *parle* *répondez, v.*  
 Whoever (may presume to) ask you any question  
*osera, v.* *question*  
 concerning that affair, pretend not<sup>2</sup> to<sup>1</sup> know<sup>5</sup> (any<sup>4</sup>  
*touchant, p.* *feignez, v.* *de savoir, v.*  
 thing) (about it<sup>3</sup>). - - Of whomsoever you speak,  
*parliez, v.*  
 always speak the truth. - - - To whomsoever you  
*dites, v.* *vous*  
 apply every body - (will tell) you the  
*vous adressiez, v.* *tout le monde, m.* *dira, v.*  
 same thing. - - - With whomsoever you be,  
*chose, f.* *Avec, p.* *soyez, v.*  
 always<sup>2</sup> behave<sup>1</sup> well<sup>3</sup>.  
*comportez-vous, v.*

When the above pronoun is Englished by *nobody in the world, no man living, &c.*; it must be attended with the negation *ne* before the verb; and when speaking in the past tense, *qui que ce fût* must be used: cx.

*Je n'en parle à qui que ce soit,* I mention it to no man living, to no one.

*César ne vouloit se fier à qui que ce fût,* Cæsar would trust to nobody whatever.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Charity bids us to (speak ill) of nobody what-  
*ordonne, v.* *de médire, v.*  
 ever, and to do harm to no man living. - - I  
*de faire, v.* *du mal, m.*  
 spoke to nobody whatever; for I saw neither  
*ai parlé, p. p.* *ai vu, v.*  
 father, mother, nor children. - - Never speak to any  
*parlez, v.*



body whatever of what I told you. - - He acquainted  
*ai dit* *fit part à, v.*  
 nobody in the world with his projects. - - My brother  
*de* *projet, m.*  
 was so honest, that he mistrusted nobody at all. - -  
*étoit, v.* *se défioit de, v.*  
 Cromwell would trust his life to nobody whatever.  
*voulut, v. confier, v. vie, f.*

The above observation is to be made with respect to  
*quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût*, only used in speaking of  
 inanimate objects. *Quiconque* is indeclinable, always  
 used in the singular, and said only of persons : ex.

*Je ne me plains de quoi que* I do not complain of any  
*ce soit,* *thing whatever.*  
*Quiconque vous a dit cela,* *Whoever told you that, &c.*  
*&c.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

My brother enjoys so<sup>a</sup> good<sup>3</sup> a<sup>1</sup> health<sup>4</sup>, that  
*jouit de, v.* *si*  
 (for these) three years he never complained of  
*depuis, p.* *s'est plaint, p. p.*  
 any thing whatever. - - - He is so lazy, that  
 he applies to nothing whatever. - - - You  
*s'applique, v.*  
 may go and take a walk in the garden,  
*pouvez, v. alier, v. vous promener, v.*  
 but do not touch any thing whatever. - - Who-  
*touchez à, v.*  
 ever believes every thing which (he is told,) is  
*croit, v.* *on lui dit, v.*  
 often deceived. - - - He (is ordered) to stop  
*trompé, p. p.* *a ordre, v. de arrêter, v.*  
 every one that shall go that way.  
*passera, v. par-là.*

It must be observed, that the numeral adjective *one*,  
 used in English as a pronoun indefinite, and admitting  
 of a plural termination, is not to be expressed in French,  
 when it immediately follows an adjective of colour, or  
 any other expressing the shape or size of the object

which it implies ; but the adjective must be put in the same number and gender as the substantive which is understood in English : ex.

<i>Quel habit achèterez-vous ?</i>	What coat shall you buy ?
<i>un bleu ou un vert ?</i>	a blue one or a green one ?
<i>J'ai trouvé deux nids d'oiseaux ; dans l'un il y avoit des œufs, et des petits dans l'autre,</i>	I have found two birds' nests ; there were eggs in one, and young ones in the other.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

What kind of a hat will you have ? a black  
*espèce, f.* *un noir, adj.*  
 one, or a white one ? a round one, or a  
*blanc, adj.* *rond, adj.*  
 cocked one ? - - - My father has sold  
*retroussé, adj.* *vendu, p.p.*  
 one of his horses ; which is it ? the black one or  
*un* *ce*  
 the grey one ? - - Were there many flowers in  
*gris, adj.* *Y avoit-il*  
 his garden ? Yes, (there were) very fine ones,  
*il y en avoit très, adv. beau, adj.*  
 which my father had sent him from Hol-  
*envoyé, p.p.*  
 land. - - (Here are) several pair of shoes, which  
*Voici, adv.* *soulier, m.*  
 will you have ? the red ones, or the white  
*rouge, adj.*  
 ones ? I prefer the black ones.  
*préfère, v.*

*Tout—que.* *Tout*, preceding a noun immediately followed by *que*, is indeclinable in the masculine and declinable in the feminine, before nouns beginning with a consonant, and must be repeated before every noun in the sentence : ex.

<i>Tout savant qu'il est, il se trompe quelquefois,</i>	<i>As learned as he is, he sometimes mistakes.</i>
---	--

*Toute savante qu'elle est, For all she is learned, she  
elle se trompe quelquefois, sometimes mistakes.*

*Observe well the above construction.*

EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

For all my sister is ugly she gets friends  
laid,adj. se fait,v.  
every-where. - - - As amiable as she is, she  
par-tout,adv. aimable,adj.  
does not please me at all. - - - For all they are  
ne plait,v. du tout,adv.  
rich, they give<sup>2</sup> 'nothing<sup>3</sup> to the poor. - - -  
donnent,v. pauvre,adj.pl.  
Your mother, although, (or for all) she is young, appears  
paraît,v.  
old. - - - As generous as he is, he has not given  
âgé,adj. a,v. donné,p.p.  
me one farthing. - - His aunt, for all she is angry  
liard,m. tante,f. fâché,adj.  
with him, will forgive him his faults, as great  
contre,p. pardonnera,v. lui faute,f.  
as they are. - - - As young, amiable, handsome,  
beau,adj.  
and rich, as my friend's sisters are, they were  
étoient,v.  
(not yet married the last time I saw  
encore,adv. marié,p.p. fois,f. vis,v.  
them.

N. B. This will be seen again among the conjunctions.

To the above pronouns may be added the three following expressions, which are generally used in an indefinite or indeterminate manner :

*Je ne sais qui,* I know not who, whom.  
*Je ne sais quoi,* I know not what.  
*Je ne sais quel, quelle, &c.* I know not which or what.

*Je ne sais qui* is only said of persons, and signifies a person we do not know. *Je ne sais quoi* is only said of

things, and signifies an object which cannot precisely be named or defined : *Je ne sais quel* is placed before substantives, both of persons and things ; lastly, we sometimes put *un* before *Je ne sais qui*, and indifferently, *un* or *le* before *Je ne sais quoi* : ex.

*Je ne sais qui me parle,*      *I know not who speaks to me.*

*Il parle de je ne sais quoi,*      *He speaks of I know not what.*

*Je vis je ne sais quel homme,*      *I saw I know not what man.*

*Il parle d'un je ne sais qui,*      *He speaks of I know not whom.*

*J'ai lu une comédie intitulée, le je ne sais quoi,*      *I have read a play which has for its title, I know not what.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

When I paid      a visit to my friend, I addressed  
*rendis, v.*      *m'adressai, v.*  
 myself to I know not whom. - - He (keeps company  
*fréquente, v.*  
 with) I know not whom, and that displeases her. - -  
*déplait, v. lui.*

Whilst she (was speaking) to him, she was  
*Pendant que, c.*      *parloit, v.*      *'fut*

accosted by I know not whom. - - There is  
*abordé, p. p.*      *par, p.*      *Il y a, v.*

I know not what mean in that behaviour. - - -  
*de bas, adj.*      *conduite, f.*

He complains of I know not what. - - - When I  
*se plaint, v.*

went in, I saw I know not what man, what wo-  
*entraî, v.*

man, what pictures, what figures. - - She speaks  
*portrait, m.*      *figure, f.*

to I know not whom. - - - There is in that I  
*là-dedans, adv.*

know not what that pleases me.  
*plait, v.*

I speak French. - - You speak English. - -  
*parle,v.* *parlez,v.*  
We do not understand what they say to us. - -  
*comprendons,v.* *disent,v.*  
She speaks to you, and robs you (at the same)  
*parle,v.* *vole,v.* *en même*  
time. - - We have not seen them. - - Your  
*temps,m.* *avons,v.* *vus,p.p.*  
mother came to see me yesterday, and I  
*vint,v.* *voir,v.* *hier,adv.*  
(will go to) see her to-morrow. - - Is there any body  
*irai,v.* *demain,adv.* *Est-il,*  
that esteems her more than I do? - - Attention,  
*estime,v.*  
cares, credit, money, I have put<sup>s</sup> (every<sup>t</sup> thing)  
*soin,* *\*mis,p.p.* *tout*  
in use. - - They are happy, but we are  
*en,p.* *usage.* *heureux,adj.*  
not so. - - Every body thinks I am the mother of  
*\* croit,v.*  
that child; I assure you I am not. - - - Ladies,  
*\* Mmes,*  
are you the companions of Miss le Noir? Yes,  
*êtes,v.* *compagne,f.*  
we are. - - - My uncle gave me a sword and  
*\* a donné,p.p.*  
I owe my life to it. - - - Whatever (may be)  
*dois la soient,v.*  
your troubles, you (ought to) write to me more  
*peine,f.* *devriez,v.* *écrire,v.*  
frequently. - - I will lend you the book which she  
*souvent,adv.* *prêterai,v.*  
has sent me. - - Believe me, he is very  
*envoyé,p.p.* *Croyez,v.*  
ill. - - - I shall be very glad to go  
*malade,adj.* *serai,v.* *aise,adj.* *de aller,v.*

there with you ; for I have something to tell  
*avec, p. car, c. à dire, v.*  
 him. - - I love your sister, and I owe her re-  
*aime, v. res-*  
 spect. - - Give me my hat and cloak. - - -  
*pect, m. chapeau, m. mantelet, m.*  
 I have dined with your father and mother. - -  
*diné, p. p.*  
 They<sup>1</sup> often<sup>4</sup> procure<sup>3</sup> me<sup>2</sup> that plea-  
*souvent, adv. procurent, v.*  
 sure. - - If it be not an indiscretion on my part,  
*ce est, v. f. de part, f.*  
 pray tell me what passed between you  
*de grâce, dites s'est passé, p. p. entre, p.*  
 and them. - - They have sent you good apples :  
*- pomme, f.*  
 Yes, there were some good ones and some bad  
*Il y avoit, v. mauvais, adj.*  
 ones. - - Write to me, do not write to her. - - -  
*Ecrivez, v.*  
 Carry some to your sister. - - I will do whatever  
*Portez, v. ferai, v.*  
 you please. - - - The Thames is a very fine  
*voudrez, v. Tamise, f. beau, adj.*  
 river ; it divides London into two parts. - - -  
*rivière, f. divise, v. en, p. partie.*  
 London is the capital of England, as Paris is that  
*capitale, f.*  
 of France ; it is a fine city, but some of its streets  
*\* rue, f.*  
 are very inconvenient and narrow. - - - Brest  
*incommode, adj. étroit, adj.*  
 is a fine sea - port,† in France, but its entrance  
*mer, port, m. \* entrée, f.*  
 is difficult and dangerous. - - Brother, these  
*difficile, adj.*  
 books are mine, and not yours. - - - Your  
*non pas, adv.*  
 exercise is better than mine, but it is not so  
*thème, m.*

\* See page 102.

† See the rule page 44.

well written as your sister's. - - Do you think of  
*écrit, p.p.* *pensez, v. à*  
 me? Yes, I do.\* - - You do not know what vexes  
*pense, v.* *fâche, v.*  
 me. - - I will not accept of any of the  
*veux, v.* *accepter, v.*  
 terms which they offer me. - - Whom ought  
*condition, f.* *offrent, v.* *devons, v.*  
 we to worship? \*God, who is the father of  
*adorer, v.* *Dieu,*  
 them that love him, and the protector of those  
*aiment, v.*  
 that fear him. - - Of all those who contend  
*craignent, v.* *disputent, v.*  
 against religion, some do it because it per-  
*contre, p.* *f. les uns font, v.* *parceque, c.* *em-*  
 plexes them; others, because they wish to  
*barrasse, v.* *les autres* *veulent, v.*  
 have the glory of perplexing its defenders. - -  
*embarrasser, v.* *défenseur, m.*  
 Those trees are well exposed to the sun,  
*arbre, m.* *exposé, p.p.* *soleil, m.*  
 nevertheless their fruits are not good. - - I believe  
*cependant, adv.* *crois, v.*  
 your uncle is arrived. - - His ability is not so  
*oncle, m.* *arrivé, p.p.* *habileté, f.*  
 great as yours. - - Two rivals are generally  
*grand, adj.* *rival, m.*  
 enemies of one another. - - Sister, who gave you  
*a donné, p.p.*  
 that letter? Our uncle's servant. - - - What does  
*lettre, f.* *domestique, m.*  
 he write to you? That his library is at our  
*écrit, v.* *bibliothèque, f.* *à*  
 service; and I assure you that he has a very good  
*très, adv.*  
 one. - - His letters please me so much, that I  
 † wish to increase their number. Both my  
*veux, v.* *augmenter, v.*

\* Look at page 94.

† See the ex: p. 93.

father and aunt are now at Rome; the former

writes once *à présent* a week, the latter writes

*écrit, v.* *une fois, f.*

to me twice a year. - - - He that wants

*deux fois* virtue, wants (all things). - - - That lady *manque de, v.* pleases

you, for *tout.* you<sup>1</sup> are<sup>3</sup> always<sup>4</sup> speaking<sup>3</sup> of her<sup>2</sup>. - - - *dame, f.* *plaît, v.*

The beauty of the mind creates admira- *car, c.* *parlez, v.*

tion; that of the soul gains esteem, and that *beauté, f.* *esprit, m.* *donne, v.*

of the body love. - - - Most friends are more *âme, f.* *donne, v.* *estime, f.*

attached to our fortune, 'than' 'they are *corps, m.* *amour, m.*

*attaché, p.p.* to our person. - - - Whoever is without virtue, *que ne, c.*

seldom<sup>2</sup> values<sup>1</sup> men; and whoever is *sans, p.*

*rarement, adv.* *estime, v.* too good, values them (too much). - - - It

*trop, adv.* *trop, adv.* is she who told me that this house is not *Ce*

yours. - - You believe that Mrs. D. is in your interests, *a dit, p.p.* *maison, f.*

\* *croyez, v.* and I believe nothing of it. - - - Ambition *intérêt, m.*

*crois, v.* *ne rien, adv.* (tramples upon) wisdom, honour, probity, and on

*foule aux pieds* their ruins, it lays the foundation of its great- *sur, p.*

*ruine, f.* *élève, v.* *fondement, m.* *gran-*

ness. - - Whatever her intention (may be,) I<sup>1</sup> do *deur, f.* *soit, v.*

'not<sup>6</sup> love<sup>5</sup> her<sup>3</sup> the less<sup>7</sup> for it<sup>4</sup>. - - I assure you that *aime, v.* *in*

I have answered both her letter and her brother's. - - - Nobody in the world has complained of your con-

*s'est, v.* *plaint, p.p.*



duct. - - When you read the history of the Roman  
*Quand, c. lirez, v. histoire, f. Romain, adj.*  
emperors, you will find one (of them) whose name  
*empereur, m. trouverez, v.*  
was Nero. - - - The study of geography is absolute-  
*Néron. géographie, f. absolu-*  
ly necessary to him who has a taste for his-  
*ment, adv. du goût, m.*  
tory. - - He that sold us this clock did not  
*a vendu, p.p. pendule, f. a, v.*  
cheat us. - - What do you think of it? - - -  
*trompés, p.p. pensez, v.*  
Whoever cheats me shall repent (of it). - - -  
*trompe, v. se repentira, v. en*  
Every body thinks\* we shall have peace. - - When I  
*croit, v. aurons, v. paix, f.*  
went in, the members of the assembly were  
*entraî, v. étoient, v.*  
seated every one in his place. - - - I, who did not  
*assis, p.p. à*  
know that they were reconciled, was much  
*surpris, v. que, c. réconciliés, p.p. fus, v. fort, adv.*  
surprised to see them together. - - - England owes  
*étonné de voir, v. ensemble, adv. doit, v.*  
her riches to her naval strength and the encourage-  
*forces, f. pl.*  
ment she gives to her commerce. - - We speak  
*donne, v. parlons, v.*  
of what has happened to him. - - Well! if he  
*est, v. arrivé, p.p. Eh bien, int.*  
spend other people's money, he does not spend  
*dépense, v.*  
yours. - - This illness is much hid; nevertheless  
*maladie, f. fort cachée, p.p. cependant, adv.*  
I know its origin and effects. - - - She who  
*connois, v. †*  
(was speaking) to you is not yet mar-  
*parloit, v. encore, adv.*  
ried. - - Her father, mother, brothers, sisters, uncles,  
*oncle, m.*

\* See the note at the bottom of page 104.

† See p. 102.

and aunts, in short, all her relations, are dead,  
*lante, f. enfin, c. parent, m.*

and have left her a considerable fortune. - - -  
*ont, v. laissé, p. p.*

Those gentlemen have fine horses, but mine are  
*messieurs cheval, m.*

finer than theirs. - - Do you know any of  
*connoissez, v.*

those ladies? Yes, I know some of them. - - -  
*connois, v.*

For all they are young and handsome, they have (a  
*ont, v.*

great deal) of modesty and virtue. - - - That German  
*Allemand*

nobleman is both poor and proud. - - - Desire  
*gentilhomme orgueilleux, adj. Priez, v.*

him to bring them here. - - Is that the gown  
*de amener, v. Est-ce robe, f.*

for which you gave five guineas? - - If I  
*pour, p. avez donné, p. p.*

had been in your place, I (would have)  
*eusse, v. été, p. p. à aurois, v.*

preferred the white one to the black one. - - -  
*préféré, p. p.*

How many books are there in that library? There  
*y a-t-il bibliothèque, f.*

are three thousand seven hundred and twenty-seven  
 in the library, fifty-two upon the table, and nineteen

in my room. - - Whose house is this? It belongs  
*appartient, v.*

to I know not whom. - - There is I know not what  
*Il y a, v.*

in the colour, which pleases much. - - To what  
*dans, p. plait, v.*

(does he apply himself)? - - This apple, and that he  
*s'applique-t-il, v.*

gave you, are very good. - - Give me either  
*donna, v. Donnez, v.*

of them. - - I will send you some thither. - - -  
*enverrai, v.*

\* See the rule page 112.

I cannot sell it to you for so<sup>2</sup> small<sup>3</sup> a<sup>4</sup>  
*ne peux pas, v. vendre, v. pour, p.*  
 sum.<sup>4</sup> - - I prefer the beauty of the mind to that  
*somme, f. préfère, v.*  
 of the body. - - Some like music and some dancing.  
*Les uns aiment, v. danse, f.*  
 - - She says she hates that man; many think she  
*dit, v. hait, v. croient*  
 loves him. - - He whom nobody pleases, is more  
*aime, v. à plait, v.*  
 unhappy than he who pleases nobody. - - I  
*malheureux, adj. à*  
 was near your sister when that happened  
*étois, v. auprès de, p. quand, c. arriva, v.*  
 to her. - - Both his father and mother died  
*moururent, v.*  
 on the same day. - - - - - As covetous as he is, he  
*avare, adj.*  
 gave me a guinea. - - - There are many people  
*a donné, p. p. Il y a*  
 whom we esteem, because we do not know them. - -  
*parceque, c. connoissons*  
 Whatever has happened to you, I am very sorry  
*soit, v. arrivé, p. p. fâché, adj.*  
 for it. - - He would do it in spite of any  
*voulut, v. faire, v. en, p. dépit, m.*  
 body whatever. - - Learning is, preferable to riches  
*Science, f.*  
 and virtue to both. - - - Some philosophers have  
*philosophe, m. ont, v.*  
 thought that the fixed stars were so many  
*cru, p. p. fixe, adj. étoile, f. étoient, v. autant*  
 suns. - - See with what care, attention, and per-  
*Voyez, v.*  
 severance, every animal (rears up) its (young ones.)  
*élève, v. petit, adj.*  
 - - (Here are) two grammars, which do you pre-  
*Voici, adv.*  
 fer? I prefer this to that. - - - Both are very  
 good. - - - He believes nothing of what you  
*croit, v. ne rien, adv.*

told him. - - - You blame him who does  
*avez dit*,p.p. *blâmez*,v.  
 not deserve it. - - - Friend, to whom did you  
*mérite*,v. *avez*,v.  
 speak ? I spoke to nobody ; for I saw  
*parlé*,p.p. *ai parlé*,v. *car*,c. *ai vu*,p.p.  
 neither of them. - - Each country has its peculiar  
*particulier*,adj.  
 customs ; in France, they\* eat with the fork, in England,  
*coutume*,f. *on*,pro.  
 we eat with the knife ; in France, they eat the meat  
*on*,pro.  
 well done ; in England, we eat it half raw.  
*cuite*,p.p. *à moitié crue*,adj.

## SECT. IV.

### OF VERBS AND THEIR DIFFERENT SORTS.

Verbs are usually divided into seven sorts, viz.

- |                                     |             |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>Les verbes auxiliaires</i> ,  | auxiliary.  |
| 2. <i>Les verbes actifs</i> ,       | active.     |
| 3. <i>Les verbes passifs</i> ,      | passive.    |
| 4. <i>Les verbes neutres</i> ,      | neuter.     |
| 5. <i>Les verbes réfléchis</i> ,    | reflective. |
| 6. <i>Les verbes personnels</i> ,   | personal.   |
| 7. <i>Les verbes impersonnels</i> , | impersonal. |

Some of them are *regular*, that is to say, they follow the general rule of the conjugation to which they belong ; others do not, and are called *irregular*.

The *auxiliary verbs* are, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be. These two auxiliaries are used to conjugate all the compound tenses of the other verbs.

The *active verbs*.—In this class, the action is transitive, that is, it passes from the subject to the object : ex.

*Le maître punit les écoliers* The master *punishes the*  
 *paresseux,* *lazy scholars.*

The active verb sometimes governs two cases : one

\* See page 84.

to which the action directly refers, or which is the direct object of the action, and is therefore called the *direct* or *absolute case*; the other, to which the action refers but indirectly, and it is called the *indirect* or *relative case*: ex.

*Votre sœur a écrit une* Your sister wrote a long  
*longue lettre à mon frère,* letter to my brother.

*A long letter* is the direct or absolute case, and *to my brother*, the indirect or relative case, of the verb *wrote*. The direct case can be no other but the *accusative* of a noun or pronoun, but the indirect is either the *genitive*, *dative*, or *ablative*.

In the *passive verbs*, the action is received or suffered by the subject: ex.

*Les écoliers paresseux* Lazy scholars shall be  
*seront punis,* punished.

In the *neuter verbs*, the action is intransitive, that is, it remains in the agent: ex.

<i>Je dors,</i>	I sleep.		<i>Vous voyagez,</i>	You travel.
<i>Nous étudions,</i>	We study.		<i>Elle soupire,</i>	She sighs.

In the *reflected verbs*, the action returns upon the agent that produces it: ex.

<i>Il se repent,</i>	He repents himself.
<i>Elle se loue,</i>	She praises herself.

These verbs have always *se* before their infinitive, and are conjugated with a double pronoun.

The *personal verbs* are those which are conjugated with three persons, in the singular and plural, throughout all their tenses.

The *impersonal verbs* have only the third person of the singular number.

*N. B.* There is a kind of verbs which may be distinguished by the name of *reduplicative*, always expressing a repetition of the action: ex.

<i>Recommencer,</i>	To begin again.
<i>Refaire,</i>	To do again, &c.

In these verbs, the English word *again* is to be

rendered in French by the syllable *re* prefixed to the radix of the verb, and not by *encore*.

All the above verbs may be *simple* or *compound*.

A verb is *simple* which cannot be divided without losing its meaning : as,

<i>Appeler,</i>	To call;	<i>Voir,</i>	To see;
<i>Bâtir,</i>	To build;	<i>Prendre,</i>	To take;
<i>Mentir,</i>	To lie;	<i>Vivre,</i>	To live;

which would mean nothing, if they were divided.

A verb is *compound* when it is preceded by one or more syllables : as,

<i>Rappeler,</i>	To recall.	<i>Prévoir,</i>	To foresee.
<i>Rebâtir,</i>	To rebuild.	<i>Entreprendre,</i>	To undertake.
<i>Démentir,</i>	To belie.	<i>Survivre,</i>	To outlive, &c.

These last verbs are generally formed by prefixing to them *part* or *the whole* of a preposition.

## CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

To conjugate verbs is to give them different inflections or terminations, according to their *moods, tenses, persons and numbers*.

### MOODS.

*Mood* or *mode*, in the sense it is taken here, is a grammatical term, which means the *manner* of affirming, or denoting, in the verbs, by different inflections.

There are, in the French language, four moods, absolutely distinct from each other, by the several inflections, or by some other difference. They are :

<i>L'infinitif,</i>	The infinitive.
<i>L'indicatif,</i>	The indicative.
<i>L'impératif,</i>	The imperative.
<i>Le subjonctif, ou conjonctif,</i>	The subjunctive, or con- junctive.

### Of the INFINITIVE MOOD.

This mood is so called, because it only expresses the action or signification of the verb in an *indefinite* and *indeterminate* manner, that is, without affirmation,

and without any relation as to time, number, or person :  
ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chanter,</i>	To sing.
<i>Danser,</i>	To dance.

### Of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

This mood, is thus called, because it not only indicates the affirmation in the different tenses of the verbs, but likewise the time, number, and person ; without being preceded or governed by either a conjunction or verb :

<i>J'écris une lettre,</i>	I write a letter.
<i>Il chante une chanson,</i>	He sings a song.

*Ecris* and *chante* are two verbs in the indicative mood, because they do not require to be preceded by a conjunction\* or another verb to make a complete sense. The definition of this mood will be better understood, by comparing the little that has been said with what is going to be said with respect to the subjunctive mood.

### Of the IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The name which has been given to this mood, is derived from a Latin word which signifies to *command* ; and the imperative is in fact but a manner of denoting in the verbs the action of *commanding, entreating, praying, exhorting*, and sometimes *forbidding* : ex.

<i>Ne méprisez pas les avis</i>	Do not despise the advice
<i>que je vous donne,</i>	which I give you.

It is easy to perceive that this manner of speaking is but an exhortation, as if I had said,

<i>Je vous exhorte, je vous prie,</i>	I exhort, I entreat you, not
<i>de ne pas mépriser mes avis,</i>	to despise my advice.

- This mood has no first person in the singular, because

\* Among the conjunctions, some govern the indicative, others the subjunctive : this will be explained hereafter.

it is impossible for a man to command himself; and if it have the first person plural, it is because we speak as much to others as to ourselves; as when we say,

*Evitons tout ce qui pourroit*    *Let us avoid every thing*  
*offenser les autres,*                      that might offend others.

The second person *singular* and the first and second *plural* admit of no pronouns before them; as to the third, in both numbers, it is always preceded by the pronoun *il* or *elle*, &c. and the conjunction *que*.

### *Of the SUBJUNCTIVE, or CONJUNCTIVE.*

The name of subjunctive, or conjunctive, sufficiently conveys what its use is in a sentence. It may be defined thus; a manner of expressing the different tenses of the verbs without any affirmation. In fact, the subjunctive never affirms; it is always preceded by, or subject to some conjunction; and if it should be met with in a sentence containing an affirmation, that affirmation can only be expressed by the verb that precedes the subjunctive, which is used only to modify that affirmation. In the subsequent sentence,

*Je travaille afin que vous*    *I work that you may rest*  
*vous reposiez,*                      *yourself.*

the affirmation is only expressed by *je travaille*, I work, and what follows only expresses the end which I propose by working, viz. to procure you some rest. Again,

*Je désire que vous fassiez*    *I wish that you may do*  
*votre devoir,*                      *your duty;*

I affirm that I wish; but it is clear there is no affirmation in these words, *that you may do your duty*, since I do not say that you do, that you have done, that you will do your duty; but only that I wish you may do it. My wish is not doubtful; but it is very doubtful whether you will or may do your duty.



## TENSES.

There are, strictly speaking, but three natural and proper *tenses* in the verbs : viz.

<i>Le passé,</i>	The past.
<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.

In the French language, the tenses are divided in the following manner, viz. *five* in the infinitive mood; *three* of them are *simple*, the *two* others *compound*.

In the *simple* tenses, the verb is expressed in one word : ex.

<i>Parler,</i>	To speak.
<i>Chantant,</i>	Singing.
<i>Dansé,</i>	Danced.

The compound tenses are conjugated with some one of the auxiliary verbs, *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, joined to a participle passive : ex.

<i>Avoir parlé,</i>	To have spoken.
<i>Ayant chanté,</i>	Having sung.
<i>Etre aimé,</i>	To be loved.
<i>Etant aimé,</i>	Being loved.

## SIMPLE TENSES.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le participe actif,</i>	The participle active.
<i>Le participe passif,</i>	The participle passive.

## COMPOUND.

<i>Le préterit,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le participe passé ou composé,</i>	The participle past or compound.

There are ten tenses in the *indicative* mood, viz. *five* *simple* and *five* *compound* : they are,

## SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le préterit,</i>	The preterite.

<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.
<i>Le conditionnel,</i>	The conditional.

## COMPOUND OF

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>L'imparfait,</i>	The imperfect.
<i>Le prétérít,</i>	The preterite.
<i>Le futur,</i>	The future.
<i>Le conditionnel,</i>	The conditional.

*N. B.* The imperative admits of no tense but the present.

The subjunctive mood has four tenses; *two simple* and *two compound*.

## SIMPLE.

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le prétérít,</i>	The preterite.

## COMPOUND OF

<i>Le présent,</i>	The present.
<i>Le prétérít,</i>	The preterite.

Before we proceed any further on the conjugations, it has been thought proper to explain the different uses of the above tenses, as one of the most important articles in a language, the precision of which partly depends on the difference which custom sets between one tense and another with regard to the sense of the sentence. We shall endeavour to be short and concise, and say nothing but what is useful, in hopes that the following explanation will be sufficient to remove a difficulty which constantly puzzles the learner.

## TENSES of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

## SIMPLE.

## PRESENT.

This tense is used when the state, action, or im-

pression, mentioned by the verb, is *existing, doing, or happening*, at the very time we are speaking: ex.

<i>Je me porte bien,</i>	<i>I am well.</i>
<i>Votre sœur est malade,</i>	<i>Your sister is ill.</i>
<i>Nous nous promenons,</i>	<i>We are walking.</i>
<i>Vous écrivez,</i>	<i>You are writing.</i>
<i>Ils jouent,</i>	<i>They are playing, &amp;c.</i>

The present is also used,

1. When speaking of actions or things which we *habitually do, are accustomed to do, or can do*: ex.

<i>Nous dinons toujours à deux heures,</i>	<i>We always dine at two o'clock.</i>
<i>Elle étudie l'histoire,</i>	<i>She studies history.</i>
<i>Vous parlez François,</i>	<i>You speak French.</i>
<i>Lit-il l'Anglois ?</i>	<i>Does he read English ?</i>

2. When speaking of actions which are to be done in a very short time, we generally use this tense instead of the future: ex.

<i>Je pars ce soir pour la campagne,</i>	<i>I set out this evening for the country.</i>
<i>Que faites-vous demain ?</i>	<i>What do you do to-morrow ?</i>
Instead of	
<i>Je partirai ce soir pour la campagne,</i>	<i>I shall set out this evening for the country.</i>
<i>Que ferez-vous demain ?</i>	<i>What will you do to-morrow ?</i>

3. This tense is also constantly used in French instead of the preterite and compound of the *preterite*, especially in *orations* or *set discourses*, and in *poetry*, in order to represent a past action or event as present to the mind of the hearers or readers.

#### IMPERFECT.

This tense has two uses; in the first, which probably is the origin of its name, it expresses an action *present or doing* at the time of an action *that is past*: as when I say,

*Mon frère apprenoit sa leçon quand vous arrivâtes,*      *My brother was learning his lesson when you arrived.*

In the above sentence, the act of learning, though past with respect to my narration, was present at the moment your arrival took place; therefore this tense is but imperfectly preterite and imperfectly present.

In the second, the imperfect is employed every time we speak of *actions of habit*, or *actions reiterated* at a time which is not defined: ex.

*Quand j'étois à Londres, j'allois souvent voir mes amis,*      *When I was in London, I often went to see my friends;*

that is, I often used to go, or I frequently went, &c.

The imperfect is likewise used when we speak of the *character*, or some *inherent* and *distinctive quality*, of persons or things no longer existing; and after the English conjunction *if*, though the verb be preceded by *should*, *could*, *would*: ex.

*Philippe, père d'Alexandre le Grand, étoit le plus fin politique de son temps,*      *Philip, the father of Alexander the Great, was the deepest politician of his time.*

*César avoit je ne sais quoi de grand dans la physiologie,*      *Cæsar had I know not what of great in his physiognomy.*

*Carthage faisoit\* un prodigieux commerce par le moyen de ses vaisseaux, qui alloient jusqu'aux Indes,*      *Carthage carried on a prodigious trade by the means of her ships, which went as far as the Indies.*

*Palmire et Persépolis étoient de grandes et belles villes, S'il venoit, je le paierois,*      *Palmyra and Peræpolis were large and fine cities. If he would come, or came, I would pay him.*

\* See Faïse, page 290.

**George II.** étoit d'une taille plutôt petite que moyenne; il avoit les yeux très-saillans, le nez grand, et une belle complexion; il étoit doux, modéré et humain; sobre et régulier dans sa manière de vivre: il se plaisoit dans la pompe et dans l'appareil militaire, et étoit naturellement brave; il aimoit la guerre comme soldat, l'étudioit comme une science, et avoit, sur ce sujet, une correspondance établie avec quelques-uns des plus grands généraux que l'Allemagne ait produits.

**George II. was,** in his person, rather lower than the middle size; he had remarkable prominent eyes, a high nose, and a fair complexion; he was mild, moderate and humane; in his way of living, sober and regular: he delighted in military pomp and parade, and was naturally brave: he loved war as a soldier, studied it as a science, and had, on this account, a settled correspondence with some of the greatest generals that Germany has produced.

From the above instances it might confidently be believed, that every difficulty attending the use of this tense will be entirely removed; I shall however add, as a farther illustration, that whenever the verb, which in English is in the preterite, can be rendered by the past tense of the verb *to be*, and that preterite changed into the participle active, or when that preterite can be turned into the verb in the infinitive mood preceded by *I, thou, he, &c. used to*, that past tense must be made in French by the imperfect: ex.

*Je lisois,* I used to read; or I was reading.

#### PRETERITE.

This tense is so called because it always expresses an action done at a time *determined* or *specified* by an adverb, or some circumstance in the speech, and so entirely elapsed, that nothing more remains of the time when that action was doing: ex.

*Je fus malade hier pendant deux heures,* I was ill yesterday for two hours.

<i>La dernière fois que nous al-</i>	<i>The last time we went to</i>
<i>lâmes le voir, nous eûmes</i>	<i>see him, we had a kind</i>
<i>un accueil favorable,</i>	<i>reception.</i>
<i>Vous écrivîtes à votre frère</i>	<i>You wrote to your bro-</i>
<i>il y a huit jours,</i>	<i>ther eight days ago.</i>
<i>Ils essayèrent de grandes</i>	<i>They underwent great</i>
<i>pertes l'année passée,</i>	<i>losses last year.</i>

## FUTURE.

This tense simply expresses that an action will be done at a time that is not yet come: ex.

<i>Je vous verrai demain à</i>	<i>I shall see you to-morrow in</i>
<i>Londres,</i>	<i>London.</i>
<i>Mon frère vous écrira la</i>	<i>My brother will write to</i>
<i>semaine prochaine,</i>	<i>you next week.</i>

In French, as well as in English, we sometimes express an action that is to be done instantly, by the verb *aller*, or *s'en aller*, to go, immediately followed by an infinitive: ex.

<i>Je vais, or je m'en vais</i>	<i>I am going to write to my</i>
<i>écrire à ma tante,</i>	<i>aunt.</i>
<i>Je vais or je m'en vais</i>	<i>I am going to set out.</i>
<i>partir,</i>	

Which signify,

<i>Je lui écrirai tout présen-</i>	<i>I will write to her immedi-</i>
<i>tement,</i>	<i>ately.</i>
<i>Je partirai dans l'instant,</i>	<i>I will set out instantly.</i>

To express an uncertainty in a future tense, that is, to express that it is not decided that such a thing will be done, we make use of the verb *devoir* immediately followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, and that is the only instance wherein *devoir* does not imply obligation, necessity, &c.: ex.

<i>Le roi doit partir pour</i>	<i>The king is to set out for</i>
<i>Cheltenham vers le mi-</i>	<i>Cheltenham about the</i>
<i>lieu du mois de Juillet,</i>	<i>middle of July, and is</i>
<i>et ne doit revenir qu'à</i>	<i>not to return till the lat-</i>
<i>la fin du mois d'Août,</i>	<i>ter end of August.</i>

That is,

*On suppose que le roi partira, &c. et qu'il ne reviendra qu'à, &c.*

It is supposed that the king will set out, &c. and will not return till, &c.

### CONDITIONAL.

The name of this tense is a true definition of it: in fact, it is always used to express some *condition* or *supposition*, and has always a reference to the *present*, because, by supposing the condition effected, the action, mentioned by the conditional, becomes present: ex.

*Je lirois, si j'avois des livres,* I should read, if I had books.

*Vous auriez la fièvre, si vous mangiez de ce fruit,* You would have a fever if you ate of that fruit.

*Je serois mortifié, s'il perdoit son procès,* I should be mortified, if he should lose his law-suit.

It is sometimes used, instead of the future, after the conjunction *que*: ex.

*Il a promis qu'il viendrait,* He has promised to come, or that he would come.

This tense is often called the *uncertain tense*, because it expresses an action made uncertain by the conditional that follows it; and some grammarians place it among the tenses of the subjunctive mood, though it is very certain that it never is governed by any of the conjunctions which require a subjunctive mood after them.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

#### COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

The compound of the present is employed in two different manners,

1. It expresses an action past in an indeterminate

time but not very far distant from the time we speak : thus we must say,

<i>J'ai vu mademoiselle votre</i>	<i>I have seen your sister, and</i>
<i>sœur et lui ai parlé,</i>	<i>spoken to her.</i>
<i>Le roi de Prusse a conquis</i>	<i>The king of Prussia has</i>
<i>la Silésie,</i>	<i>conquered Silesia.</i>
<i>Cela s'est passé avanta-</i>	<i>That has passed advanta-</i>
<i>geusement pour votre</i>	<i>geously for your cousin.</i>
<i>cousin,</i>	

In the above sentence, the action is certainly past, but the time when it passed is neither determined nor specified.

2. It expresses a time definite and determinate, but of which there yet remains some part to elapse : ex.

<i>Les fruits ont très-bien</i>	<i>Fruits have very well suc-</i>
<i>réussi cette année,</i>	<i>ceeded this year.</i>
<i>Nous n'avons pas eu beau-</i>	<i>We have not had much</i>
<i>coup de neige cet hiver,</i>	<i>snow this winter.</i>
<i>Il a plu toute cette semaine,</i>	<i>It has rained all this week,</i>
<i>tout ce mois,</i>	<i>all this month.</i>
<i>Nous avons vu d'étranges</i>	<i>We have seen strange</i>
<i>choses dans ce siècle,</i>	<i>things in this century.</i>

In the above sentences, *this year, this week, this winter, &c.* are times which still last, and are not yet elapsed.

To express an action recently past, we sometimes make use of the verb *venir* immediately followed by *de*, and the verb in the infinitive mood : ex.

<i>Je viens de le voir passer,</i>	<i>I have just seen him go by.</i>
<i>Le roi vient d'arriver,</i>	<i>The king is but just arrived.</i>
<i>Elle vient d'expirer,</i>	<i>She is but just dead.</i>

The same tense may be expressed by the verb *faire*, preceded by the negation *ne* and followed by the conjunction *que*, with an infinitive preceded by *de* : ex.

<i>Il ne fait que d'arriver,</i>	<i>He is but just arrived.</i>
<i>Je ne fais que de sortir,</i>	<i>I have but just gone out.</i>



**N. B.** This particle *de* is here indispensable, because, without it, the expression would have quite another sense, and would express a continuation or a frequent reiteration in the action : ex.

*Vous ne faites que sortir,* You do nothing but go out.  
*Elle ne fait que jouer et danser,* She does nothing but play and dance.

#### COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.

This tense expresses an action past before another which is past also; but with this difference, that the action expressed by this tense is the principal object of the person who speaks, and the following sentence is subordinate to that expressed by the compound of the imperfect. So that, though the time of that subordinate sentence be defined, that of the principal sentence is not the less indeterminate, because the former has no influence on the latter. As when we say,

*Nous avions dîné lorsqu'il arriva,* We had dined when he arrived,

our principal object is to express the action of dining as past, without determining at what time, but only before an action which is past also, without, however, the latter being a consequence of the former; for, we do not mean to say, that he stayed, or waited, till we had dined, to arrive.

#### COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

This tense also expresses an action past or done before another which is likewise past; and it is determined by the following sentence, which is the principal object of the attention. Thus when we say,

*Quand ils eurent achevé de jouer, ils se mirent à chanter,* When they had done playing they began singing.

We mean at first to convey that they *began singing*, and that it was not till they *had done playing* : in which case, the action of having done playing is subordinate to this, *they began singing*, and consequently the latter determines the time of the other.

The following observation is very plain, and will in some manner fix the use of the above tense, viz. that it is hardly ever used except after the conjunctions

<i>Aussitôt que,</i>	} As soon as ;	<i>Après que,</i>	After ;
<i>D'abord que,</i>		<i>Lorsque,</i>	} When ;
<i>Dès que,</i>		<i>Quand,</i>	

which *never* precede a compound of the imperfect, unless the verb express a *custom* or *habit*.

Lastly, we must use the compound of the preterite when the adverb *bientôt* soon, precedes or follows the verb *was* or *had*, to express an action or thing as done and accomplished : ex.

<i>L'affaire fut bientôt faite,</i>	The business <i>was soon</i> over.
<i>J'eus bientôt fini de manger,</i>	<i>I had soon</i> done eating.

#### COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE.

The name of this tense seems at first to convey a contradiction : what is meant by it is, not that an action can be future and past at the same time, but only that the action, which is to come, will be past when another action, shall happen, or even before it happens : ex.

<i>Je serai parti quand vous reviendrez,</i>	<i>I shall be gone</i> when you (shall) come back.
<i>Quand vous aurez fini vos affaires, vous viendrez me trouver,</i>	When you (shall) have done your business, you shall come to find me.

In the first sentence, *I shall be gone* which is a future time with respect to the present we speak

in, will be a past time by the time you *will* or *purpose* to arrive, &c.

### COMPOUND of the CONDITIONAL.

This tense generally supposes a condition, as the conditional present, with this difference, that the condition taking place, the action expressed by the verb in the conditional is accomplished and consequently in a past time: ex.

*Je vous aurois écrit il y a un mois, si j'eusse su votre adresse,* I would have written to you a month ago, if I had known your direction.

The indicative mood has another tense, formed by the compound of the present of the verb *avoir*, joined to a participle passive, which has not been inserted in the preceding tenses, on account of its being seldom used: ex.

*Quand j'ai eu dîné, je suis parti,* When I (have) had dined, I set out.

But it is more elegant and natural to say,

*Après avoir dîné, je suis parti,* After I had dined, I set out.

### TENSES of the SUBJUNCTIVE or CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The subjunctive or conjunctive has no future distinguished from the *present*, because the present of the subjunctive likewise expresses a future tense: ex.

*Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne,* I do not think he *will* come.

Add the following observations to the latter:

1. When the verb which precedes the conjunction is in the present or future of the indicative, and when we do not mean to express an action passed in the second verb, we must put this last verb in the present of the subjunctive mood: ex.

*Je souhaite que vous réussissiez dans votre entreprise,* I wish you may succeed in your undertaking.  
*J'attendrai qu'il vienne,* I will wait till he come.

2. When the verb which is before the conjunction is in some of the past tenses, or conditional, and we wish not to designate by the second verb a past time more distant than that of the first verb, we must put this second verb in the preterite of the subjunctive :

<i>Alexandre ordonna que tous ses sujets l'adorassent comme un dieu,</i>	Alexander ordered, that all his subjects should worship him like a god.
<i>Je voulois que vous écrivissiez à votre sœur,</i>	I wished you to write to your sister.
<i>Il souhaiteroit que vous prissiez des mesures plus convenables,</i>	He would wish you to take more becoming measures.

3. The compound of the present of the subjunctive mood is used when we speak of an action past and accomplished, with regard to the tense of the verb which precedes the conjunction ; and this tense is generally the present, compound of the present, or future of the indicative : ex.

<i>Je doute qu'aucun philosophe ait jamais bien connu l'union de l'âme avec le corps,</i>	I doubt whether any philosopher have ever well understood the union of the soul with the body.
<i>Il a fallu que j'aie consulté tous les médecins,</i>	I was obliged to consult all the physicians.
<i>Je n'aurai garde d'y aller, que je n'aie reçu quelque assurance d'être bien accueilli,</i>	I shall by no means go thither, till I have received some assurance of being welcome.

4. After the imperfect, preterite, compound of the imperfect, of the indicative, or one of the two conditionals, we use the compound of the preterite of the subjunctive mood ; likewise after the conjunction *if*, when preceding a compound tense : ex.

<i>J'ignorois que vous eussiez embrassé cette profession-là,</i>	I did not know you had embraced that profession.
--	--

<i>Vous n'avez pas cru que je fusse arrivée avant vous,</i>	<i>You did not believe I should have arrived before you.</i>
<i>Nous aurions été fâchés que vous vous fussiez adressé à d'autres qu'à nous,</i>	<i>We should have been sorry if you had applied to any others but us.</i>

## NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

A tense is composed of numbers ; that is, the singular and the plural.

That there are three persons, has already been observed under the personal pronouns ; we have only to remark, that some of these three persons are always joined to the verb as its nominative case, therefore the verb must agree with that nominative in number and person : ex.

<i>Je fais, I do.</i>	<i>Nous faisons, We do.</i>
<i>Tu fais, Thou dost.</i>	<i>Vous faites, You or ye do.</i>
<i>Il fait, He does.</i>	<i>Ils font, They do.</i>

The pronoun *vous*, you, denotes the second person singular and plural, with this difference, that when we speak to a person only, the attribute, or qualifying noun, must be put in the singular : ex.

<i>Vous êtes marié, and not mariés,</i>	<i>You are married.</i>
<i>Vous étiez général de l'armée, and not généraux,</i>	<i>You were general of the army.</i>

But we must say *mariés* and *généraux*, if we speak to many.

When the verb has two or three nouns or pronouns as its nominatives, it must be put in the plural, though all these nominatives be in the singular ; because *two* or *more* nouns in the singular are equivalent to a plural, with regard to verbs as well as to adjectives and participles passive : ex.

<i>Mon frère et ma sœur sont partis,</i>	<i>My brother and sister are gone.</i>
--	--

This has already been mentioned in the adjectives.

If, among these nominatives, one is of the first person and the other of the second, or one is of the second and the other of the third, the verb must agree with the first in preference to the second, and with the second in preference to the third; observing that, in French, the person spoken to, must be named first; and the person speaking is to be mentioned the last: we must therefore say,

<i>C'est vous et moi qui avons</i>	It is you and I who <i>have</i>
<i>découvert tout ce complot,</i>	discovered all that plot.
<i>Ce n'est ni vous ni ma</i>	It is neither you nor my
<i>sœur qui avez ouvert la</i>	sister who <i>have</i> opened
<i>porte,</i>	the door.
<i>Vous, mon père, et moi,</i>	You, my father, and I, <i>will</i>
<i>partirons demain,</i>	<i>set out</i> to-morrow.

The pronoun relative *qui*, in these and the like sentences, always takes place of the first or second person, and only agrees with the others in number; it is for this reason we must say,

<i>C'est moi qui suis cause de</i>	It is <i>I</i> who <i>am</i> the cause
<i>ce malheur,</i>	of that misfortune.
<i>C'est vous qui avez révélé</i>	It is <i>you</i> who <i>have</i> reveal-
<i>ce secret,</i>	ed that secret.
<i>Ce n'est ni lui ni moi qui</i>	It is neither <i>he</i> nor <i>I</i> who
<i>l'avons fait,</i>	<i>have</i> done it.

There are four conjugations in the French language. Each is distinguished by the termination of the verb in the infinitive mood.

The first makes <i>er</i> ,	as <i>donner</i> , to give.
The second <i>ir</i> ,	as <i>punir</i> , to punish.
The third <i>avoir</i> ,	as <i>recevoir</i> , to receive.
The fourth <i>re</i> ,	as <i>rendre</i> , to render.

N. B. It is necessary that the learner should be well acquainted with the manner of conjugating the two following verbs, because of the frequency of their occurrence in sentences, and in forming the compound tenses of all other verbs.

## CONJUGATION of the AUXILIARY VERB

A VOIR, TO HAVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Compound of the present.
<i>Avoir</i> , to have.	<i>Avoir eu</i> , to have had.
Participle active.	Compound of the past.
<i>Ayant</i> , having.	<i>Ayant eu</i> , having had.
Participle passive.	
* <i>Eu</i> , had.	

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'ai</i> , I have.	<i>Nous avons</i> , we have.
<i>Tu as</i> , thou hast.	<i>Vous avez</i> , you or ye have.
<i>Il a</i> , he has.	<i>Ils ont</i> , }
<i>Elle a</i> , she has.	<i>Elles ont</i> , } they have.
Imperfect. Sing.	Plural.
<i>J'avois</i> , I had.	<i>Nous avions</i> , we had.
<i>Tu avois</i> , thou hadst.	<i>Vous aviez</i> , you had.
<i>Il avoit</i> , he had.	<i>Ils avoient</i> , they had.
Preterite. Sing.	Plural.
<i>J'eus</i> , I had.	<i>Nous eûmes</i> , we had.
<i>Tu eus</i> , thou hadst.	<i>Vous eûtes</i> , you had.
<i>Il eut</i> , he had.	<i>Ils eurent</i> , they had.

## Future. Singular.

*J'aurai*, I shall or will have.  
*Tu auras*, thou wilt, &c. have.  
*Il aura*, he will, &c. have.

## Plural.

*Nous aurons*, we shall, &c. have.  
*Vous aurez*, you will, &c. have.  
*Ils auront*, they will, &c. have.

## Conditional. Singular.

*J'aurois*, I should, could, would, or might have.  
*Tu aurois*, thou wouldst, &c. have.  
*Il auroit*, he would, &c. have.

\* Pronounce *eu* like the French letter *u*, throughout this verb.

## Plural.

*Nous aurions*, we should, &c. have.

*Vous auriez*, you would, &c. have.

*Ils auroient*, they would, &c. have.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive, *eu*, had, to the preceding :

## Compound of the Present.

*J'ai eu*, &c. I have had, &c.

## Compound of the Imperfect.

*J'avois eu*, &c. I had had, &c.

## Compound of the Preterite.

*J'eus eu*, &c. I had had, &c.

## Compound of the Future.

*J'aurai eu*, &c. I will or shall have had, &c.

## Compound of the Conditional.

*J'aurois eu*, &c. I would, should, could, or might have had, &c.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Aie*, have thou.

*Qu'il ait*, let him have.

*Qu'elle ait*, let her have.

## Plural.

*Ayons*, let us have.

*Ayez*, have ye or you.

*Qu'ils or elles aient*, let them have.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Que j'aie*, that I have, or may have.

*tu aies*, thou mayest have.

*il ait*, he may have.



## Plural.

*Que nous ayons*, that we may have.  
*vous ayez*, you may have.  
*ils aient*, they may have.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Que j'eusse*, that I might have or had.  
*tu eusses*, thou mightest have.  
*il eût*, he might have.

## Plural.

*Que nous eussions*, that we might have.  
*vous eussiez*, you might have.  
*ils eussent*, they might have.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive *eu*, had, to the two preceding: *ex.*

## Compound of the Present.

*Que j'aie eu*, &c. that I may have had.

## Compound of the Preterite.

*Que j'eusse eu*, &c. that I might have had.

The learner ought to conjugate the preceding verb with a negation: *ex.*

*Je n'ai pas*, I have not;  
*Nous n'avons pas*, We have not;  
 always placing *ne* before the verb, and *pas* after it.

## CONJUGATION of the AUXILIARY VERB *ETRE*, TO BE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Compound of the Present.
<i>Etre</i> , to be.	<i>Avoir été</i> , to have been.
Participle active.	Compound of the past.
<i>Etant</i> , being.	<i>Ayant été</i> , having been.
Participle passive.	
<i>Été</i> , been.	

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Je suis*, I am.*Tu es*, thou art.*Il est*, he is.

## Plural.

*Nous sommes*, we are.*Vous êtes*, you are.*Ils sont*, they are.

## Imperfect. Sing.

*J'étois*, I was.*Tu étois*, thou wast.*Il étoit*, he was.

## Plural.

*Nous étions*, we were.*Vous étiez*, you were.*Ils étoient*, they were.

## Pret. Sing.

*Je fus*, I was.*Tu fus*, thou wast.*Il fut*, he was.

## Plural.

*Nous fûmes*, we were.*Vous fûtes*, you were.*Ils furent*, they were.

## Future. Singular.

*Je serai*, I shall or will be.*Tu seras*, thou wilt, &c. be.*Il sera*, he will, &c. be.

## Plural.

*Nous serons*, we shall, &c. be.*Vous serez*, you will, &c. be.*Ils seront*, they will, &c. be.

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je serois*, I would, could, should, or might be.*Tu serois*, thou wouldst, &c. be.*Il seroit*, he would, &c. be.

## Plural.

*Nous serions*, we should, &c. be.*Vous seriez*, you would, &c. be.*Ils seroient*, they would, &c. be.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle passive of this verb, *été*, been, to the simple tenses of the indicative mood of the verb *avoir* : ex.

## Compound of the Present.

*J'ai été*, &c. I have been, &c.

## Compound of the Imperfect.

*J'avois été*, &c. I had been, &c.

## Compound of the Preterite.

*J'eus été, &c.* I had been, &c.

## Compound of the Future.

*J'aurai été, &c.* I shall or will have been, &c.

## Compound of the Conditional.

*J'aurais été, &c.* I should, could, would, or might have been, &c.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Sois*, be thou.

*Qu'il soit*, let him be.

## Plural.

*Soyons*, let us be.

*Soyez*, be ye.

*Qu'ils soient*, let them be.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Que je sois*, that I be, or may be.

*tu sois*, thou mayest be.

*il soit*, he may be.

## Plural.

*Que nous soyons*, that we may be.

*vous soyez*, you may be.

*ils soient*, they may be.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Que je fusse*, that I might be, or were.

*tu fusses*, thou mightest be.

*il fût*, he might be.

## Plural.

*Que nous fussions*, that we might be.

*vous fussiez*, you might be.

*ils fussent*, they might be.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

They are formed by adding the participle past of this verb, *été*, been, to the two simple tenses of the subjunctive mood of the verb *avoir*: ex.

## Compound of the Present.

*Que j'aie été*, that I may have been, &c.

## Compound of the Preterite.

*Que j'eusse été, &c.* that I might have been, &c.

This verb, as well as the preceding, is to be conjugated with the negation: *ex.*

*Je ne suis pas, I am not.*

*Nous ne sommes pas, We are not.*

*N. B.* Here it is peculiarly necessary to observe, that the two above verbs, *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, are only auxiliaries when they are joined with some participle passive of another verb; otherwise, *être* may properly be called a *substantive verb*; that is, a verb which only expresses the affirmation, without any inherent quality; and the verb *avoir* is an *active one*, which signifies *to possess*.

## EXERCISES on the two AUXILIARY VERBS.

## GENERAL OBSERVATION.

Every verb must agree with its nominative case in *person* and *number*; but after collective nouns, such as *amas, foule, infinité, nombre, la plupart, &c.* followed by a genitive, the verb must agree with that genitive in *number*: *ex.*

*La plupart de ses amis l'ont abandonné,* Most of his friends have forsaken him.

In order to ease the learner, the different simple tenses are marked in the following exercises as far as the irregular verbs, when it is hoped every difficulty will be removed by practice and attention. The second person singular, being *seldom* or never used in conversation, has been omitted throughout the exercises on the verbs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** I have a book. - - - I am happy. - - - He has  
*heureux, adj.*

a hat which is too big. - - - - We have no  
*trop, adv. grand, adj.*

money. - - - - We are not ambitious. - - - - You have  
*argent. ambitieux, adj.*

a sword. - - You are very proud. - - - - - Those girls  
*orgueilleux, adj.*

have modesty; they are virtuous.

*modestie, f.*

*vertueux, adj.*

IMP. I had a friend. - - - I was grateful. - - - - - My  
*reconnoissant, adj.*

sister had no work, she was lazy. - - - - - We had  
*ouvrage, paresseux, adj.*

a holiday, we were very glad of it. - - - - - You had  
*congé, aise, adj.*

company, but you were not ready. - Your brothers  
*compagnie, f. mais, c. prêt, adj.*

had learning, they were loved by every body.  
*savoir, m. aimé, p. p. de*

PRET. (As soon as) I had a fine horse, I was  
*Dès que, c.*

merry. - - - - - My cousin had a little garden, he  
*de bonne humeur. cousin, m.*

was ingenious. - - As soon as we had bread . we  
*étoit adroit, adj. pain, m.*

were satisfied. - - You had fine weather, you were  
*rassasié, p. p. temps*

pleased. - - - - - Your friends had beautiful flowers;  
*content, adj.*

they were very careful of them.  
*soigneux, adj.*

FUT. I shall have discretion; I shall be prudent.  
*discrétion, f.*

- - Miss White shall have a bird which will be very  
*oiseau, m.*

tame. - - - - - We shall have no books, we shall not  
*apprivoisé, adj.*

be learned. - - You shall have pens and paper; you  
*savant, adj.*

will be busy. - - - - - The English will have a good  
*occupé, adj.*

admiral; they will be victorious.  
*amiral, m. victorieux, adj.*

COND. I could have a pretty dog. - - - I would  
*joli, adj. chien, m.*

not be troublesome. - - - Mr. Thomas would have  
*importun,adj.*

good wine: it would be a delicious thing. - - We  
*ce délicieux,adj. chose,f.*

would have a dictionary: we would not be negligent.  
- - - You would have good officers; you would be  
invincible. - - - These ladies would have a better  
*invincible,adj.*

reception; they would be thankful.

*accueil,m.*

*reconnoissant,adj.*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Have patience and be indulgent.\* - - Let her have a  
gown; let her be happy. - - Let us have at least

*au moins,adv.*

some gratitude; let us be diligent. - - Let them  
*reconnoissance,f.*

have partridges; let them be merry.

*perdrix,f.*

*joyeux,adj.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may have riches. - - That I may  
be charitable. - - That he may have scholars. - -  
That he may be attentive. - - That we may have a  
*attentif,adj.*

good house. - - That we may be well lodged. - -  
*bien,adv. logé,p.p.*

That you may have your money; that you may  
*argent,m.*

be paid. - - That they may have apples: that  
*payé,p.p.*

they may be ripe.

*mûr,adj.*

PRET. That I might have generosity. - - That I  
*générosité,f.*

might not be poor. - - That he might have no  
*pauvre,adj.*

pleasure. - - That he might be uneasy. - - That  
*plaisir. inquiet,adj.*

we might have our share. - - That we might not  
*part,f.*

\* Remember the last observation, page 166, that the *second person plural* must be used throughout the imperative moods.

be deceived. - - - That you might have a couple  
*trompés, p.p.* *couple, f.*  
 of fowls. - - - That you might be pleased. - - - That  
*content, adj.*  
 they might have no pension. - - - That they might  
 not be rewarded.  
*récompensés, p.p.*

### Promiscuous EXERCISES upon the COMPOUND TENSES.

I have had (a great deal) of trouble ; I have not  
*bien* *peine, f.*  
 been rewarded. - - - Your brother would have had  
 leave, *if he had been diligent.* - - - If you had  
*permission,*  
 married him, you would have had a tyrant  
*épousé, p.p.* *tyran, m.*  
 instead of a husband ; you never could have been  
*au lieu, p.* *mari, m.* *ne jamais*  
 happy. - - - If we had fought, *we could not*  
*combattu, p.p.*  
 have been conquered. - - - Thomas has had two  
*vaincus, p.p.*  
 holidays, because he has been very active. - - -  
*congé,* *parceque, c.* *actif, adj.*  
 Your friend could have had a better watch, he  
*montre, f.*  
 would not have been cheated. - - - Your uncle and  
*trompé, p.p.*  
 my brother have been wet. - - - You could have  
*mouillés, p.p.*  
 killed a hare, if you had had a gun.  
*tué, p.p.* *lièvre, m.* *fusil, m.*

After these exercises, the learner ought to conjugate the two foregoing verbs, throughout the several tenses of the indicative mood only, first with an interrogation affirmative, and then with an interrogation negative :  
 ex.

## SINGULAR.

## Affirmatively.

<i>Ai-je ?</i>	have I ?	<i>Suis-je ?</i>	am I ?
<i>A-t-il ?</i>	has he ?	<i>Est-il ?</i>	is he ?
<i>Mon frère a-t-il ?</i>		has my brother ?	
<i>Sa fille est-elle ?</i>		is her daughter ?	

## Negatively.

<i>N'ai-je pas ?</i>	have I not ?	<i>Ne suis-je pas ?</i>	am I not ?
<i>N'a-t-il pas ?</i>	has he not ?	<i>N'est-il pas ?</i>	is he not ?
<i>Ma sœur n'a-t-elle pas ?</i>		has not my sister ?	
<i>Votre cousin n'est-il pas ?</i>		is not your cousin ?	

## PLURAL.

## Affirmatively

<i>Aurons-nous ?</i>	have we ?	<i>Sommes-nous ?</i>	are we ?
<i>Avez-vous ?</i>	have you ?	<i>Etes-vous ?</i>	are you ?
<i>Ont-ils ?</i>	have they ?	<i>Sont-ils ?</i>	are they ?
<i>Vos frères ont-ils ?</i>		have your brothers ?	&c.
<i>Ses filles sont-elles ?</i>		are his daughters ?	&c.

## Negatively.

<i>N'avons-nous pas ?</i>	have we not ?
<i>N'avez-vous pas ?</i>	have you not ?
<i>N'ont-ils pas ?</i>	have they not ?
<i>Ses enfans n'ont-ils pas ?</i>	have not his children ?
<i>Ne sommes-nous pas ?</i>	are we not ?
<i>N'êtes-vous pas ?</i>	are you not ?
<i>Ne sont-ils pas ?</i>	are they not ?
<i>Mes sœurs ne sont-elles pas ?</i>	are not my sisters ? &c.

N. B. In the interrogations, it must be observed, that when there is a noun standing as a nominative to the verb, the pronouns *il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, though not expressed in English, must be expressed in French immediately after the verb, according to the person and number; and when the verb terminates with a vowel, a *-t-* is to be added in the third person



singular between the verb and the pronoun, to avoid the *hiatus*, the noun beginning the phrase : ex.

Votre oncle a-t-il des en- Has your uncle any chil-  
fants ? dren ?

that is, Your uncle, *has he* any children ?

Mon cousin aura-t-il congé ? Will my cousin have a  
holiday ?

that is, My cousin, *will he have* a holiday ?

The same rule must be observed in the conjugation of the other verbs : ex.

Votre frère joue-t-il du Does your brother play on  
violon ? the violin ?

Sa sœur dinera-t-elle ici Will her sister dine here  
aujourd'hui ? to-day ?

But if the sentence begin with *que* interrogative, or an *adverb* followed by a noun, the pronoun is not to be expressed, and that noun is to be put after the verb : ex.

Que fait votre sœur ? What is your sister doing ?

Comment se porte Monsieur How does your brother ?  
votre frère ?

When, in French, we make a general interrogation concerning a sudden pain, misfortune, accident, &c. we say,

Qu'est-ce que c'est ? What is the matter ?

But if speaking to or of a person, we must use the verb *avoir*, and follow the above rule : ex.

Qu'avez-vous ? What is the matter with  
you ?

Qu'a-t-il ? What is the matter with  
him ?

Qu'aviez-vous ? What was the matter with  
you ?

Qu'avoit votre sœur ce What was the matter with  
matin ? your sister this morning ?

The learner will have no trouble in going through the other simple tenses of the indicative mood ; and as

for the compounds, it needs only to be *remembered*, that *eu*, had, or *été*, been, is to be added to the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have : ex.

*Ai-je eu ?* have I *had* ?

*N'ai-je pas eu ?* have I not *had* ? &c.

*Ai-je été ?* have I *been* ?

*N'ai-je pas été ?* have I not *been* ? &c.

*Promiscuous* EXERCISES *on the preceding* RULES.

Have I my books ? - - Am I not unhappy to  
*malheureux, adj. de*

have lost his friendship ? - - Has he no money ?  
*perdu, p.p. amitié, f.*

Is my sister arrived ? - - Has not your father a great  
*arrivée, p.p.*

deal of friendship for you ? - - - What is the matter  
with you ? - - Have not your parents sent you

all the money which you wanted ? - - - - Have we  
*envoyé, p.p. dont aviez, v. besoin.*

not a garden ? - - - Are we not very happy ? - - - -

Have you a good gun ? - - - Are you dexterous ? - -  
*adroit, adj.*

Have not my brother and sister a beautiful coach ? - -

Are not Paul and Thomas two pretty children ? - -  
*joli, adj.*

Are your brothers arrived ? - - - Are you not glad  
to see them ? - - What is the matter with him ?  
*de voir, v.*

Have they not spoken to him ? - - Had you not a  
*parlé, p.p.*

little dog ? - - Was not your paper very good ? - - Are not  
the English ladies generally handsomer than

the French ? - - Shall you have occasion for your dic-  
*généralement, adv. besoin, m. de*

tionary ? - - - - Shall I not have the pleasure to see  
*de*

you to-morrow? - - - Were you not in the room? - - -  
*demain,adv. chambre,f.*

Shall we not have leave? - - - Will they not be  
 angry? - - - Could you not have had a better watch?  
*fâché,adj.*

- - - If France were as rich as England, would  
*Si,c étoit*  
 it not be the best\* country in the world? - - -  
*ce,pro.*

Will you not be ashamed? - - - Has not your  
*honteux,adj.*

friend had bad weather? - - - What was the  
*mauvais,adj. temps?*

matter with him this morning? - - - Had not our  
 admiral better seamen than yours? - - Has he been  
*matelot*

victorious? - - Would not your hat be too big? - - -  
*victorieux,adj. grand,adj.*

Is not your sister older than mine? - - Are you  
*âgé,adj.*

not happier than if you were married? - - - Shall  
*marié,p.p.*

not John have a holiday, if he be diligent? - - Has not  
*Jean est*

your cousin more money than you? - - Was not your  
 wine very dear?

The learner will soon be convinced how necessary it  
 is to know these two verbs perfectly well; because, in-  
 dependently of being constantly used, the compound  
 tenses of all the others are formed with them. When  
 he is well acquainted with their usage, he will only have  
 to add the participle passive to any of their tenses:  
 ex.

*J'ai aimé*, I have loved, or did love:

*Je n'ai pas chanté*, I have not sung, or did not sing.

*Ai-je parlé?* have I spoken? or did I speak?

\* See the Degrees of Comparison, p. 60, &c.

*N'ai-je pas étudié ?* have I not studied ? or did I not study.

*Avez-vous dansé ?* have you danced ? or did you dance ?

*N'avez-vous pas écrit ?* have you not written ? or did you not write ?

*Je suis puni,* I am punished.

*Je ne suis pas attendu,* I am not expected.

*Suis-je aimé ?* am I loved ?

*Ne suis-je pas perdu ?* am I not undone ?

*Etes-vous marié ?* are you married ?

*N'êtes-vous pas convaincu ?* are you not convinced ?

### REMARK on the Verb *ETRE*, TO BE.

In English, when this verb immediately precedes any noun, signifying *old, hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, or afraid*, it should be rendered in French by *avoir*, to have, and the adjective must be changed into its substantive: ex.

*Quel âge avez-vous ?*

How *old* are you ?

*J'ai sept ans,*

I am seven years old.

*Avez-vous faim ?*

Are you *hungry*.

*Non, mais j'ai soif,*

No, but I am *thirsty*, &c.

### EXERCISES.

How old is your daughter ? She is seven

*Quel, pro.*

*fille, f.*

years old. - - - My son will be eleven years old

*an, m. fils, m.*

(in the) month of April. - - - - I was very

*au mois, m. Avril.*

*grand, adj.*

hungry when I arrived. - - - - Were you not

*quand, c. suis arrivé, p. p.*

very thirsty ? - - He is not afraid. - - You will

*grand, adj.*

*peur.*

soon be warm. - - - - Are you not cold ? - - -

*bientôt, adv. chaud.*

*froid.*

How old are these two young children ? The

*enfant, m.*

one is three years old, and the other is not yet  
*encore, adv.*  
 four. . . . Was not my sister more than ten years old  
 when she died ?  
*quand, adv. mourut, v.*

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Parl-er*, to speak.  
 Participle active. *\*ant*, speaking.  
 Participle passive. *é, m. ée, f.* spoken.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Avoir parlé*, to have spoken.  
 Past. *Ayant parlé*, having spoken.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present. Singular.

*Je parl-e*, I speak, or I do speak, or I am speaking.†  
*Tu es*, thou speakest.  
*Il e*, he speaks.

#### Plural.

*Nous \*ons*, we speak.  
*Vous ez*, you speak.  
*Ils ent*, they speak.

\* Verbs in this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *e* or *c*, immediately succeeded by *A* or *o*, require, for the softening of their sound, that an *æ* be added to the *a*, and a cedilla to the *ç*. Stars are placed where these alterations are required.

† When in English, a participle active is joined to any of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be*, to express the continuation of the action, the auxiliary must be left out in French, and the participle put in the same tense, &c. with the auxiliary that is suppressed:

<i>Je parle</i> , I am speaking;	<i>Je priois</i> , I was desiring;
<i>Vous parlez</i> , you are speaking;	<i>Nous chantions</i> , we were singing;
<i>Nous danserons</i> , we shall be dancing;	<i>Ils écriraient</i> , they would be writing;

and not *Je suis parlant*, *vous êtes parlant*, *j'étais priant*, &c. *nous serons dansant*, *ils seroient écrivant*, &c.

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je parl-ois*, I was speaking, spoke, or did speak.*Tu -ois*, thou wast speaking, &c.*Il -oit*, he was speaking, &c.

## Plural.

*Nous -ions*, we were speaking, &c.*Vous -iez*, you were speaking, &c.*Ils -oient*, they were speaking, &c.

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je parl-ai*, I spoke, or did speak.*Tu -as*, thou spokest.*Il -a*, he spoke.

## Plural.

*Nous -âmes*, we spoke.*Vous -âtes*, you spoke.*Ils -èrent*, they spoke.

## Future. Singular.

*Je parl-erai*, I shall or will speak.*Tu -eras*, thou shalt or wilt speak.*Il -era*, he shall or will speak.

## Plural.

*Nous -erons*, we shall or will speak.*Vous -erez*, you shall or will speak.*Ils -eront*, they shall or will speak.

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je parl-erois*, I should, would, or might speak.*Tu -erois*, thou shouldst, &c. speak.*Il -eroit*, he should, &c. speak.

## Plural.

*Nous -erions*, we should, &c. speak.*Vous -eriez*, you should, &c. speak.*Ils -eroient*, they should, &c. speak.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai parlé*, I have spoken.Imperfect. *J'avois parlé*, I had spoken.Preterite. *J'eus parlé*, I had spoken.

Future. *J'aurai parlé*, I shall or will have spoken.  
 Conditional. *J'aurais parlé*, I should, would, could, have spoken.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Parl-e*, speak thou.

*Qu'il e*, let him speak.

Plural.

*\*ons*, let us speak.

*ez*, speak ye.

*Qu'ils ent*, let them speak.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je parl-e*, that I may speak, or I speak.

*tu es*, thou mayest speak.

*il e*, he may speak.

Plural.

*nous ions*, that we may speak.

*vous iez*, you may speak.

*ils ent*, they may speak.

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je parl-\*asse*, that I might speak, or I spoke.

*tu \*asses*, thou mightest speak.

*il \*ût*, he might speak.

Plural.

*nous \*assions*, that we might speak.

*vous \*assiez*, you might speak.

*ils \*assent*, they might speak.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie parlé*, that I may have spoken.

Preterite. *Que j'eusse parlé*, that I might have spoken.

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 regular verbs. The following are excepted : viz.

*Aller*, being very irregular, will be seen among the irregular verbs.

*Envoyer* is only irregular in the future and conditional present ; as, instead of saying *j'envoyerais*, I will send, &c. *j'envoyerois*, I would send, &c. according to this conjugation, we say,

## Future.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'enverrai</i> , I will send.	<i>Nous enverrons.</i>
<i>Tu enverras</i> ,	<i>Vous enverrerez.</i>
<i>Il enverra</i> ,	<i>Ils enverront.</i>

## Conditional.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>J'enverrois</i> , I would send.	<i>Nous enverrions.</i>
<i>Tu enverrois</i> ,	<i>Vous enverriez.</i>
<i>Il enverroit</i> ,	<i>Ils enverraient.</i>

**PUER** (*sentir mauvais*.) This verb is only used in the infinitive mood, present tense, imperfect, future of the indicative, and conditional. Formerly this verb was irregular in the three persons of the present tense of the indicative mood ; as *je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put* ; custom has, however, reformed the abuse, and will have it, *Je pue*, *tu pues*, *il pue*.

Verbs ending in **AYER** and **OYER**, as *essayer*, to try, *envoyer*, to send, change the **y** into **i** wherever the letter **y** is immediately followed by an **e** mute : ex. *j'essaie*, *tu essaies*, *il essaie*, *j'envoie*, *tu envoies*, *il envoie*, &c.

The learner, having conjugated a verb *affirmatively* and *negatively*, ought to conjugate two others, with an *interrogation affirmative* and *negative*, in the indicative mood only, and so on through the other conjugations, before he attempts the exercises : ex.

## Affirmatively. .

*Manges-tu ?* dost thou eat ?

*Mange-t-il ?* does he eat ?

*Parlons-nous ?* do we speak, &c.

## Negatively.

*Ne parlé-je pas ?* do I not speak ?

*Ma sœur ne chante-t-elle pas ?* does not my sister sing.

**N. B.** In many verbs, common usage does not admit an interrogation in the first person singular, present, of



the indicative mood.—Instead of saying, *Mangé-je ?* Do I eat ? *Punis-je ?* Do I punish ? &c. we say,

*Est-ce que je mange ? Est-ce que je punis ?* &c.

Some verbs, ending in *e* mute, in the first person singular, present of the indicative mood, change the *e* mute into *é* with an acute accent, and *je* after it ; as *parlé-je*.

It has before been observed, that the compound tenses are easily formed, by adding the participle passive of the verb to any of the tenses of the auxiliaries *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, as they have been conjugated, either affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively : ex.

Affirmatively.

*J'ai dansé*, I have danced, or I did dance.

Negatively.

*Je n'ai pas parlé*, I have not spoken, or I did not speak.

Interrogatively-affirmatively.

*Avez-vous chanté ?* Have you sung, or did you sing ?

Interrogatively-negatively.

*N'a-t-il pas mangé ?* Has he not eaten, or did he not eat ?  
Observe, that we make use of

*Mener*,

To take, to carry,

*Amener*,

To bring,

*Emmener*,

To carry, or take away,

and all the compound verbs of *mener*, whenever we speak of rational or irrational beings to which nature has given the faculty of walking, if they be not deprived of it through illness or accident : in all other cases we make use of

*Porter*,

To carry, to take,

*Apporter*,

To bring,

*Emporter*,

To carry, or take away,

and all the compounds of *porter*.

N. B. It must be necessarily observed here, previously to the learner's translating the following exercises, that the *English auxiliary verbs*, *have*, *am*, *do*, *did*, *will*, *shall*, *can*, *let*, *may*, *would*, *could*, *should*, *might*, and often *ought*, are most commonly used, in that language, to

avoid that repetition of a preceding verb, or in answer to a question or foregoing sentence; to avoid the repetition of that verb, and often of one or more pronouns; but in French, the verb, expressed in the first member, or part of the sentence, must always be repeated, as well as the pronouns which it may govern: ex.

*Je vous prie de porter demain cette lettre à Monsieur D.* I beg of you to carry that letter to-morrow to Mr. D.

*Je la lui porterai avec plaisir,* I will, with pleasure, (carry it to him,) understood.

*Vous ne pourriez pas apprendre cette leçon en dix jours,* You could not learn that lesson in ten days.

*Il me semble que je pourrois l'apprendre,* It seems to me as if I could, (learn it,) understood.

*Attendez-vous vos sœurs aujourd'hui?* Do you expect your sisters to-day?

*Oui, nous les attendons,* Yes, we do, (expect them,) understood.

*Votre frère écrit-il à M. votre père?* Is your brother writing to your father?

*Oui, il lui écrit à présent,* Yes, he is now, (writing to him,) understood.

*Apprenez-vous le François?* Are you learning French?

*Oui, je l'apprends,* Yes, I am, (learning it,) understood.

*Avez-vous acheté les livres dont vous m'avez parlé?* Have you bought the books which you mentioned to me?

*Non, je ne les ai pas encore achetés,* No, I have not yet, (bought them,) understood.

*Ne devraient-ils pas faire savoir à leur père que leur frère est dans la détresse?* Ought they not to let their father know that their brother is in distress?

*Certainement, ils devraient le lui faire savoir,* Certainly, they ought, (to let him know it,) understood.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I play sometimes, but I never  
*jou-er, v. quelquefois, adv. mais, c. ne ja-*  
 ver win. - - - How much does your brother  
*mais, adv. gagn-er, v. Combien, adv. ∞*  
 give for his board? - - We do not command;  
*donn-er, v. pension, f. ∞ command-er, v.*  
 we entreat. - - You always borrow; you  
*pri-er, v. toujours, adv. emprunt-er, v.*  
 never lend. - - You are always speaking when  
*prét-er, v. quand, adv.*  
 I write. - - - Why do you not grant  
*écri-s, v. Pourquoi, adv. ∞ accord-er, v.*  
 him that favour? - - - What do they ask  
*grâce, f. demand-er, v.*  
 you?

IMP. I was desiring them to sing a song. - -  
*pri-er, v. de chant-er, v. chanson, f.*  
 She was not speaking to you. - - Were we not jok-  
*bad-*  
 ing? - - Were you not scolding them when I came?  
*n-er, v. grond-er, v. vins, v.*  
 Yes, I was. - - - They were eating fish.  
*mang-er, v. poisson, m.*

PRET. I spoke to them (a long while). - - - Did  
*long-tems, adv.*  
 not the king forgive them? - - No, he did not.  
*roi, m. pardonn-er, v.*  
 We wept for joy when we found her. - -  
*pleur-er, v. de joie trouv-er, v.*  
 Why did you not play on Friday last? - - - They  
*∞ Vendredi dernier, adj.*  
 fastened the man to a tree, and then  
*li-er, v. arbre, m. ensuite, adv.*  
 robbed him of his watch, gold ring, and all the  
*vul-er, v. ∞ montre, f. bague, f.*  
 money he had in his pocket. - - The soldiers first  
*poche, f. d'abord, adv.*

pillaged the town, and then slaughtered without  
*pill-er, v.*                      *puis égorg-er, v.*  
 pity the old men, women, and children.  
*pitié*              *vieillard, m.*

FUT. I will buy                      a watch the first time I  
    *achet-er, v.*                      *fois, f.*  
 go to London. - - Will not your father send  
*irai, v.*                      *envoy-er, v.*  
 you to school this winter? - - - - What shall we give  
                                  *école, f.*              *hiver, m.*  
 him? - - - Will you not carry the children to the  
                                  *men-er, v.*              *enfant, m.*  
 play? - - - They will empty the bottle if you  
*comédie, f.*              *vid-er, v.*              *bouteille, f.*  
 do not take it away.  
*emport-er, v.*

COND. I would lend                      them money if  
                                  *prêt-er, v.*                      *leur*  
 they were not so idle. - - - - Would not your  
                                  *paresseux, adj.*  
 mother despise such a conduct? - - Why should  
                          *mépris-er, v.* *tel, adj.*              *conduite, f.*  
 we send them thither? - - - I am sure you would  
                                  *sûr, adj.*  
 marry her, if she were rich. - - - Would they  
*épous-er, v.*                      *étoit riche, adj.*  
 not pay us, if they had money?  
*pay-er, v.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Bridle my horse, and bring him to  
*Brid-er, v.*              *cheval, m.*              *amen-er, v.*  
 me. - - - Give a chair to that lady. - - Let her not  
                                  *chaise, f.*              *dame, f.*  
 (come up,) for I am engaged. - - - - Let us carry those  
*mont-er, v.* *car, c.*              *occupé, p. p.*  
 peaches to Mrs. D\*\*\*. - - - Do not neglect your  
*vêche, f.*              *Mme*              *néglig-er, v.*

affairs. - - I promise that I will not. - Let them hunt.  
*affaire, f. promets, v. chasser, v.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may help you. - - - Though\* he  
*aid-er, v. Quoique, c.*  
do not approve of my plan. - - - Provided\*  
*approuv-er, v. plan, m. Pourvu que, c.*  
we avoid their company. - - - That you may  
*éviter, v. compagnie, f.*  
try that gun. - - - That they may not com-  
*éprouv-er, v.*  
mand.

PRET. That I might changet my opinion. - - -  
*chang-er, d' opinion.*  
That he might eat an apple. - - - That we might not  
*pomme, f.*  
fall into their hands. - - - That you might  
*tomb-er, v. dans, p. main. -*  
encourage† the industrious. - - - That they might  
*encourag-er, v. industrieux, adj.*  
exercise their talents. - - - That I might pronounce.† - -  
*exerc-er, v. talent, m. prononc-er, v.*  
That we might begin.†  
*commenc-er, v.*

## Promiscuous EXERCISES on the COMPOUND TENSES.

I have forgotten to bring your penknife. - - -  
*oubli-er, v. de canif, m.*  
He has not yet spoken to us. - - Has she brought  
*encore, adv.*  
her work with her? Yes, she has. - - Have we not gain-  
*gagn-*  
ed our cause? - - Why have you not yet begun  
*er, v. commenc-er, v.*  
your exercise? - - - You had taken the mustard  
*thème, m. emport-er, v. moutarde, f.*

\* \* Conjunctions which require the subjunctive mood, as will be seen hereafter; See page 420.

† See the notes page 175.

away. . . . You would have judged more favour-  
 ably of him. - Stay here till\*  
*juger, v.* *favo-*  
*ablement, adv.* *Rester, v. ici, adv.* *jusqu' à ce que, c.*  
 we have dined. . . . Could we not have assisted  
*din-er, v. subj.* *aid-er, v.*  
 that family? - They have broken all the panes  
*famille, f.* *cass-er, v.* *carreau, m.*  
 of glass in their windows, because they had  
*vitre de, p.* *fenêtre, f.* *parceque, c.*  
 not illuminated as it had been ordered. . . .  
*illumin-er, v.* *comme, adv.* *ordonn-er, v.*  
 I shall have dined soon. . . . We would have  
*bientôt, adv.*  
 sent† them to prison, if they had resisted. . . .  
*envoy-er, v.* *en prison, f.* *résist-er, v.*  
 That we may have denied the fact. . . . Had you  
*ni-er, v.* *fait, m.*  
 not imitated their manners? - They had not exe-  
*imit-er, v.* *manière, f.* *éxé-*  
 cuted his commands. . . . Had I not light-  
*cul-er, v.* *commandement, m.* *allu-*  
 ed the fire? - They would have carried him to  
*mer, v.* *feu, m.*  
 the concert if I had not hindered† them  
*empêch-er, v.*  
 (from it). . . . We might have accepted of his  
*en* *accept-er, v.*  
 offers. . . . Why did you not?  
*offre, f.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

### INFINITIVE MOON.

Present.	Pun-ir, to punish.
Participle active.	<i>issant, punishing.</i>
Participle passive.	<i>i, m. ie, f. punished.</i>

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.	<i>Avoir puni, to have punished.</i>
Past.	<i>Ayant puni, having punished.</i>

† For the agreement of these, see the rules on participles, p. 346, 348.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Je* pun-is, I punish, I do punish, or I am punishing.

*Tu* is,

*Il* it,

## Plural.

*Nous* *issons*, we punish, &c.

*Vous* *issez*,

*Ils* *issent*,

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je* pun-*issois*, I did punish, or I was punishing, &c.

*Tu* *issois*,

*Il* *issoit*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *issions*, we did punish, &c.

*Vous* *issiez*,

*Ils* *issoient*,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je* pun-is, I punished, or I did punish.

*Tu* is,

*Il* it,

## Plural.

*Nous* *fmes*, we punished, &c.

*Vous* *ftes*,

*Ils* *irent*,

## Future. Singular.

*Je* pun-*irai*, I shall or will punish.

*Tu* *iras*,

*Il* *ira*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *irons*, we shall or will punish.

*Vous* *irez*,

*Ils* *iront*,

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je pun-irois*, I should, would, could, or might punish.

*Tu irois*,

*Il iroit*,

## Plural.

*Nous irions*, we should, &c. punish.

*Vous iriez*,

*Ils iroient*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai puni*, I have punished.

Imperfect. *J'avois puni*, I had punished.

Preterite. *J'eus puni*, I had punished.

Future. *J'aurai puni*, I shall, &c. have punished.

Conditional. *J'aurois puni*, I should, &c. have punished.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Pun-is*, punish thou.

*Qu'il isse*, let him punish.

Plural.

*issons*, let us punish.

*issez*, punish ye.

*Qu'ils issent*, let them punish.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je pun-isse*, that I may punish, or I punish.

*tu isses*,

*il isse*,

Plural.

*nous issions*, that we may punish.

*vous issiez*,

*ils issent*,



## Preterite. Singular.

*Que je pun-isse*, that I might punish, or I punished.

*tu isses*,

*il fit*,

## Plural.

*nous issions*, that we might punish.

*vous issiez*,

*ils issent*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie puni*, that I may have punished.

Preterite. *Que j'eusse puni*, that I might have punished.

After the same manner are conjugated about two hundred regular verbs; the following are excepted, as being irregular :

*Acquérir*, to acquire.

*Assaillir*, to assault.

*Bouillir*, to boil.

*Courir*, to run.

*Cueillir*, to gather.

*Dormir*, to sleep.

*Faillir*, to fail.

*Fuir*, to flee, to avoid.

*Mentir*, to lie.

*Mourir*, to die.

*Offrir*, to offer.

*Ouvrir*, to open.

*Partir*, to set out.

*Se repentir*, to repent.

*Sentir*, to smell.

*Servir*, to serve.

*Sortir*, to go out.

*Souffrir*, to suffer.

*Tenir*, to hold.

*Venir*, to come.

*Vêtir*, to clothe.

And their compounds.

## EXERCISES UPON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I always finish my work  
*toujours, adv. fin-ir, v. ouvrage, m.*  
 before the others. --- Your friend does not succeed  
*avant, p. ami, m. réuss-ir, v.*  
 in his undertaking. -- Do we not furnish arms  
*dans, p. entreprise, f. fourn-ir, v. arme, f.*  
 against ourselves? -- Why do you hate him? ---  
*contre, p. ha-ir, v.*

They cure the diseases of the body, and  
*guér-ir, v. maladie, f. corps, m.*  
 not those of the mind.

IMP. I was building my house when  
*bât-ir, v. maison, f. quand, adv.*  
 you demolished yours. --- Was he not enjoying  
*démol-ir, v. jou-ir de, v.*  
 a good estate? --- We hated him, because he did  
*bien, m. parceque, c.*  
 not act kindly towards us. --- On  
*ag-ir, v. honnêtement, adv. envers, p. Sur, p.*  
 what were you reflecting? --- The mountains were  
*réfléch-ir, v. montagne, f.*  
 resounding with their cries.  
*retent-ir, v. de cri, m.*

PRÆT. I warranted them very good. --- Did not  
*garant-ir, v.*  
 your master accomplish his promise? --- We (leap-  
*accompl-ir, v. promesse, f. fran-*  
 ed over) the ditch, and seized the guilty. ---  
*chir, v. fossé, m. sais-ir, v. coupable, adj.*  
 Why did you not applaud that pretty act-  
*applaud-ir, v. à joli, adj. ac-*  
 cess? I did, with all my might. --- Did not the sol-  
*trice, f. de, p. forces, f. pl. sol-*  
 diers obey the commands of their gene-  
*ral, m. obé-ir, v. aux commandement, m.*  
 ral?

FUT. When shall I banish all these  
*bann-ir, v. tout, adj.*  
 thoughts from my mind? --- This plant will soon  
*pensée, f. plante, f.*  
 blossom, if you water it often. --- We shall  
*fleur-ir, v. arroser, v. souvent, adv.*  
 warn your relations of it. --- Shall you not  
*avert-ir, v. parent, m.*  
 enjoy, as we do, the pure pleas-  
*jourir comme, adv. en des pur, adj.*

tures of the country? - - Her children will bless  
*bén-ir, v.*  
 her for it.

COND. I would choose this cloth, if I  
*chois-ir, v. drap, m.*  
 were in your place. - - - Would he not blush, if he  
*à roug-ir, v.*  
 acted so? - - - - We would not punish them, if they  
*ainsi, adv.*  
 were diligent. - - Would you not act with less  
*avec, p. moins, adv.*  
 severity? - - - - They could furnish us with arms and  
*sévérité?*  
 troops, if we wanted any. (write, if we had need  
*troupe, f. avoir besoin, v.*  
 (of any.)  
*en.*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Do not fill the glasses, - - - - Let him enjoy  
*rempl-ir, v. verre, m.*  
 the fruit of his labours. - - Well! let him, I do not  
*du travail, m. Eh bien, int.*  
 hinder him from it. - - - Let us reflect on what we  
*empêch-er, v. à*  
 have to do. - - - Let them define the question,  
*à faire, v. défin-ir, v.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. That I may not perish. - - - I wish  
*pér-ir, v. souhait-er, v.*  
 he may succeed. - - - - That we may not (bear hard-  
*réuss-ir, v. pât-ir, v.*  
 ships). - That you may not hate us, - - - Provided they  
 do not (grow tall.)  
*grand-ir, v.*

PRET. That I might refresh my memory. - - -  
*rafraîch-ir, v. mémoire, f.*

That she might not roast the meat. -- That we might  
*rôt-ir, v.*

(become younger). - - - That you might punish the  
*rajeun-ir, v.*

idle. - - - That they might not (grow old).  
*vieill-ir, v.*

### COMPOUND TENSES.

I have filled my cellar with good wine. - - -  
*rempl-ir, v. cave, f. de*

Has he not (leaped over) the ditch? - - We had finished  
our work. - - - - They would have seized him. - - - -  
*ouvrage, m.*

We should have perished without any assistance. - -  
*sans, p. aucun secours.*

When shall I have built my house? - - I have  
*bât-ir, v.*

(very much) weakened his courage. - - Though  
*beaucoup, adv. affoibl-ir, v. Quoique, c.*

they have adorned their gardens to dazzle  
*aient, embell-ir, v. jardin, m. pour éblou-ir, v.*

the vulgar, they have not succeeded, because  
*vulgaire, m. réuss-ir, v. parceque, c.*

they have disobeyed their father and mother.  
*désobé-ir, v. à*

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. Rec-evoir, to receive.

Part. active. *evant*, receiving.

Part. pass. \**u, m. ue, f.* received.

#### COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Avoir reçu*, to have received.

Past. *Ayant reçu*, having received.

Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *c*, require for the softening of their sound, that a cedilla be added to the *c*, so (*ç*) whenever it is followed by *o* or *u*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Je* reç-*ois*, I receive, I do receive, or I am receiving.

*Tu* *ois*,

*Il* *oit*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *evons*, we receive, &c.

*Vous* *eviez*,

*Ils* *oivent*,

## Imperfect. Singular. '.

*Je* rec-*evois*, I did receive, or I was receiving.

*Tu* *evois*,

*Il* *evoit*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *evions*, we did receive, &c.

*Vous* *eviez*,

*Ils* *evoient*,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je* reç-*us*, I received, or I did receive.

*Tu* *us*,

*Il* *ut*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *âmes*, we received, &c.

*\*Vous* *âtes*,

*\*Ils* *urent*,

## Future. ' Singular.

*Je* rec-*evrai*, I shall or will receive.

*Tu* *evras*,

*Il* *evra*,

## Plural.

*Nous* *evrons*, we shall or will receive.

*Vous* *evrez*,

*Ils* *evront*,

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je rec-eurois*, I should, would, could, or might receive.

*Tu eurois*,

*Il eeroit*,

## Plural.

*Nous eurons*, we should, &c. receive.

*Vous eeriez*,

*Ils eeroient*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai reçu*, I have received.

Imperfect. *J'avois reçu*, I had received.

Preterite. *J'eus reçu*, I had received.

Future. *J'aurai reçu*, I shall, &c. have received.

Conditional. *J'aurois reçu*, I should, &c. have received.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Reç-ois*, receive thou.

*Qu'il oive*, let him receive.

## Plural.

*evons*, let us receive.

*eviez*, receive ye.

*Qu'ils oivent*, let them receive.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Que je reç-oive*, that I may receive or I receive.

*tu oives*,

*il oive*,

## Plural.

*nous evions*, that we may receive.

*vous eviez*,

*ils oivent*,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Que je reç-usse*, that I might receive, or I received.

*tu usses,*

*ilût,*

## Plural.

*'nous ussions*, that we might receive.

*vous ussiez,*

*ils ussent,*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie reçu*, that I may have received.

Preterite. *Que j'eusse reçu*, that I might have received.

*Recevoir des nouvelles de* To hear from somebody.  
*quelqu'un,*

After the same manner are conjugated seven verbs only: the following are excepted, being irregulars:

*Asseoir*, to sit down.

*Déchoir*, to decay.

*Falloir*, (verb impersonal,) to be needful.

*Mouvoir*, to move.

*Pleuvoir*, (v. imp.) to rain.

*Pouvoir*, to be able.

*Savoir*, to know.

*Valoir*, to be worth.

*Voir*, to see.

*Vouloir*, to be willing.

And their compounds.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES. I entertain great hopes from his  
*conc-evoir, v.* *espérance, f.*  
conduct. - - - I (am to) write to your brother to-  
*conduite, f.* \* *écrire, v.*  
morrow, to let him know that your father is  
*pour faire, v.* *lui savoir, v.*  
arrived. - - - A commander, (ought to,) be intrepid  
*commandant, m.* *d-evoir, v.\**

\* When the verb *to be to*, is used in the present or imperfect tenses of the indicative mood, and precedes another verb in the infinitive mood, denoting a futurity in the action, it is to be rendered in French by the same tenses of the verb *d-evoir*, and not by *être*: ex.

*Je dois aller au parc,*

*I am to go to the park.*

*Nous devons lui écrire,*

*We were to write to him.*

in the midst of dangers. - - - He (is to) go  
*au milieu, m.* *f.* *aller, v.*  
 and breakfast at my uncle's, next Sunday,  
*déjeuner, v.* *chez, p.*  
 and he (is to) come and sup with us. - - - We  
*venir, v.* *souper, v.*  
 \*sometimes entertain a hatred for persons who  
*quelquefois, adv.* *de la haine, f.*  
 deserve our friendship. - - - Do you not per-  
*mériter, v.* *amitié, f.* *a-*  
 ceive a mountain beyond that tree? - - Yes,  
*perc-evoir, v.* *derrière, p.*  
 I do. - - We (are to) remt him the value in  
*remettre, v.* *valeur, f.* *en, p.*  
 goods or in money, - - - Are you not to dine  
*marchandises*  
 with my father and mother to-morrow? - - Men com-  
*demain, adv.*  
 monly owe their virtues or their vices to edu-  
*d-evoir, v.*  
 cation (as much as) to nature. - - - Are these young  
*autant que, c.* *f.*  
 ladies to go to the ball? - - - No, they are not. - -  
*aller, v.* *bal, m.*  
 A young man (ought to) love the society of those who  
*société, f.*  
 are the most learned and modest.

IMP. I owed four guineas to your aunt when she  
*guinée*  
 died. - - - Was not your brother to receive that mo-  
*mourut, v.*  
 ney last<sup>2</sup> Thursday<sup>1</sup>? - - We received his tiresome  
*Jeudi, m.* *ennuyant, adj.*  
 visits, because we were obliged to it. - - - Were you  
*obliger, v.*  
 not to let<sup>3</sup> them<sup>2</sup> know<sup>4</sup> it<sup>1</sup> sooner? - - They were  
*faire, v.* *savoir, v.*  
 not to stay above six weeks.  
*rester, v.* *plus de, adv.*

\* See note page 32, and remember to place compound adverbs after the participles passive.



**Præf.** I received yesterday, with (a great deal)  
*bien,adv.*

of pleasure, the books you sent me. - - As soon  
*envoyer,v.*

as we perceived the danger, we warned him of it.  
*apercevoir avertir,v.*

- - - They heard\* yesterday from your brother,

**Fut.** I shall entertain a bad opinion of  
*conc-evoir mauvais,adj. f.*

you if you do not avoid Mr. R\*\*\*\*'s company. - - -  
*éviter,v.*

We shall owe him nothing more, after this  
*après,p.*

month. - - - I hope you will receive all my letters dur-  
*pendant,p.*  
 ing my absence, and they will hear\* from their  
*dant,p.*

father (in a short time.)  
*dans peu,adv.*

**COND.** I should answer your brother's  
*† répondre,v. à*

letter, but I have not time. - - - Ought not  
*le tems,m. †*

your sister to give your<sup>2</sup> mother<sup>3</sup> (an account<sup>1</sup>)  
*rendre,v. compte à,p.*

of all her actions? - - - She would soon per-  
*bientôt,adv.*

\* See the phrase following the verb *recevoir*.

† When the word *should* expresses a duty or necessity, or can with propriety be turned into *ought to*, it is rendered in French by the conditional present of the verb *devoir*: ex.

*Je devrois aller le voir, I should, or ought to go and see him.*  
*Vous devriez le secourir dans sa misère, &c. You should, or ought to help him in his misery, &c.*

The word *should*, or *ought*, when joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

*J'aurois dû l'obliger à rester ici, I should, or ought to have obliged him to stay here.*  
*Nous aurions dû revenir plutôt, We should, or ought to have come back sooner.*

ceive the danger, if she knew the consequences  
*savoir, v.*  
 of it. - - - Children should every day learn  
*apprendre, v.*  
 something by heart. - - - You should not despise  
*cœur, m.* *mépriser, v.*  
 the advice that he gives you. - - - Should they,  
*ais, m.*  
 after what they have done, expect to  
*après, p.* *fait, p. p.* *s'attendre, v.* à  
 receive favours? - - - Grammar, geography, history,  
 music, are sciences and arts which ladies should never  
 neglect.

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Receive this small present as a token of my  
*marque, f.*  
 friendship.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and PRET. Though I perceive ships  
*Quoique, c.* *vaisseau, m.*  
 (afar off,) I cannot distinguish them. - - - He  
*de loin, adv.* *ne saurois, v.*  
 wrote to us by the first post, so that we might  
*écrivit, v.* *ordinaire, m.* *afin que, c.*  
 receive his orders (in proper time.)  
*à tems, adv.*

### Mind these COMPOUND TENSES well!

I have not yet received his answer. - - -  
*encore, adv.* *réponse, f.*  
 You should have (been making) your theme this  
 \* *faire, v.*  
 morning instead of playing. - - He has entertained  
*malin, m.* *au lieu, p.*  
 the hope of living here all his life. - - - She ought  
*vivre, v.* *ici, adv.* *vie, f.* \*  
 to have thanked him for the good advice he  
*remercier, v.* *de, p.*

gave her. - - - When did you hear from your sister?  
 We have not heard from her since her de-  
*parture.* - - - Your uncle *depuis, p.* should not have obliged  
*part, m.* *oncle, m.* \*  
 him to pay half the expenses. - - - We should  
*à moitié, f.* *des frais, m.*  
 have owed him one hundred livres. - - I beg<sup>a</sup>  
*livre, f.* *demande, v.*  
 your<sup>a</sup> pardon, I ought not to have made you  
*vous* \* *faire, v.*  
 wait so long. - - - Ought not we to have  
*attendre, v.* *long-tems, adv.* \*  
 employed our time better than (we did.) - - -  
*employer, v.* *nous n'avons fait.*  
 You ought to have been less presumptuous.  
 \* *présomptueux, adj.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Vend- <i>re</i> , to sell.
Part. active.	<i>ant</i> , selling.
Part. passive.	<i>u, m.</i> <i>ue, f.</i> sold.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present. Singular.

*Je* vend-*s*, I sell, I do sell, or am selling.  
*Tu* vend-*s*,  
*Ils* vend,

## Plural.

*Nous* *ons*, we sell, &c.  
*Vous* *ez*,  
*Ils* *ent*,

## Imperfect. Singular.

*Je* vend-*ois*, I did sell, or was selling  
*Tu* *ois*,  
*Il* *oit*,

## Plural.

*Nous* vend-ions, we did sell, &c.

*Vous* iez,

*Ils* oient,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je* vend-is, I sold, or did sell.

*Tu* is,

*Il* it,

## Plural.

*Nous* îmes, we sold, &c.

*Vous* îtes,

*Ils* irent,

## Future. Singular.

*Je* vend-rai, I shall, or will sell.

*Tu* ras,

*Il* ra,

## Plural.

*Nous* rons, we shall, or will sell.

*Vous* rez,

*Ils* ront,

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je* vend-rois, I should, could, would, or might sell.

*Tu* rois,

*Il* roit,

## Plural.

*Nous* rions, we should, &c.

*Vous* riez,

*Ils* roient,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *J'ai vendu*, I have sold.

Imperfect. *J'avois vendu*, I had sold.

Preterite. *J'eus vendu*, I had sold.

Future. *J'aurai vendu*, I shall, &c. have sold.

Conditional. *J'aurois vendu*, I should, &c. have sold.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

Vend-*s*, sell thou.  
*Qu'il*        *e*, let him sell.

Plural.

*ons*, let us sell.  
*ez*, sell ye.  
*Qu'ils*        *ent*, let them sell.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je* vend-*e*, that I may sell, or I sell.  
*tu*        *es*,  
*il*        *e*,

Plural.

*nous*        *ions*, that we may sell.  
*vous*        *iez*,  
*ils*        *ent*,

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je* vend-*isse*, that I might sell, or I sold.  
*tu*        *isses*,  
*il*        *ît*,

Plural.

*nous*        *issions*, that we might sell.  
*vous*        *issiez*,  
*ils*        *issent*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Que j'aie vendu*, that I may have sold.Preterite. *Que j'eusse vendu*, that I might have sold.

After the same manner are conjugated about forty verbs. The following are excepted as being irregular.

*Absoudre*, to absolve.*Battre*, to beat.*Boire*, to drink.*Circoncire*, to circumcise.

*Conclure*, to conclude.  
*Conduire*, to conduct.  
 And all the verbs ending  
 in *uire*.

*Confire*, to preserve.  
*Connôître*, to know.  
 And all those ending in  
*ôître*,

*Coudre*, to sew.  
*Craindre*, to fear.  
 And all those ending in  
*indre*.

*Croire*, to believe.  
*Dire*, to tell.  
*Ecrire*, to write.  
*Faire*, to make, to do.  
*Frîre*, to fry.

*Lire*, to read.

*Mettre*, to put.

*Moudre*, to grind.

*Naître*, to be born.

*Pâître*, to graze, to feed.

*Plaire*, to please.

*Prendre*, to take.

*Rire*, to laugh.

*Suffire*, to suffice, to be  
 sufficient.

*Suivre*, to follow.

*Se taire*, to hold one's  
 tongue.

*Traire*, to milk.

*Vaincre*, to conquer.

*Vivre*, to live.

And their compounds.

*N. B.* Verbs of this conjugation, the root of which terminates in *p*, as *romp-re*, *corromp-re*, &c. take a *t* in the third person singular of the present tense, indicative mood: ex. *je romps*, *tu romps*, *il rompt*: the rest are conjugated à *vendre*.

## EXERCISES ON THIS CONJUGATION.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** I do not mean                      to wrong  
    *prétend-re, v.*                      *faire tort, v.*  
 him. - - - Is your mother coming down? - - - We  
*lui, pro.*    *descend-re, v.*  
 expect                      our friend, Mr. A\*\*\*. - - - Do not you  
*attend-re, v.*  
 forbid                      her to go                      there? - - - They sell  
*défend-re, v.*                      *de aller, v.*  
 bad                      fruit.  
*mauvais, adj.*

**IMP.** Did I not interrupt                      him, while  
    *interromp-re, v.*                      *pendant que, c.*

he was answering them? - - - She was melting into  
*répond-re, v.* *leur* *fond-re, v. en, p.*  
 tears, when you arrived. - - Were we not losing  
*larme,* *arriver, v.* *perdre, v.*  
 our time? - - You were not spreading your nets. - -  
*temps, m.* *étend-re, v.* *filet, m.*  
 Did they corrupt our manners?  
*corromp-re, v.* *mœurs, f. pl.*

PRÉT. (As soon as) I had received my money, I  
*Dès que, c.*  
 returned them what they had lent me. - - - Did  
*rend-re, v.* *prêter, v.*  
 he not hear you? - - - We (waited for) them a  
*entend-re, v.* *attend-re, v.*  
 month. - - (For how much) did you sell it to them? - -  
*mois, m.* *Combien, adv.*  
 They spilled all the wine.  
*répand-re, v.*

FUT. I shall shear my flock (in the)  
*tond-re, v.* *troupeau, m.* *au*  
 month of May. - - - If you do not take care,  
*Mai.* *prenez, v.* *garde,*  
 the dog will bite you. - - Shall we not lose, if  
*mord-re, v.*  
 we play? - - You will melt it, if you put  
*fond-re, v.* *mettez, v.*  
 it into the fire. No, I will not. - - They<sup>1</sup> shall<sup>3</sup> not<sup>2</sup>  
*dans, p.*  
 hear<sup>3</sup> of<sup>8</sup> me<sup>7</sup> (any<sup>4</sup> more).  
*entend-re parler, v.* *plus, adv.*

COND. Should I not do him the jus-  
*rend-re, v.*  
 tice he deserves? - - Would he not interrupt you? - -  
*mériter, v.*  
 We would defend them if we could. - - Why  
*défend-re, v.* *pouvions, v.*  
 would you not answer, if I were speaking to  
*répond-re, v.*

you? - - - Your hens would (lay eggs) every day, if  
*poule, f. pond-re, v.*  
 they were not so fat.  
*gras, adj.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Give God thanks. - - - Let her not come  
*Rend-re, v. Dieu, grâce à*  
 down. - - Let us (give in) our accounts faith-  
*rend-re, v. compte, m. fidèle-*  
 fully. - - - Do not lose my book. - - - Let them hear  
*ment, adv.*  
 the voice of the Lord.  
*voix, f. Seigneur, m.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. and PRET. Speak loud, that I may hear  
*haut, adv.*  
 what you say. - - She plays (upon the) harpsichord,  
*dites, v. du clavecin, m.*  
 though you forbid her to do it. - - -  
*quoique, c. lui de faire, v.*  
 He wrote to us, that we might not expect him.  
*écrivit, v.*

### COMPOUND TENSES.

I have lost my book; have you found  
*perd-re, v. trouver, v.*  
 it? - - - She has broken her fan. - - - Have you  
*romp-re, v. éventail, m.*  
 not interrupted me several times? - - - I had not  
 then answered his letter. - - - If they (had  
*alors, adv. à étoient*  
 gone) there, would they not have lost their time?  
*allés, p. p.*  
 Yes, they would. - - He says he would have sold us  
*dit, v.*  
 very good wine. - - - Had you not forbidden her to  
*de*  
 speak? - - That they might have (waited for) us.



# Recapitulatory EXERCISES on the regular verbs of the four CONJUGATIONS.

(Review before you write.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PRES.** I love attentive scholars, but I punish  
*attentif, adj. écolier, m. mais, c.*  
 severely laziness and inattention. - - Your  
*sévèrement, adv. paresse, f.*  
 brother does not receive this news with plea-  
*nouvelle, f.*  
 sure. - - Do we not expect your mother to-day? - -  
*mère, f.*  
 We hope (that) you will succeed in your un-  
*espérer, v.*  
 dertaking. - - Why do you not fulfil  
*Pourquoi, adv. accomplir, v.*  
 your promise? - - Are you to expect the least  
*promesse, f.*  
 favour from your parents and friends? - - They per-  
*grâce, f.*  
 ceive the danger, and they do not endeavour  
*percevoir, v. tâcher, v.*  
 to shun it.  
*de éviter, v.*

**IMP.** I was speaking of your aunt when you  
*tante, f.*  
 (came in), and was doing her the justice she  
*entrer, v. rendre, v. lui*  
 deserves. - - Mr. N. did not act towards your  
*mériter, v. agir, v. envers, p.*  
 son with much tenderness. - - Mr. P. and I were  
*fils, m. tendresse.*  
 answering your letters when you arrived. - - You  
*arriver, v.*  
 undoubtedly entertained great hopes from his  
*sans doute, adv. concevoir, v.*  
 last voyage. - - They were spending their  
*dernier, adj. dépenser, v.*

money in trifles, instead of buying  
*en, p. bagatelle, au lieu de, adv. acheter, v.*  
 books.

PRET. I built this house in one thousand seven  
*maison, f.*  
 hundred and seventy-nine. - - Your father yesterday  
*hier, adv.*  
 received agreeable news. - - She burst into tears  
*fondre, v. en*  
 after your cousin was gone. - - We sent him  
*après que, c. parti, p. p.*  
 (a great deal) of money unknown to your mo-  
*à l'insu, p. de*  
 ther. - - Why did you not finish your work soon-  
*ouvrage, m.*  
 er? - - (As soon as) they perceived us, they (ran  
*Dès que, c. prirent la*  
 away.)  
*fuite.*

FUT. I will (give in) my accounts (at the) be-  
*au*  
 ginning of next week. - - - My friend,  
*prochain, adj. semaine, f. amie,*  
 Mrs. R. will dine with me next Wednesday. - - We  
*Mme Mercredi, m.*  
 shall seize the first opportunity to thank him  
*saisir, v. occasion, f. pour remercier, v.*  
 for his kindness. - - You will soon entertain  
*de bonté, f. bientôt, adv.*  
 a better opinion of him. - - Will not your sister  
*sœur, f.*  
 (come down stairs) to day?  
*descendre, v.*

COND. I would lay two guineas, that your  
*gager, v.*  
 uncle is not yet arrived. - - If my father were rich, he  
*arriver, v. étoit*

would rebuild his country-house. - - Should we not  
*rebâtir, v.* *Devoir, v.*  
 express our gratitude toward those who  
*exprimer, v.* *reconnaissance, f.* *envers, p.*  
 do us good? - - If you would, you could rep-  
*font, v.* *bien, m.* *vouliez, v.* *ren-*  
 der great services to your country. - - - I am cer-  
*dre, v.* *f.* *pays, m.*  
 tain (that) they would reward you, if you  
*récompenser, v.*  
 deserved it.  
*mériter, v.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Discharge with equity the duties of your  
*Remplir, v.* *équité* *devoir, m.*  
 office. - - - Let him receive the punishment due  
*charge, f.* *punition, f.* *dû, p. p.*  
 to his crime. - - Let us give "God thanks" for the  
*rendre, v.* *grâce à de*  
 good news we received yesterday. - - Imitate the great  
*hier, adv.*  
 actions of your ancestors. - - Let them enjoy the  
*ancêtres, m.* *jouir, v. de*  
 fruit of their labours.  
*travail, m.*

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Write to me by the first post,  
*Ecrivez, v.* *ordinaire, m.*  
 that I may receive your letter before my de-  
*afin que, c.* *avant, p.* *dé-*  
 parture from London. - - He does not understand you,  
*part, m.* *comprendre, v.*  
 though he hear what you say. - - -  
*quoique, c.* *entendre, v. subj.* *dites, v.*  
 She is never pleased, though we obey her in  
*content, adj.* *lui en, p.*  
 (every thing). - - - I will tell it to you, pro-  
*tout* *dirai, v.* *pour*

vided                      you do not speak of it to your sister. - - -  
*vu que, c.*

He will pay them, provided they wait                      a little  
*attendre, v.*

longer.  
*plus long-temps, adv.*

PRET. I wrote                      to your father (some time ago),  
*écrivis, v.*                      *il y a quelque temps*

that                      he might engage Mr. W. to come and  
*afin que, c.*

spend                      the holidays with us. - - - That she might  
*passer, v.*                      *vacance, f.*

reflect on her own                      conduct, and not on that of  
*propre, adj.*

others. - - He would not come to see us, lest

*voulut, v.*                      *de peur que, c.*  
 we should perceive his bad designs. - - Your uncle

*ne*                      *oncle, m.*  
 ordered                      that you should sell his two horses to

*ordonner, v.*

Mr. B. - I should be very sorry if                      they fell  
*que, c.*                      *tomber, v. subj.*

into bad hands.  
*en*

### Promiscuous EXERCISES on the COMPOUND TENSES.

I have spoken to my father of it, but he has not  
 yet                      given me any answer. - - Have I not faith-  
*encore, adv.*                      *de*

fully executed your orders? - - Has your sister suc-  
 ceeded in her undertaking? - - Yes, she has, and I  
 have congratulated her (upon it.) - - We have not yet re-  
*féliciter, v.*                      *en*

ceived any remittance from America. - - Mrs. N. told  
*remise,*

me you had already sold the half                      of your  
*déjà, adv.*                      *moitié, f.*

goods. - - - Why did you not pay those poor  
*marchandises.*  
 people? - - - He would have been punished, if  
*gens, m. et, f. pl.*  
 I had not defended his right. - - - They have sold  
*droit, m.*  
 him four dozen of handkerchiefs at an exorbitant  
*mouchoir, à*  
 price, but they have warranted them fine and  
*prix, m. garantir, v. fin*  
 well worked. - - - We thought you would have  
*travailler, v. croyions, v.*  
 brought your brother with you. - - - Have we not  
*frère*  
 been obliged to (wait for) Miss A.? - - - If you had  
*de attendre, v.*  
 trusted them with your goods, they would have  
*confier, v. leur in marchandise*  
 stolen the greatest part of them. - - It is for  
*partie, f. Ce, pro.*  
 that reason that my father has not (thought fit)  
*juger, v. à-propos*  
 to send them to you. - - - Mr. D. had represented to  
 him all the danger of it. - - Mrs. F. has gained her  
*gagner, v.*  
 cause, but she has lost all her wealth. - - Had I  
*perdre, v. bien, m.*  
 not finished my work when she came in? - -  
*ouvrage, m. entrer, v.*  
 You would have received your money (a month ago),  
*il y a un mois*  
 if the mail had not been robbed. - - Mrs. P. told me  
*malle, f. voler, p. p.*  
 she would have paid you (some time ago,) if she  
*il y a quelque temps,*  
 had sold her goods.

## CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VERBS.

Verbs passive are very easily conjugated ; it requires only that the participle passive of the verb, which is to be conjugated, be joined to the auxiliary verb *être*, to ~~be~~, through all its moods, tenses, numbers, and persons. It is to be observed, that in French the participle passive varies according to the gender and number of the noun or pronoun, which stands as the nominative to the verb : *ex.*

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>être</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , to be loved.
<i>être</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , to be punished.
<i>étant</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , being loved.
<i>étant</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , being punished.
<i>avoir été</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , to have been loved.
<i>avoir été</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , to have been punished.
<i>ayant été</i>	aim-é,	<i>ée</i> , having been loved.
<i>ayant été</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , having been punished.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	M.	F.
<i>Je suis</i>	am-é	<i>ée</i> , &c. I am loved.
<i>Je suis</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , &c. I am punished.
Plural.		
<i>Nous sommes</i>	aim-és,	<i>ées</i> , &c. we are loved.
<i>Nous sommes</i>	pun-is,	<i>ies</i> , &c. we are punished.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

	M.	F.
<i>Pai été</i>	pardonn-é,	<i>ée</i> , I have been forgiven.
<i>Pai été</i>	pun-i,	<i>ie</i> , I have been punished.
<i>Nous avons été</i>	aim-és,	<i>ées</i> , We have been loved, &c.

### OF NEUTER VERBS.

The conjugations of the above verbs are, like all others, distinguished by their terminations, and conjugated in the same manner,

Learners may easily know a neuter verb from an active one; because the latter generally has, or can always have, a direct case after it; whereas the neuter verb never has, nor can have, but an indirect case: for instance,

*Dormir*, to sleep,  
*Venir*, to come,  
*Voyager*, to travel,

are neuter verbs; because we cannot say,

*Dormir une maison*, to sleep a house.  
*Venir un livre*, to come a book.  
*Voyager la chambre*, to travel the room, &c.

In the same manner,

*Jouir*, to enjoy,  
*Profiter*, to profit by, to take advantage of,  
*Parvenir*, to attain, to reach,

are neuter verbs, because they can only govern an indirect case: ex.

*Jouir d'une grande réputation*, To enjoy a great reputation.  
*Profiter du tems*, To take advantage of the weather.  
*Parvenir à son but*, To attain one's end.

As it is impossible for the neuter verbs to govern an absolute case, it follows that every verb of this kind, which governs an absolute case, can no longer be looked upon as a neuter: ex.

*Pleurer*, to weep, to bewail,  
*Sortir*, to go out,  
*Monter*, to go up, or come up,  
*Plaider*, &c. to plead,

are neuter verbs, but become active when they govern any object in the absolute case, or accusative: ex.

*Elle pleure ses péchés*, She bewails her sins.  
*Sortez ce cheval*, Bring out that horse.  
*Il plaida sa cause lui-même*, He himself pleaded his cause,

But there are some neuter verbs which can never have an active signification, and which we are obliged to conjugate with the verb *faire*, when we wish to express an action passing from the subject who acts : ex.

*Ferai-je bouillir ou rôtir* Shall I boil or roast that  
*cette viande ?* meat ?  
*Faites-la bouillir,* Boil it.

Some of the neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have ; others with the verb *être*, to be.

The general rule to know what neuter verbs conjugate their compound tenses with the auxiliary *avoir*, and which are the others that are conjugated with the verb *être*, is to pay attention to the participle passive of the neuter verb which is conjugated.

If this participle be declinable, that is, if it can be applied to a man or a woman, or any other animated object, the compounds of its verbs are conjugated with the verb *être* : ex.

<i>Arriver</i> , to arrive,	<i>Tomber</i> , to fall,
<i>Mourir</i> , to die,	<i>Venir</i> , to come, &c.
<i>Naître</i> , to be born,	

take the auxiliary verb, *être* ; because we can say,

<i>Un homme arrivé</i> ,	a man ( <i>who is</i> ) arrived,
<i>Une femme morte</i> ,	a woman dead.
<i>Un enfant né</i> ,	a child born.
<i>Un cheval tombé</i> , &c.	a horse fallen.

If, on the contrary, the participle be indeclinable, that is, if it cannot be said of any animate object, the compound tenses of that verb must be conjugated with the verb *avoir* : ex.

<i>Dormir</i> , to sleep,	<i>Régner</i> , to reign,
<i>Languir</i> , to languish, to linger.	<i>Vivre</i> , to live, &c.

take the auxiliary verb *avoir* ; because we cannot say,



<i>Un homme dormi,</i>	a man slept, (part. pass.)
<i>Une femme languie,</i>	a woman languished, or lingered.
<i>Un enfant régné,</i>	a child reigned.
<i>-Un cheval vécu, &amp;c.</i>	a horse lived.

The verb *courir* is in the last class, when it signifies the rapid motion of the body, moving in a certain direction with all the swiftness of its legs ; as we cannot, in this sense, say,

<i>Un homme couru,</i>	a man run, (part. pass.)
<i>Une femme courue,</i>	a woman run,

nor *je suis couru, j'étois couru, &c.* but *j'ai couru, j'avois couru, &c.*

When we say in French, *un homme couru, une femme courue*, we mean a man or woman much sought after, a person or thing we are very eager to see or hear : ex.

*Ce prédicateur est fort couru ;*  
*Cette danseuse est fort courue ;*

that is, people are very eager to hear that preacher, to see that dancer.

In the above general rule are not included some neuter verbs, which sometimes take the auxiliary *avoir*, and sometimes the auxiliary *être* ; these are,

<i>Monter</i> , to go or come up.	<i>Demeurer</i> , to live, to dwell.
<i>Descendre</i> , to go or come down.	<i>Périr</i> , to perish.
<i>Sortir</i> , to go out.	<i>Passer</i> , to pass, to go by.
<i>Rester</i> , to stay, to remain.	<i>Echapper</i> , to escape.

*Monter* and *descendre* often govern an absolute regimen ; in which case they are considered as active verbs, and conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir* : ex.

<i>J'ai monté les degrés,</i>	<i>I have ascended the stairs,</i> <i>or gone up the stairs.</i>
<i>Nous avons descendu la montagne,</i>	<i>We have come down the mountain.</i>

When the above verbs are employed without regimen, their compounds are conjugated with *être*: ex.

<i>Je suis descendu,</i>	I am down.
<i>Elle est déjà montée,</i>	She is up already.

*Sortir*, is conjugated with the verb *être*, when it signifies to quit, to leave the place wherein one was dwelling, or living; but it is conjugated with the verb *avoir*, when we wish to convey the idea that we have been from home, and that we are come back again: ex.

<i>Il est sorti de prison,</i>	He is out of prison.
<i>J'ai sorti ce matin à dix heures,</i>	I went out this morning at ten o'clock.
<i>Avez-vous sorti ce matin?</i>	Did you go out this morning?
<i>Nous n'avons pas sorti de tout le jour,</i>	We have not been out all day.
<i>Le roi n'a pas sorti de sa chambre,</i>	The king has not been out of his room.

*Demeurer* and *rester* take the auxiliary *avoir*, when we mean that we were, but are no longer, in a place: ex.

<i>J'ai demeuré deux ans à la campagne,</i>	I lived two years in the country.
<i>Il a resté vingt ans à Rome,</i>	He resided twenty years at Rome.

On the contrary, they take the auxiliary *être*, while the person or persons are still in a place: ex.

<i>Il est demeuré à Londres pour y solliciter un évêché,</i>	He has remained in London to solicit a bishopric.
<i>Nous sommes restés à York pour y finir nos affaires,</i>	We have tarried at York to conclude our affairs.

*Périr* indifferently takes either the auxiliary *avoir* or *être*: ex.

<i>Il est péri deux vaisseaux</i>	Two ships have been lost
<i>sur mer,</i>	at sea.
<i>Trois hommes ont péri par</i>	Three men have perished
<i>cette tempête,</i>	by this storm.
<i>La plupart des équipages</i>	Most of the crews perished
<i>sont périés dans les ondes,</i>	in the waves, the rest
<i>le reste est péri de mi-</i>	perished through mis-
<i>sère,</i>	ery.

It seems, however, that the auxiliary *avoir* is more generally used.

*Passer* sometimes governs an indirect case, or is immediately followed by the preposition *par*, or some other, attended by a noun or pronoun; in which case its compounds are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *avoir*, whether it be used in its proper signification or in a figurative sense: ex.

<i>Le roi a passé par Ken-</i>	The king went through
<i>ington pour aller à</i>	Kensington to go to
<i>Windsor,</i>	Windsor.
<i>Nous avons passé devant</i>	We went by the church.
<i>l'église,</i>	
<i>Elle a passé près du parc</i>	She went by St. James'
<i>de St. Jâques,</i>	Park.
<i>La couronne de Naples a</i>	The crown of Naples
<i>passé dans la maison de</i>	passed to the house of
<i>Bourbon,</i>	Bourbon.

In all other cases, *passer* takes the auxiliary *être*:  
ex.

<i>Le roi est passé, vous ne</i>	The king is gone by, you
<i>sauriez le voir,</i>	cannot see him.
<i>Le beau temps est passé,</i>	The fine weather is over.
<i>Vos chagrins sont passés,</i>	Your sorrows are over.

We sometimes say, *ce mot est passé*, when we mean that it is no longer in use; but when we say, *ce mot a passé*, we understand *has passed into the language*, which signifies that it has been received or adopted.

*Passer* is often a reflected passive verb, then its compound tenses follow the rule of the reflective verbs.

*Passer*, in several cases, becomes an active verb, and governs an absolute case: ex.

<i>Passez cela sur le feu,</i>	Pass that over the fire.
<i>Les ennemis ont passé la</i>	The enemies have crossed
<i>rivière,</i>	the river.
<i>Passer l'épée au travers du</i>	To run one through the
<i>corps,</i>	body.

*Echapper* has two significations: sometimes it is used in the sense of *éviter*, to avoid, when it is conjugated with the auxiliary *avoir*, and governs the dative case; sometimes it signifies to come or go out by force or stratagem from a place in which one was confined or shut up; in this case it takes the verb *être* for auxiliary: ex.

<i>Vous avez échappé, là à un</i>	You have escaped a great
<i>grand danger,</i>	danger.
<i>Il a échappé à la mort,</i>	He has escaped death.
<i>Ils sont échappés de leur</i>	They have escaped from
<i>prison, or,</i>	their prison, or, made
<i>Ils se sont échappés de leur</i>	their escape.
<i>prison,</i>	
<i>On la tenoit depuis quel-</i>	They had her for some
<i>ques jours, mais elle est</i>	days, but she has es-
<i>échappée, or, elle s'est</i>	caped, or, made her
<i>échappée,</i>	escape.

N. B. Exercises on the neuter verbs will be found among the irregular, whenever they occur.

## REFLECTED VERBS.

We call *reflected*, or *reflective*, a verb whose subject and object are the same person or thing; so that the subject that acts, acts upon itself, and is at the same time the agent and the object of the action: ex.

<i>Je me connois,</i>	<i>I know myself,</i>
<i>Tu te louches,</i>	<i>Thou praisest thyself</i>
<i>Il se blesse,</i>	<i>He wounds himself,</i>
<i>Nous nous chauffons,</i>	<i>We warm ourselves,</i>

are reflected verbs, because it is I who know, and who am known; thou who praisest and who art praised: he who wounds and who is wounded, &c.

In order to express the relation of the nominative to the verb with its regimen or object, we always make use of the conjunctive pronouns, *me, te, se, myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself*, for the singular; *nous, vous, se, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*, for the plural. But it frequently happens, that in *English*, the second pronoun is implied, though it must be expressed in *French*: ex.

<i>Je me souviens,</i>	<i>I remember.</i>
<i>Elle ne veut pas se marier,</i>	<i>She will not marry.</i>
<i>Nous nous plaignons, &amp;c.</i>	<i>We complain, &amp;c.</i>

The reflected verbs may be divided in the following manner, viz.

<i>Verbes réfléchis par la signification,</i>	<i>Verbs reflective by signification.</i>
<i>Verbes réfléchis par l'expression,</i>	<i>Verbs reflective by expression.</i>
<i>Verbes réfléchis directs,</i>	<i>Verbs reflective direct.</i>
<i>Verbes réfléchis indirects,</i>	<i>Verbs reflective indirect.</i>
<i>Verbes réfléchis passifs,</i>	<i>Verbs reflective passive.</i>

A verb reflected by signification is properly a verb wherein the person or thing that acts, is at the same time the object of the action: ex.

<i>Je me chauffe,</i>	<i>I warm myself.</i>
<i>Elle se blesse,</i>	<i>She wounds herself, &amp;c.</i>

A verb is reflective by expression when we add to it the double pronoun, without the person or thing that acts being the object of the action: such as,

<i>Je me repens,</i>	<i>I repent,</i>
<i>Il s'en va,</i>	<i>He is going away,</i>
<i>Elle se meurt,</i>	<i>She is dying,</i>
<i>Nous nous apercevons de</i>	<i>We perceive our error,</i>
<i>notre erreur,</i>	

which merely signify *Je suis repentant, il va, elle meurt, nous apercevons notre erreur.*

When the conjunctive pronoun is the objective case of the verb reflective by expression, we say it is a *verb reflective direct*; when the same conjunctive pronoun is the indirect regimen, (that is, governed in the dative case), we call it *reflective indirect*: thus,

<i>Je me flatte,</i>	<i>I flatter myself,</i>
<i>Tu te vantes,</i>	<i>Thou boastest,</i>
<i>Il se félicite,</i>	<i>He congratulates himself,</i>
	<i>&amp;c.</i>

are verbs *reflective direct*.—On the contrary,

<i>Il se donne des louanges,</i>	<i>He gives himself praise,</i>
<i>Nous nous promettons un</i>	<i>We promise ourselves good</i>
<i>bon succès,</i>	<i>success,</i>
<i>Vous vous arrachez une</i>	<i>You draw one of your</i>
<i>dent,</i>	<i>teeth,</i>

are verbs *reflective indirect*, because it is as if we said, *Il donne des louanges à soi, Nous promettons un bon succès à nous, Vous arrachez une dent à vous, &c.*

*Verb reflective passive.* This verb is so called, because it not only expresses a passive sense, but that sense can only be rendered by a passive verb: ex.

<i>Cela se voit tous les jours,</i>	<i>That is seen every day.</i>
<i>Cela ne se dit point,</i>	<i>That is not said.</i>
<i>Ce livre se vend bien,</i>	<i>That book sells well.</i>
<i>Ce bruit se répand,</i>	<i>That rumour is spread.</i>
<i>Ces fruits se mangent en</i>	<i>These fruits are eaten in</i>
<i>hiver,</i>	<i>winter.</i>

*Cet homme s'est trouvé innocent du crime dont on l'accusait,*      That man has been found innocent of the crime with which he was accused.

It is as if there were *cela est vu tous les jours, cela n'est point dit*, &c. which exactly correspond with the idiom of the English language.

This last verb is of great use in the French language, because, as it has been observed before, there are properly no passive verbs in that language, and we are often obliged to supply the want of them by the above verb, or by the pronoun general *on*, to avoid ambiguity or false sense: if, for instance, instead of saying, *ces fruits se mangent en hiver*, ou, *on mange ces fruits en hiver*, I said, *ces fruits sont mangés en hiver*, one might understand that those fruits are already eaten; whereas, I only wish to express the proper season for eating those fruits.

Some authors call *réci-proque*, reciprocal, all those reflected verbs; but this denomination to me has appeared insufficient to determine accurately the nature and use of these verbs. Others limit the reciprocal verb to signify what two persons or two things reciprocally do to each other: thus,

<i>Pierre et Jean se battent,</i>	Peter and John are fighting, or beating each other,
<i>Paul et Robert s'aiment,</i>	Paul and Robert love each other,
<i>Le feu et l'eau se détruisent,</i>	Fire and water destroy each other,

are reciprocal verbs, because it is as if we said, *Pierre et Jean se battent réciproquement l'un l'autre, Paul et Robert s'aiment réciproquement l'un l'autre*.

This distinction of the reciprocal verbs may be adopted, observing at the same time, that we often

prefix the preposition *entre* to the verb, the better to express the reciprocity : ex.

<i>Pierre et Jean s'entr'aiment,</i>	Peter and John love each other.
<i>Ils s'entrelovent,</i>	They praise each other.
<i>Elles s'entrehaïssent,</i>	They hate each other.
<i>Le feu et l'eau s'entredétruisent, &amp;c.</i>	Fire and water destroy each other.

All the reflected and reciprocal verbs, without exception, are conjugated with the auxiliary verb *être* ; hence it may be supposed how much French people are shocked to hear any one, who has learned that language, say,

<i>Je m'ai acheté un cheval,</i>	I bought myself a horse ;
<i>Je m'avois blessé,</i>	I had hurt myself ;
<i>Il s'a fait mal,</i>	He has hurt himself ;
<i>Elle s'avoit moqué de moi,</i>	She had laughed at me ;
&c.	

expressions too commonly made use of by many English people, who speak without knowledge of the principles of the language ; whereas we must say,

<i>Je me suis acheté un cheval,</i>	We have inquired.
<i>Je m'étois blessé,</i>	They have walked.
<i>Il s'est fait mal,</i>	Strange things have happened since your departure.
<i>Elle s'étoit moquée de moi,</i>	
<i>Nous nous sommes informés,</i>	
<i>Ils se sont promenés,</i>	
<i>Il s'est passé d'étranges choses depuis votre départ,</i>	
<i>Il s'est passé bien des années depuis que j'ai ouï parler de cette affaire,</i>	Many years have elapsed since I heard of that affair.

It must be owned, that in the compounds of most part of these verbs, the verb *être* is but the substitute of the verb *avoir* ; but it is impossible to use *avoir* as auxiliary to a verb which has for its objective case a conjunctive pronoun that relates to the principle of the



action of that verb, and which precedes the auxiliary ; for, though we say,

*Il a voulu se tuer,*      He would kill *himself*;

yet, if we change the place of the pronoun, we must say, *Il s'est voulu tuer*, which is the idiom of the language.

## CONJUGATION OF THE REFLECTED VERBS.

The conjugation of the following verb may serve as a model for all the reflected or reciprocal verbs, of the four conjugations.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Se promener</i> , to walk.
Part. act.	<i>Se promenant</i> , walking.
	M. Sing. F.
Part. pass.	<i>promen-é, ée</i> , walked.
	M. Plural. F.
Part. pass.	<i>promen-és, ées</i> , walked.

### COMPOUND TENSES.

Pres.	<i>S'être promené</i> , to have walked.
Past.	<i>S'étant promené</i> , having walked.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### Present. Singular.

*Je me promène*, I walk, or do walk, or am walking.  
*Tu te promènes*,  
*Il se promène*,

#### Plural.

*Nous nous promenons*, we walk, do walk, or are &c.  
*Vous vous promenez*,  
*Ils se promènent*,

#### Imperfect. Singular.

*Je me promenois*, I did walk, or walked, or was walking.  
*Tu te promenois*,  
*Il se promenoit*,

## Plural.

*Nous nous promenions*, we did walk, walked, or were walking.  
*Vous vous promeniez*,  
*Ils se promenoient*,

## Preterite. Singular.

*Je me promenai*, I did walk, or walked.  
*Tu te promenâs*,  
*Il se promena*,

## Plural.

*Nous nous promenâmes*, we did walk, or walked.  
*Vous vous promenâtes*,  
*Ils se promenèrent*,

## Future. Singular.

*Je me promènerai*, I shall, or will walk.  
*Tu te promèneras*,  
*Il se promènera*,

## Plural.

*Nous nous promènerons*, we shall, or will walk.  
*Vous vous promènerez*,  
*Ils se promèneront*,

## Conditional. Singular.

*Je me promènerois*, I would, should, or could walk.  
*Tu te promènerois*,  
*Il se promèneroit*,

## Plural.

*Nous nous promènerions*, we would, should, &c. walk.  
*Vous vous promèneriez*,  
*Ils se promèneroient*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

Present. *Je me suis promen-é, ée*, I have walked.  
 Imperfect. *Je m'étois promen-é, ée*, I had walked.  
 Preterite. *Je me fus promen-é, ée*, I had walked.  
 Future. *Je me serai promen-é, ée*, I shall or will have walked.  
 Conditional. *Je me serois promen-é, ée*, I should, &c. have walked,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Promène-toi\**, walk thou.*Qu'il se promène*, let him walk.

Plural.

*Promenons-nous\**, let us walk.*Promenez-vous\**, walk ye.*Qu'ils se promènent*, let them walk.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. Singular.

*Que je me promène*, that I may walk.*tu te promènes*,*il se promène*,

Plural.

*nous nous promenions*, that we may walk.*vous vous promeniez*,*ils se promènent*,

Preterite. Singular.

*Que je me promenasse*, that I might walk.*tu te promenasses*,*il se promenât*,

Plural.

*nous nous promenassions*, that we might walk.*vous vous promenassiez*,*ils se promenassent*,

## COMPOUND TENSES.

M. F.

Present. *Que je me sois promen-é, ée*, that I may have walked.Preterite. *Que je me fusse promen-é, ée*, that I might have walked.

The learner may here be again reminded, that it is

\* When the verb is conjugated with a negation, these three pronouns are put before the verb; ex. *ne vous promenez pas*, do not walk; and *toi* is changed into *te*: *ne te promène pas*.

necessary to conjugate this verb with a negation and interrogation: ex.

*Je ne me promène pas,*

*Vous promenez-vous ?*

*Ne se promène-t-il pas ?*

I do not walk.

Do you walk ?

Does he not walk ?

### COMPOUND TENSES.

*Me suis-je promené ?*

*Ne vous êtes-vous pas  
chauffé ?*

*Mon cousin s'est-il infor-  
mé ?*

*Votre frère ne s'est-il pas  
repenti ?*

Have I walked ? or did I  
walk ?

Have you not warmed  
yourself ? or did you  
not warm yourself ?

Has my cousin inquired ?  
or did my cousin in-  
quire ?

Has not your brother re-  
penté ? or did not your  
brother repent ?

We say in French,

*Se promener à cheval, en  
carrosse,*

*Se promener sur l'eau, sur  
la rivière,*

To take a ride, an air-  
ing on horseback, in a  
coach.

To go upon the water, on  
the river.

### EXERCISES UPON THE REFLECTED VERBS.

N. B. Verbs marked thus \* are irregular: see the irregular verbs alphabetically arranged under each conjugation.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	I rise	(early)	every
	<i>Se lever, v.</i>	<i>de bonne heure, adv.</i>	<i>tous les</i>
morning.	Does not your brother remember		
<i>matin, m. pl.</i>	<i>se ressouvenir, v.*</i>		
to have seen	me ?	- - My sister	is not well, she
<i>de vu, p. p.</i>		<i>sœur, f. †</i>	<i>se porter,</i>

† When we mean to express the state of a person's health, instead of the verb *être*, we must use the reflected one *se porter*:

*Ma sœur ne se porte pas bien,*

My sister is not well.

applies herself (too much) to study. - - - We  
*s'appliquer, v. trop, adv.*  
 rejoice at the good news (which) he has brought  
*se réjouir, v. de nouvelle, f. apporté, p.p.*  
 us. - - When do you intend to go and see  
*se proposer, v. de aller, v. en voir, v.*  
 Mrs. H. † - - Do you not repent what you  
*se repentir, v.\* de*  
 have done to her? - - I believe your brothers  
*croire, v.\**  
 are not well; for I have not seen them this  
*fail, p.p. car, c. ou, tp.p.*  
 week.  
*semaine, f.*

Imp. I was riding on horseback in the park,  
*se promener, v. parc, m.*  
 when I met him. - - Was he not warm-  
*quand, c. rencontrer, v. se chauff-*  
 ing himself when you (came in)? - - We did not  
*fer, v. entrer, v.*  
 imagine he would succeed so well. - - You were  
*s'imaginer, v. réussir, v.*  
 boasting (too much) of what you have done for  
*se vanter, v. trop fail, p.p.*  
 him. - - They did not expect that they should  
*s'attendre, v. à en en*  
 meet us.

PRET. I inquired after you yesterday. - - -  
*s'informer, v. de hier, adv.*  
 Did not my son behave well in the last  
*se comporter, v. dernier, adj.*  
 war? - - Corn was sold yesterday for twelve shil-  
*guerre, f. se vendre, v. en*  
 lings a bushel. - - We saw ourselves surrounded by  
*se voir, v.\* entouré, p.p.*  
 more than twenty persons in an instant. - - Did you  
*en, p.*

not find yourselves obliged to go  
*se trouver, v.* *obligé, p. p.* *de aller, v.*  
 there? - - They did not stop one minute.  
*s'arrêter, v.*

FUT. I will not complain of you, if you  
*se plaindre, v. \**  
 promise me to behave better. - - Will your  
*promettre, v. \** *de* *mieux, adv.*  
 bird (grow tame)? - - Shall we submit our-  
*oiseau, m.* *s'apprivoiser, v.* *se soumettre, v. \**  
 selves to his judgment. - - You will ruin your-  
*jugement, m.* *se ruiner, v.*  
 selves if you continue (gaming). - - Will they not  
*continuer, v.* *de jouer, v.*  
 perceive it (as soon as) they come into the  
*s'apercevoir, v.* *en dès que, c.* *entrer, v. fut.*  
 room?

COND. If I were in your place, I would  
*étais* *à*  
 not vex myself. - - - Would she not (make her  
*se chagriner, v.* *s'échap-*  
 escape)? - - We would embark (this day)  
*per, v.* *s'embarquer, v.* *aujourd'hui, adv.*  
 if the weather (would permit). - - Would you embark so  
*temps, m.* *le permettoit, v.*  
 soon? - - Why would you expose yourselves to their  
*tôt, adv.* *s'exposer, v.*  
 fury? - - They would agree very well,  
*fureur, f.* *s'accorder, v.* *bien, adv.*  
 if they were not so proud.  
*orgueilleux, adj.*

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

I give you leave to go out, but  
*donner, v.* *permission* *de sortir, v. mais, c.*  
 do not overheat yourself. - - Let him amuse him-  
*s'échauffer, v.* *s'amuser, v.*

self a little in my garden. - - - Let us remem-  
*un peu, adv.* *jardin, m.* *se ressou-*  
 ber what we are to do. - - - Endeavour to  
*venir de, v.\** † *faire, v.* *S'efforcer, v. de*  
 please your master, and do not so often mis-  
*plaître, v. à* *maître, m.* *se trom-*  
 take in the tenses, numbers, and persons of the  
*per, v.* *temps*  
 verb. - - Let them (fall asleep.)\*  
*s'endormir, v.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres. I must apply myself to the  
*Il faut que†* *s'appliquer, v.*  
 French language. - - I will hide it, lest  
*langue, f.* *cacher, v.* *de peur que, c.*  
 she should perceive it. - - - Provided  
*ne* *s'apercevoir, v.* *en, pro.* *Pourvu que, c.*  
 we remember to ask him how his  
*de demander, v.* *lui* *comment, adv.*  
 mother does. - - - (In order that) you may not  
*se porter, v.* *Afin que, c.*  
 boast (so much). - - I have told them who you  
*se vanter, v.* *tant, adv.* *dit, p. p.*  
 are, that they may behave better another time.  
*afin que, c.* *fois, f.*

Pret. That I might not ruin myself. - - -  
*se ruiner, v.*  
 That he might not meddle with my affairs. - - -  
*se mêler, v.* *de*  
 That we might excuse ourselves. - - - That you  
*s'excuser, v.*  
 might not go away. - - - That they might not  
*s'en aller, v.\**  
 repent too late.  
*se repentir, v.\** *trop tard, adv.*

\* Remember that verbs marked thus are irregular.

† See the note p. 193.

‡ See *faillir*, imp. v. page 322.

## COMPOUND TENSES.

(Read with attention the remarks, p. 218.)

I have inquired after you and your sister. - - -  
*s'informer, v. de*

He says you have not been well while you  
*dit, v. pendant que, c.*

were in the country. - - - Has not your cousin  
*à campagne, f. cousin, m.*

laughed at me? - - Did we not get up at six  
*se moquer, v. de se lever, v. à*

(o'clock?) - - They have perceived the trick, but  
*heure du détour, m.*

it was too late. - - Did you remember me?  
*ce se souvenir, v. de*

I had not applied myself enough. - - - Had  
*s'appliquer, v. assez, adv.*

not your sister imagined, that they would have  
*s'imaginer, v.*

found themselves obliged to go to France? - - -  
*se trouver, v. obligé, p. p. de †*

He has wounded himself in attempting to injure  
*se blesser, v. essayer, v. de nuire, v.*

me. - - - We had thought ourselves able  
*se croire, v. \* capable, adj.*

to resist them, but we have (been deceived.)  
*de résister, v. leur mais, c. se tromper, v.*

- - - Did you not hide yourselves (in order)  
*se cacher, v. afin*

to surprise them? - - - When I (shall)  
*de surprendre, v. Quand, adv.*

have walked five or six minutes in the gar-  
*minute jar-*

den, I will rest myself. - - - Why did you  
*din, m. se reposer, v.*

exhaust yourself as you have done? - - - Our  
*s'épuiser, v. fait, p. p.*

sailors would have behaved with more reso-  
*matelot, m.*

† See the N. B. p. 41.



lution. - - Would you not have excused yourself. - - -  
*s'excuser, v.*

When they† have repented their faults, I  
*se repentir, v.\* de*

will forgive them. - - If I had been in your place, I  
*avois à*

would not have meddled with their affairs. - - -  
*se mêler, v. de*

Your friend would not have complained of you,  
*se plaindre, v.\**

and you never would have (fallen out) for so small  
*se brouiller, v. si peu*

a matter.  
*de chose.*

## CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

These are called *irregulars* because their conjugation deviates from the general rule, either by their terminations, or the want of some of their moods, tenses, persons, or numbers. The *personal pronouns* must now be supplied in French by the student.

### VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

**ALLER, TO GO.**

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Aller, to go.*

Part. act. *Allant, going.*

Part. pass. *Allé, ée, gone.*

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

**Present.**

Sing. *Vais, vas, va, I go, do go, or am going.*

Plur. *Allons, allez, vont,*

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Allois, allois, alloit, I did go, or was going.*

Plur. *Allions, alliez, alloient,*

**Preterite.**

Sing. *Allai, allas, alla, I went, or did go.*

Plur. *Allâmes, allâtes, allèrent,*

† After *when* and a few other conjunctions *will* and *shall*, signs of the future, are implied in English.

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Irai,</i>	<i>iras,</i>	<i>ira,</i>	I shall, or will go.
Plur.	<i>Irons,</i>	<i>irez,</i>	<i>iront,</i>	

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Irois,</i>	<i>irois,</i>	<i>iroit,</i>	I should, could, would, or
Plur.	<i>Irions,</i>	<i>iriez,</i>	<i>iroient,</i>	might go.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Va,</i>	go thou;
	<i>qu'il aille,</i>	let him go.
Plur.	<i>Allons, allez,</i>	<i>qu'ils aillent.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que,</i>	<i>que,</i>	<i>que,</i>	
Sing.	<i>Aille,</i>	<i>ailles,</i>	<i>aille,</i>	that I may go.
Plur.	<i>Allions,</i>	<i>alliez,</i>	<i>aillent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Allasse,</i>	<i>allasses,</i>	<i>allât,</i>	that I might go.
Plur.	<i>Allassions,</i>	<i>allassiez,</i>	<i>allassent,</i>	

N. B. The preterite of the verb *être*, *je fus*, *tu fus*, &c. has been used by respectable authors and in conversation for *j'allai*, *tu allas*, but now it is thought unnecessary.

Among the compound tenses of this verb, it is to be remarked, that those which are formed by the participle *allé*, signify that we are or were yet in the place mentioned at the time we are or were speaking. Whence it follows, that the first person of the compound of the present,

*Je suis allé,*                      I have gone, &c.  
*Tu es allé, &c.*

can seldom be used in discourse; for we cannot naturally say that we are still in a place which can only be mentioned in a past time, after we have left it; therefore we make use of the compound tenses of the verb *être*, as *j'ai été*, *tu as été*, *j'eus été*, *j'avois été*, *j'aurois été*, &c. for when we say,

*Il est allé à Londres,*                      He is gone to London.

we give to understand, that he is still in London, or is on his way, going to London: on the contrary,

*Il a été à Londres,*      He has been at London,  
means, that he has gone to London, but is returned.

The above verb is also conjugated as a reflected one, with the particle *en* : ex.

*S'en aller*, to go away.

*Je m'en vais*, I go or am going away.

*Tu t'en vas*, thou goest or art going away.

*Il s'en va*, he goes or is going away.

*Nous nous en allons*, we go or are going away.

*Vous vous en allez*, you go or are going away.

*Ils s'en vont*, they go or are going away.

Negatively.

*Je ne m'en vais pas*, I am not going away.

*Il ne s'en va pas*, he is not going away.

*Nous ne nous en allons pas*, we are not going away.

*Vous ne vous en allez pas*, &c. you are not going away, &c.

Interrogatively.

*S'en va-t-il ?* Is he going away ?

*Vous en allez-vous ?* &c. are you going away ? &c.

*Ne s'en vont-ils pas ?* &c. are they not going away, &c.

The imperative mood is thus conjugated :

Singular.

*Va-t'en*, go thou away.

*Qu'il s'en aille*, let him go away.

Plural.

*Allons-nous en*, let us go away.

*Allez-vous en*, go away.

*Qu'ils s'en aillent*, let them go away.

Its compound tenses are,

*Je m'en suis allé*, I have gone away.

*Je m'en étois allé*, I had gone away.

*Je m'en fus allé*, I had gone away.

*Je m'en serai allé*, I shall have gone away, &c.

*Je m'en serois allé*, I should have gone away.

## VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

*ACQUERIR*, TO ACQUIRE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Acquérrir</i> , to acquire.
Part. act.	<i>Acquérrant</i> , acquiring.
Part. pass.	<i>Acquis</i> , <i>se</i> , acquired.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Acquiers</i> ,	<i>acquiers</i> ,	<i>acquiert</i> ,	I acquire or am ac-
Plur.	<i>Acquérons</i> ,	<i>acquérez</i> ,	<i>acquière</i> nt,	quiring.

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Acquérois</i> ,	<i>acquérois</i> ,	<i>acquéroit</i> ,	I did acquire or
Plur.	<i>Acquérons</i> ,	<i>acquériez</i> ,	<i>acquéroient</i> ,	was acquiring.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Acquis</i> ,	<i>acquis</i> ,	<i>acquît</i> ,	I acquired or did ac-
Plur.	<i>Acquîmes</i> ,	<i>acquîtes</i> ,	<i>acquîrent</i> ,	quire.

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Acquerrai</i> ,	<i>acquerras</i> ,	<i>acquerra</i> ,	I shall, or will ac-
Plur.	<i>Acquerrons</i> ,	<i>acquerez</i> ,	<i>acquerront</i> ,	quire.

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Acquerrois</i> ,	<i>acquerrois</i> ,	<i>acquerroit</i> ,	I should, would,
				or could acquire.
Plur.	<i>Acquerriens</i> ,	<i>acquerriez</i> ,	<i>acquerrieroient</i> ,	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Acquiers</i> ,	<i>acquière</i> ,	acquire thou.
Plur.	<i>Acquérons</i> ,	<i>acquérez</i> ,	<i>acquière</i> nt,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Acquière</i> ,	<i>acquières</i> ,	<i>acquière</i> ,	that I may acquire.
Plur.	<i>Acquérions</i> ,	<i>acquériez</i> ,	<i>acquière</i> nt,	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Acquisse</i> ,	<i>acquisses</i> ,	<i>acquît</i> ,	that I might ac-
Plur.	<i>Acquissions</i> ,	<i>acquissiez</i> ,	<i>acquissent</i> ,	quire.

**QUERIR, TO FETCH.**

The primitive of the above verb is never used but in the present of the infinitive mood: *ex.*

*Envoyez-moi quérir, Send for me.*

**CONQUERIR, TO CONQUER; REQUERIR, TO REQUIRE;**  
are conjugated like **ACQUERIR.**

**BOUILLIR, TO BOIL.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present	<i>Bouillir, to boil.</i>
Part. act.	<i>Bouillant, boiling.</i>
Part. pass.	<i>Bouilli, ie, boiled.</i>

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing. <i>Bous,</i>	<i>bous, bout, I boil, or am boiling.</i>
Plur. <i>Bouillons,</i>	<i>bouillez, bouillent,</i>

**Imperfect.**

Sing. <i>Bouillois,</i>	<i>bouillois, bouilloit, I did boil, or was</i>
Plur. <i>Bouillions,</i>	<i>bouilliez, bouilloient, boiling.</i>

**Preterite.**

Sing. <i>Bouillis,</i>	<i>bouillis, bouillit, I boiled, or did boil.</i>
Plur. <i>Bouillîmes,</i>	<i>bouillîtes, bouillirent,</i>

**Future.**

Sing. <i>Bouillirai,</i>	<i>bouilliras, bouillira, I shall, or will boil.</i>
Plur. <i>Bouillirons,</i>	<i>bouillirez, bouilliront,</i>

**Conditional.**

Sing. <i>Bouillirois,</i>	<i>bouillirois, bouilliroit, I should, would, or</i>
Plur. <i>Bouillirions,</i>	<i>bouilliriez, bouilliroient, could boil.</i>

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Bous, bouille, boil thou.</i>
Plur. <i>Bouillons,</i>	<i>bouillez, bouillent,</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Bouille,</i>	<i>bouilles,</i>	<i>bouille, that I may boil.</i>
Plur.	<i>Bouillions,</i>	<i>bouilliez,</i>	<i>bouillent,</i>

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Bouillisse,</i>	<i>bouillisses,</i>	<i>bouillît, that I might boil.</i>
Plur.	<i>Bouillissions,</i>	<i>bouillissiez,</i>	<i>bouillissent,</i>

This verb, as well as its compound *rebouillir*, to boil again, is but seldom used, except in the *third person* singular or plural, and in its *infinitive* mood, which is commonly joined to the verb *Faire* to render it *active* and use it in all persons : ex.

*Faites bouillir cette viande,* Boil that meat.

## COURIR, TO RUN.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Courir,</i> to run.
Part. act.	<i>Courant,</i> running.
Part. pass.	<i>Couru,</i> <i>ue,</i> run.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Cours,</i>	<i>cours,</i>	<i>court,</i>	I run, or am running.
Plur.	<i>Courons,</i>	<i>courez,</i>	<i>courent,</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Courois,</i>	<i>couroit,</i>	<i>couroit,</i>	I did run, or was run-
Plur.	<i>Courions,</i>	<i>couriez,</i>	<i>couroient,</i>	ning.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Courus,</i>	<i>courus,</i>	<i>courut,</i>	I ran, or did run.
Plur.	<i>Courûmes,</i>	<i>courûtes,</i>	<i>coururent,</i>	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Courrai,</i>	<i>courras,</i>	<i>courra,</i>	I shall or will run.
Plur.	<i>Courrons,</i>	<i>courez,</i>	<i>courront,</i>	

## Conditional.

Sing. <i>Courrois,</i>	<i>courrois,</i>	<i>courroit,</i>	I should, would, or
Plur. <i>Courrions,</i>	<i>courriez,</i>	<i>courroient,</i>	could run.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Cours,</i>	<i>coure,</i>	run thou.
Plur. <i>Courons,</i>	<i>courez,</i>	<i>courent,</i>	

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Coure,</i>	<i>coures,</i>	<i>coure,</i>	that I may run.	
Plur. <i>Courions,</i>	<i>couriez,</i>	<i>courent,</i>		

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Courusse,</i>	<i>courusses,</i>	<i>courût,</i>	that I might run.
Plur. <i>Courussions,</i>	<i>courussiez,</i>	<i>courussent,</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Accourir,</i>	to run to.	<i>Parcourir,</i>	to run over.
<i>Concourir,</i>	to concur.	<i>Recourir,</i>	to have recourse
<i>Discourir,</i>	to discourse.		to.
<i>Encourir,</i>	to incur.	<i>Secourir,</i>	to succour, to
			assist.

---

COUVRIR, TO COVER.

See OUVRIR, TO OPEN.

---

CUEILLIR, TO GATHER.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Cueillir,</i>	to gather.
Part. act.	<i>Cueillant,</i>	gathering.
Part. pass.	<i>Cueilli, ie,</i>	gathered.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. <i>Cueille,</i>	<i>cueilles,</i>	<i>cueille,</i>	I gather, or am gath-
Plur. <i>Cueillons,</i>	<i>cueillez,</i>	<i>cueillent,</i>	ering.

## . Imperfect.

Sing. *Cueillois*, *cueillois*, *cueilloit*, I did gather, or  
 Plur. *Cueillions*, *cueilliez*, *cueilloient*, was gathering.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Cueillis*, *cueillis*, *cueillit*, I gathered, or did  
 Plur. *Cueillîmes*, *cueillîtes*, *cueillirent*, gather.

## Future.

Sing. *Cueillerai*, *cueilleras*, *cueillera*, I shall or will  
 Plur. *Cueillerons*, *cueillerez*, *cueilleront*, gather.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Cueillerois*, *cueillerois*, *cueilleroit*, I should, would,  
 or could gather.  
 Plur. *Cueillerions*, *cueilleriez*, *cueilleroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Cueille*, *cueille*, gather thou.  
 Plur. *Cueillons*, *cueillez*, *cueillent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Cueille*, *cueilles*, *cueille*, that I may gather.  
 Plur. *Cueillions*, *cueilliez*, *cueillent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Cueillisse*, *cueillisses*, *cueillît*, that I might  
 Plur. *Cueillissions*, *cueillissiez*, *cueillissent*, gather.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Accueillir*, to make wel- | *Recueillir*, to gather to-  
 come. | gether.

**DORMIR, TO SLEEP.**

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Dormir*, to sleep.  
 Part. act. *Dormant*, sleeping.  
 Part. pass. *Dormi*, ie, slept.



## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. <i>Dors,</i>	<i>dors,</i>	<i>dort,</i>	I sleep, or am sleeping.
Plur. <i>Dormoñs,</i>	<i>dormez,</i>	<i>dorment,</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Dormois,</i>	<i>dormois,</i>	<i>dormoit,</i>	I did sleep, or was
Plur. <i>Dormions,</i>	<i>dormiez,</i>	<i>dormoient,</i>	sleeping.

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Dormis,</i>	<i>dormis,</i>	<i>dormit,</i>	I slept, or did sleep.
Plur. <i>Dormîmes,</i>	<i>dormîtes,</i>	<i>dormirent,</i>	

## Future.

Sing. <i>Dormirai,</i>	<i>dormiras,</i>	<i>dormira,</i>	I shall or will
Plur. <i>Dormirons,</i>	<i>dormirez,</i>	<i>dormiront,</i>	sleep.

## Conditional.

Sing. <i>Dormirois,</i>	<i>dormirois,</i>	<i>dormiroit,</i>	I would, could, or
Plur. <i>Dormirions,</i>	<i>dormiriez,</i>	<i>dormiroient,</i>	should sleep.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Dors,</i>	<i>dorme,</i>	sleep thou.
Plur. <i>Dormons,</i>	<i>dormez,</i>	<i>dorment,</i>	

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Dorme,</i>	<i>dormes,</i>	<i>dorme,</i>	that I may sleep.	
Plur. <i>Dormions,</i>	<i>dormiez,</i>	<i>dorment,</i>		

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Dormisse,</i>	<i>dormisses,</i>	<i>dormît,</i>	that I might sleep.
Plur. <i>Dormissions,</i>	<i>dormissiez,</i>	<i>dormissent,</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Endormir,</i>	to make sleep.		<i>Se rendormir,</i>	to fall asleep
<i>S'endormir,</i>	to fall asleep.			again.

EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS  
AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Where are you going? - - - I am going to the  
Où, adv.

play. - - - I would go with you, if I had time. - - Why  
comédie, f. le

are they going away so soon? - - - Will not your father  
be angry, if you go there without him? - - - We were  
fâché, adj.

going to Miss D——'s, when we met you  
chez, p. avons rencontré, p. p.

- - These men went yesterday from house to house. - -  
Believe me, sir, do not go to see them. - - Your father  
Croire, v. voir, v.

told me (that) you will go to France and Italy as soon  
dire, v.

as the war (is over.) - - My sister and I, went last  
sera finie. dernier, adj.

Wednesday to Vauxhall. - - If you had gone thither  
an hour sooner you would have heard fine music.  
plutôt, adv. entendre, v.

- - Your uncle has acquired a great name in America.  
nom, m.

- - - My father went to pay your<sup>s</sup> uncle<sup>s</sup> a visit  
rendre, v.

last week, and he did not welcome him (as a) friend.  
en, p.

- - - Did he not? I am sorry for it. - - - Mr. Dubois,  
the king's silversmith, has brought the watch: it  
orfèvre

now goes very well. - - - Go and fetch me  
maintenant, adv.

the letter I left in my room. - - I have (sent for)  
laisser, v. (envoyé quérir)

him. - - - Boil this chicken, and roast that goose.  
poulet, m. rôti, v. oie, f.

- - - At last we have conquered. - - - This  
Enfin, adv.

water will soon boil. - - - Boil that meat  
bientôt, adv.

again, it is not done enough. - - - Do not run so  
cuit, p. p.

fast, you will be tired. - - - They always run  
vite, adv. fatigué, p. p.

when they go to see their aunt. - - - Your brother  
*tante, f.*  
 runs faster than I. - - When he heard *that* his  
*apprit, v.*  
 friend was in danger, he ran instantly to him. - - -  
*étoit* *aussitôt, adv. à*  
 Let us not discourse any more on that subject. - - - I  
*sujet, m.*  
 would assist him with all my heart, if I could. - - This  
*pouvois.*  
 gentleman is a great traveller: he has run over all.  
*Monsieur* *voyageur, m.*  
 Europe. - - Let him go away, for I do not wish to  
*Europe, f.* *car, c.* *veux, v.* *en*  
 speak to him. - - If you do it, you will incur your  
*faire, v.*  
 father's displeasure. - - That would concur to the pub-  
*déplaisir, m.* *Cela*  
 lic good. - - When children are guilty, they generally  
*bien, m.* *coupable, adj.*  
 have recourse to some falsehood. - - For whom are you  
*quelque mensonge.*  
 gathering those charming flowers? - - I gather them for  
*fleur, f.*  
 my mother. - - Why do they not gather some roses? - -  
*rose, f.*  
 Mrs. P. would have gathered some, but the gardener  
*Mme* *jardinier, m.*  
 told her he would gather them himself. - - Of all nations  
 none has welcomed the poor French clergy better  
*clergé, m.*  
 than the English nation. - - Do not make any noise,  
*faire, v.*  
 for my sister (is asleep.) - - I hope she will sleep better to-  
*car, c.* *ce*  
 night. - She would sleep much better, if she were in her  
*soir, m.*  
 bed. - If I do not walk a little, I shall fall asleep.  
*lit, m.* *se promener, v.*  
 - - My mother, sister, brother, and I, went yesterday to

Medford, to see Miss Keen. - - Did you go thither  
*Mlle*

on foot? - - No, my mother and sister went in a  
*à en, p.*

coach, and my brother and I on horseback.

*à cheval, m.*

# *FUIR*, TO SHUN, TO AVOID, TO FLEE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Fuir*, to flee.

Part. act. *Fuyant*, fleeing.

Part. pass. *Fui*, ie, fled.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

### Present:

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuis*, *fuit*, I flee.

Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*,

### Imperfect.

Sing. *Fuyois*, *fuyois*, *fuyoit*, I fled, or did flee.

Plur. *Fuyions*, *fuyiez*, *fuyoient*,

### Preterite.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuis*, *fuit*,

Plur. *Fûmes*, *fûtes*, *fuirent*, or we may say, *Je pin la fuite, &c.*

### Future.

Sing. *Fuirai*, *fuiras*, *fuirà*, I shall or will flee.

Plur. *Fuirons*, *fuires*, *fuiront*,

### Conditional.

Sing. *Fuirois*, *fuirois*, *fuiroit*, I should, would, or could

Plur. *Fuirions*, *fuiriez*, *fuiroient*, flee.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fuis*, *fuie*, flee thou.

Plur. *Fuyons*, *fuyez*, *fuient*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Fuie,</i>	<i>fuies,</i>	<i>fuie,</i>	that I may flee.
Plur.	<i>Fuyions,</i>	<i>fuyiez,</i>	<i>fussent,</i>	

## Preterite.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Fuisse,</i>	<i>fuisses,</i>	<i>fuss,</i>	that I might flee.
Plur.	<i>Fussions,</i>	<i>fuissiez,</i>	<i>fussent,</i>	or
	<i>Je pris la suite, &amp;c. that I might flee, &amp;c.</i>			
	<i>S'enfuir,</i> to run away.			

## MENTIR, TO LIE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Mentir,</i>	to lie.
Part. act.	<i>Mentant,</i>	lying.
Part. pass.	<i>Menti,</i>	ie, lied.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Mens,</i>	<i>mens,</i>	<i>ment,</i>	I lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentons,</i>	<i>mentez,</i>	<i>mentent,</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Mentois,</i>	<i>mentois,</i>	<i>mentoît,</i>	I did lie, or was lying.
Plur.	<i>Mentions,</i>	<i>mentiez,</i>	<i>mentoient,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mentis,</i>	<i>mentis,</i>	<i>mentit,</i>	I lied, or did lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentîmes,</i>	<i>mentîtes,</i>	<i>mentirent,</i>	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Mentirai,</i>	<i>mentiras,</i>	<i>mentira,</i>	I shall, or will lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentirons,</i>	<i>mentirez,</i>	<i>mentiront,</i>	

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Mentirois,</i>	<i>mentirois,</i>	<i>mentiroit,</i>	I would, could, or
Plur.	<i>Mentirions,</i>	<i>mentiriez,</i>	<i>mentiroient,</i>	should lie.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Mens,</i>	<i>mente,</i>	lie thou.
Plur.	<i>Mentons,</i>	<i>mentez,</i>	<i>mentent,</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Mente,</i>	<i>mentes,</i>	<i>mente,</i>	that I may lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentions,</i>	<i>mentiez,</i>	<i>mentent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mentisse,</i>	<i>mentisses,</i>	<i>mentît,</i>	that I might lie.
Plur.	<i>Mentissions,</i>	<i>mentissiez,</i>	<i>mentissent.</i>	

The compound of this verb is  
*Démentir*, to give one the lie, to belie, to contradict.

## MOURIR, TO DIE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Mourir,</i>	to die.
Part. act.	<i>Mourant,</i>	dying.
Part. past.	<i>Mort,</i>	te, died, or dead.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Meurs,</i>	<i>meurs,</i>	<i>meurt,</i>	I die, or am dying.
Plur.	<i>Mourons,</i>	<i>mourez,</i>	<i>meurent,</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Mourois,</i>	<i>mourois,</i>	<i>mouroit,</i>	I was dying.
Plur.	<i>Mourions,</i>	<i>mouriez,</i>	<i>mouroient,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mourus,</i>	<i>mourus,</i>	<i>mourut,</i>	I died.
Plur.	<i>Mourûmes,</i>	<i>mourûtes,</i>	<i>moururent,</i>	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Mourrai,</i>	<i>mourras,</i>	<i>mourra,</i>	I shall, or will die.
Plur.	<i>Mourrons,</i>	<i>mourrez,</i>	<i>mourront,</i>	

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Mourrois,</i>	<i>mourrois,</i>	<i>mourroit,</i>	I should, could, or
Plur.	<i>Mourrions,</i>	<i>mourriez,</i>	<i>mourroient,</i>	would die

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Meurs,</i>	<i>meure,</i>	die thou.
Plur.	<i>Mourons,</i>	<i>mourez,</i>	<i>meurent,</i>

## SURJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Meure,</i>	<i>meures,</i>	<i>meure,</i> that I may die.
Plur.	<i>Mourions,</i>	<i>mouriez,</i>	<i>meurent,</i>

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Mourusse,</i>	<i>mourusses,</i>	<i>mourût,</i> that I might die.
Plur.	<i>Mourussions,</i>	<i>mourussiez,</i>	<i>mourussent,</i>
	<i>Se mourir,</i> to be dying.		

## OFFRIR, TO OFFER.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Offrir,</i> to offer.
Part. act.	<i>Offrant,</i> offering.
Part. pass.	<i>Offert, te,</i> offered.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Offre,</i>	<i>offres,</i>	<i>offre,</i> I offer, or am offering.
Plur.	<i>Offrons,</i>	<i>offrez,</i>	<i>offrent,</i>

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Offrois,</i>	<i>offrois,</i>	<i>offroit,</i> I did offer, or was of-
Plur.	<i>Offrions,</i>	<i>offriez,</i>	<i>offroient,</i> fering.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Offris,</i>	<i>Offris,</i>	<i>offrit,</i> I offered, or did offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrimes,</i>	<i>offrîtes,</i>	<i>offrirent,</i>

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Offrirai,</i>	<i>offriras,</i>	<i>offrira,</i> I shall, or will offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrirons,</i>	<i>offrirez,</i>	<i>offriront,</i>

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Offrirois,</i>	<i>offrirois,</i>	<i>offriroit,</i> I would, could, or
Plur.	<i>Offririons,</i>	<i>offiriez,</i>	<i>offriroient,</i> should offer.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Offre,</i>	<i>offre,</i>	offer thou.
Plur.	<i>Offrons,</i>	<i>offrez,</i>	<i>offrent,</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Offre,</i>	<i>offres,</i>	<i>offre,</i>	that I may offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrions,</i>	<i>offriez,</i>	<i>offrent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Offrisse,</i>	<i>offrisses,</i>	<i>offrît,</i>	that I might offer.
Plur.	<i>Offrissions,</i>	<i>offrissiez,</i>	<i>offrissent,</i>	

## OUIR, TO HEAR.

This verb is never used but in its participle passive, joined to some of the tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have, preceding the verb *dire*, to say: ex.

*J'ai ouï dire que,* I have heard, that, &c.

In general we make use of *apprendre*, irr, v.

## OUVRIIR, TO OPEN.

This verb, as well as its compounds,

*Couvrir*, to cover,      *Recouvrir*, to cover again.

*Découvrir*, { to discover, } is conjugated like *OFFRIIR*.  
                   { to uncover, }

## PARTIR, TO SET OUT, TO GO AWAY;

And its compounds,

<i>Départir, répartir,</i>	to dis-tribute, to impart,		<i>Repartir,</i>	to set out again, to reply;
----------------------------	----------------------------	--	------------------	-----------------------------



*Se REPENTIR*, TO REPENT ;

*SENTIR*, TO FEEL, TO SMELL,

And its compounds ;

*Consentir*, to consent, to | *Ressentir*, to be sensible of,  
agree, | to resent,

*Pressentir*, to have a foresight or presentiment,  
are conjugated like *Mentir*.

### EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

As soon as they saw us coming they ran away.

*Aussitôt que voir, v. venir, v.*

- - - Avoid bad company. - - He does not love your  
*compagnie, f.*

sister, because she lies. - - If you forgive me this time,  
*parce que, c. fois, f.*

I never will lie any more. - - I cannot believe him ;  
*pouvoir, v.*

for he contradicts himself at every instant. - - Tell  
*car, c. à tout moment. Dire, v.*

me what she has done to you ; but above all do not lie.  
*sur, p.*

- - If you do not behave better, your mother will  
*se comporter, v.*

die with grief. - - Mrs. S. died at Paris on the seventh  
*de chagrin, m. à*

of August, one thousand seven hundred and eighty.  
*Août, m.*

- - Misfortune often\* seeks those who avoid it, and  
*Malheur, m. chercher, v.*

sometimes avoids those who seem to seek it. - -  
*quelquefois, adv. sembler, v.*

Were I in your place, I would not offer her any money.  
*Si j'étais à*

- - Why do you not open the door for your sister ?  
*Pourquoi, adv. à*

\* See note, page 32.

-- Your brother was no sooner arrived in London, than  
*phutôt,adv. à*

I offered him my services. --- Your actions never belie  
 your words. -- Open the window. -- I had heard you  
*parolas.*

were going to Holland (at the) beginning of next  
*au commencement,m.*

month. -- I hope you will never discover what I have  
*espérer,v.*

told you. -- Cover my hat, and put it upon that  
*dire,v. mettre,v.*

chair. -- I will set out to-morrow morning at seven  
 (o'clock). -- Do not set out without me. -- Let us go and  
*heures.*

see Mrs. D\*\*, I have heard she is dying. --- Your sister  
 repents much of having sold her books. -- Gather that  
*d'avoir*

pink, it smells charmingly. -- Her mother says she  
*œillet,m. bien bon,adv.*

never will consent to it. -- If you do not take  
*prendre,v.*

care, you will repent (of) your imprudence soon or  
*garde, tôt,adv.*

late. -- Let us die for our country, and our death will  
*tard,adv. patrie,f.*

be glorious. -- Every citizen (ought to) be disposed to  
*glorieux,adj. doit,v.*

sacrifice himself, for the public good; it is at this  
*bien,m. ça,pro. à,p.*

price only that (a man) acquires a lawful right  
*on légitime,adj. droit,m.*

to the advantages of civil society. --- I should die  
 satisfied, if I knew (that) you were happy. ---

*content,adj. savoir,v. (by the subj.)*

You soon felt the effect of it. -- My cousin set out  
*effet,m.*

from here yesterday morning at nine o'clock. -- I  
*ici,adv.*

offer you my house, it is at your service. --- You  
 may rely upon her, she will never discover

*avoir,v. compter,v.*

your secrets. - - I will never offer you my<sup>a</sup> horse<sup>b</sup> any  
 more<sup>c</sup>. - - - He will feel it in his turn, when he  
   à           tour,m.  
           is           old.  
 (by the fut.)

### REVETIR, TO INVEST.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.   *Revêtir*, to invest with, to give other clothes.  
 Part. act.   *Revêtant*, investing.  
 Part. pass.   *Revêtu*, *ue*, invested.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. *Revêts*,       *revêts*,   *revêt*, I invest.  
 Plur. *Revêtons*,   *revêtez*,   *revêtent*,

##### Imperfect.

Sing. *Revêtois*,   *revêtois*,   *revêtoit*, I did invest.  
 Plur. *Revétions*,   *revétiez*,   *revêtoient*,

##### Preterite.

Sing. *Revétis*,       *revétis*,   *revêtit*, I invested, or did in-  
 Plur. *Revétimes*,   *revétîtes*,   *revêtirent*,                    vest.

##### Future.

Sing. *Revétirai*,   *revétiras*,   *revétira*, I shall, or will in-  
 Plur. *Revétirons*,   *revétirez*,   *revétiront*,                    vest.

##### Conditional.

Sing. *Revétirois*,   *revétirois*,   *revétiroit*, I should, would,  
 Plur. *Revétirions*,   *revétiriez*,   *revétiroient*,               &c. invest.

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.               *Revêts*,   *revête*, invest thou.  
 Plur. *Revêtons*,   *revêtez*,   *revêtent*.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

*Que*               *que*               *que*  
 Sing. *Revête*,       *revêtes*,   *revête*, that I may invest.  
 Plur. *Revétions*,   *revétiez*,   *revêtent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Revêtisse, revêtisses, revêtit*, that I might invest.Plur. *Revêtissions, revêtissiez, revêtissent*,

---

**SERVIR, TO SERVE, TO HELP TO.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**Present. *Servir*, to serve.Part. act. *Servant*, serving.Part. pass. *Servi, ie*, served.**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**Sing. *Sers, sers, sert*, I serve, or am serving.Plur. *Servons, servez, servent*,**Imperfect.**Sing. *Servois, servois, servoit*, I did serve, or wasPlur. *Servions, serviez, servoient*, serving.**Preterite.**Sing. *Servis, servis, servit*, I served, or did serve.Plur. *Servîmes, servîtes, servirent*,**Future.**Sing. *Servirai, serviras, servira*, I shall, or will serve.Plur. *Servirons, servirez, serviront*,**Conditional.**Sing. *Servirois, servirois, servirait*, I would, should, orPlur. *Servirions, serviriez, serviroient*, could serve.**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**Sing. *Sers, serve, serve thou.*Plur. *Servons, servez, servent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Serve,</i>	<i>serves,</i>	<i>serve,</i>	that I may serve.
Plur.	<i>Servions,</i>	<i>serviez,</i>	<i>servent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Servisse,</i>	<i>servisses,</i>	<i>servît,</i>	that I might serve.
Plur.	<i>Servissions,</i>	<i>servissiez,</i>	<i>servissent,</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

*Desservir*, to do an ill office, to clear a table.

*Se servir*, to make use, to use.

*SORTIR*, TO GO OUT,  
is conjugated like *MENTIR*.

*SOUFFRIR*, TO SUFFER,  
is conjugated like *OFFRIR*.

*TENIR*, TO HOLD, TO KEEP.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Tenir</i> , to hold.
Part. act.	<i>Tenant</i> , holding.
Part. pass.	<i>Tenu, ue</i> , held.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Tiens,</i>	<i>tiens,</i>	<i>tient,</i>	I hold, or am holding.
Plur.	<i>Tenons,</i>	<i>tenez,</i>	<i>tiennent,</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Tenois,</i>	<i>tenois,</i>	<i>tenoit,</i>	I did hold, or was holding.
Plur.	<i>Tenions,</i>	<i>teniez,</i>	<i>tenoient,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Tins,</i>	<i>tins,</i>	<i>tint,</i>	I held, or did hold.
Plur.	<i>Tinmes,</i>	<i>tintea,</i>	<i>tinrent,</i>	

## Future.

Sing. *Tiendrai, tiendras, tiendra*, I shall, or will hold.  
 Plur. *Tiendrons, tiendrez, tiendront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Tiendrais, tiendrais, tiendrait*, I should, could, or  
 Plur. *Tiendrions, tiendriez, tiendraient*, would hold.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Tiens, tienne*, hold thou.  
 Plur. *Tenons, tenez, tiennent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Tienne, tiennes, tienne*, that I may hold.  
 Plur. *Tenions, terniez, tiennent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Tinsse, tinsse, tint*, that I might hold.  
 Plur. *Tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*S'abstenir*, to abstain.

*Appartenir*, to belong.

*Contenir*, to contain.

*Détenir*, to detain.

*Entretenir*, to keep, to entertain.

*Maintenir*, to maintain.

*Obtenir*, to obtain.

*Retenir*, to retain, to keep.

*Soutenir*, to maintain, to hold, to support.

**TRESSAILLIR**, TO START, TO LEAP FOR.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Tressaillir*, to start.  
 Part. act. *Tressaillant*, starting.  
 Part. pass. *Tressailli*, ie, started.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. <i>Tressaille</i> ,	<i>tressailles</i> ,	<i>tressaille</i> , I start.
Plur. <i>Tressaillons</i> ,	<i>tressailliez</i> ,	<i>tressaillent</i> ,

## Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Tressaillois</i> ,	<i>tressaillois</i> ,	<i>tressailloit</i> , I did start.
Plur. <i>Tressaillions</i> ,	<i>tressailliez</i> ,	<i>tressailloient</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Tressaillis</i> ,	<i>tressaillis</i> ,	<i>tressaillit</i> , I started.
Plur. <i>Tressaillîmes</i> ,	<i>tressaillîtes</i> ,	<i>tressaillirent</i> ,

## Future.

Sing. <i>Tressaillirai</i> ,	<i>tressailliras</i> ,	<i>tressaillira</i> , I shall, or will start.
Plur. <i>Tressaillirons</i> ,	<i>tressaillirez</i> ,	<i>tressailliront</i> ,

## Conditional.

Sing. <i>Tressaillirois</i> ,	<i>tressaillirois</i> ,	<i>tressailliroit</i> , I should, would, &c. start.
Plur. <i>Tressaillirions</i> ,	<i>tressailliriez</i> ,	<i>tressailliroient</i> ,

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Tressaille</i> ,	<i>tressailles</i> ,	<i>tressaille</i> , that I may
Plur. <i>Tressaillions</i> ,	<i>tressailliez</i> ,	<i>tressaillent</i> , start.

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Tressaillisse</i> ,	<i>tressaillisses</i> ,	<i>tressaillît</i> , that I might
Plur. <i>Tressaillissions</i> ,	<i>tressaillissiez</i> ,	<i>tressaillissent</i> , start.

**ASSAILLIR**, TO ASSAULT, is conjugated as above.

**SAILLIR**, TO JUT, OR JUT OUT (term in architecture), is conjugated like **TRESSAILLIR**, but is only used in the third person of some tenses and its infinitive mood.

N. B. *SAILLIR*, to GUSH OUT, (speaking of any liquid,) is regular, and conjugated like *PUNIR*.

*VENIR*, TO COME,

And its compounds,

<i>Convenir de</i> , à, to agree, to become, to fit, to suit,	<i>Revenir</i> , to come back, to return,
<i>Contrevenir</i> à, to infringe,	<i>Se souvenir de</i> , to remember, to remind,†
<i>Devenir</i> , to become,*	<i>Se ressouvenir de</i> , to recollect,
<i>Disconvenir de</i> , to disagree,	<i>Subvenir</i> à, to relieve, to assist,
<i>Intervenir</i> à, to intervene,	<i>Survenir</i> , to befall, to happen unexpectedly, to come to,
<i>Parvenir</i> à, to attain to,	
<i>Prévenir</i> , to prevent, to prejudice, to anticipate, to prepossess,	
<i>Provenir</i> , to proceed,	

are conjugated like *TENIR*.

*VETIR*, TO CLOTHE.

This verb is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive mood, and participle passive, *vêtu*, clothed; therefore the conjugation of its compound *REVETIR*, TO INVEST WITH, TO GIVE OTHER CLOTHES, has just been given in lieu of it.

\* This verb in English is most generally accompanied by the preposition *of*, governing the noun or pronoun: but it must be observed, that, in French, the preposition must be suppressed, and the noun or pronoun become the nominative to the verb *devenir*: ex.

<i>Ne vous informez point de ce que je deviendrai,</i>	Do not inquire about what will become of me.
<i>Que deviendra votre cousin si son père l'abandonne?</i>	What will become of your cousin, if his father forsake him?
<i>Si cela arrivoit, je ne sais ce que nous deviendrions,</i>	Should that happen, I know not what would become of us.

† When this verb, in English, governs a noun or pronoun in the accusative case, it must be put in the infinitive mood, and preceded by the verb *faire* in the same tense, number, and person, as the verb *to remind*: ex.

<i>Faites-moi souvenir de passer chez votre tante,</i>	Remind me to call upon your aunt.
<i>Où, je vous en serai souvenir,</i>	Yes, I will remind you of it.



# EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Your friend Mr. H\*\*\*, does not serve me well. - - -

*ami, m.*

Shall I help you to a little bit of lamb,  
or a wing of that chicken? - - - - We would  
*aile, f.* *poulet, m.*

serve him with all our heart, if we could. - - - I  
*de* *pouvoir, v.*

shall go out in half an hour. - - If we go to-day  
*aujourd'hui, adv.*

to Richmond, we will (make use of) your coach. - - My  
*se servir de* *carrosse, m.*

sister went out \*this morning at nine o'clock, and is not  
*matin, m.*

yet returned. - - Nobody knows what we suffered in our  
*revenir, v.* *savoir, v.*

last voyage. - - If I were as ill as you, I would  
*voyage, m.* *malade, adj.*

not go out of my room. - - Why do not you  
*chambre, f.* *Pourquoi, adv.*

serve your friends, since you may do it? - -  
*puisque, c.* *pouvoir, v.*

Should† they forsake you, what would become of  
*abandonner, v.*

you? - I would make use of your horse, if you (were  
*cheval, m.* *avoir*

so kind as to) lend it to me. - - - - The more we are  
*la bonté de*

above others, the more it becomes us to be  
*au dessus de, p.*

modest and humble. - - My aunt and I came yester-  
*ante, f.*

day to see you, but you were not at home. - - - I  
hope you will keep your word, and come

to-morrow. - - - I assure you Mr. R\*\*'s father holds  
*tenir, f.* *parole, f.*

*demain, adv.* *assurer, v.*

\* See page 154.

† Turn, If they should, &c.

the first rank in the town, but the son will never  
*rang, m.*

attain his father's reputation. - - - Men acquire, by  
*Homme, m.*

long labours, knowledge which often becomes  
*travail, m. lumière, f.*

fatal to them. - - - I maintain, and will always  
*funeste, adj.*

maintain, that you will not be happy without  
*heureux, adj. sans, p.*

virtue. - - We were coming to see you, but you have  
 anticipated all my designs. - - She leaped for joy when  
*prévenir, v. de*

she saw her. - - At last she has agreed to pay her  
*Enfin, adv. \* de*

an annual pension of twenty pounds. - - Her mother  
 started up at these words, and became furious. - - -  
*à, p. parole, f. furieux, adj.*

Come on Friday morning at nine o'clock. - - -  
*Vendredi*

This house will belong to me after her death. - - -  
*après, p. mort, f.*

You will obtain leave to go out another time,  
*permission de fois, f.*  
 if you come back soon. - - - This box contains all  
*bientôt.*

my jewels. - - - I agree Miss N. is the prettiest of the  
*bijoux, m.*

family; but she is so proud, that I know not what will  
 become of her. - - Who knows whether they will re-  
*savoir, v. si, c.*

member (of) it or not? - They assaulted the town (in the)  
*au*

middle of the night, and all their officers, even<sup>2</sup>  
*milieu, m. même, adv.*

the general, agree that they have acquired much  
*acquérir, v.*

glory. - - Remember that, if you infringe the law, you

\* See the neuter verbs for the formation of the compound tenses,  
 page 212.

will incur the punishments decreed by the law. . . .  
*peine, f. porté, p. p.*

Your illness proceeds from a great heat. . . . The  
*chaleur, f.*

first time (that) you come to see me, I will keep you  
 (by the fut.)

two or three days. . . . Mr. B. desired me to tell you,  
*prier, v. de*

that he will not come back to-day. . . . When the  
 surgeon had opened his vein, the blood gushed  
*chirurgien, m.\* sang, m.*

out with an extraordinary impetuosity. . . . That poor  
 man will bless you, if you (give<sup>a</sup> him<sup>1</sup> other<sup>a</sup> clothes<sup>a</sup>.)  
*bénir, v. revêtir, v.*

He is so prepossessed against me, that he will not  
*contre, p. vouloir, v.*

agree he (is in the wrong). . . . We should certainly  
*avoir tort. certainement, adv.*

have come back yesterday, had we had time. . . . You will  
*hier, adv. si le temps.*

become a great man, if you continue to study with  
*continuer, v. de "*

the same assiduity. . . . He would have come to see us  
*assiduité, f. être, v.*

last week, if it had not rained. . . . The first time  
*semaine, f. plu, p. p. fois, f.*

I go out, remind me to call on your bro-  
 (by the fut.) *de passer, v. chez, p.*

ther. . . . That hat would suit you very well, if you  
 were a little taller. . . . Do not go out to-day, you

will suffer much if you do. . . . I should not suffer  
*beaucoup, adv.*

(so much) if it were fine weather. . . . Why do not  
*tant, adv. faisait, v.*

you abstain from drinking? . . . The king has invested  
*boire, v.*

that nobleman with all his authority. . . . You may  
*seigneur, m. de Pouvoir, v.*

set out this morning, but remember to come back

\* See observation, p. 156.

† See the last note, page 250.

at night. - - - Were I in your place, I would detain  
*ce soir, m. à place, f.*  
 him here a little longer; for he always keeps  
*long-temps, adv. car, c.*  
 himself shut up in his house. - - I do not think that  
*enferme, p. p. croire, v.*  
 colour suits your sister. - - When will she return  
 (by the subj.) *Quand, adv.*  
 from the country? - - She wrote she would come next  
*campagne, f.*  
 Saturday, if the weather were fine.

## VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

**ASSEOIR,** TO SIT DOWN.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

**Present.** *Asseoir*, to sit down.  
**Part. act.** *Asseyant*, sitting down.  
**Part. pass.** *Assis, ise*, sat down (or seated.)

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Assieds, assieds, assied*, I sit down.  
Plur. *Asseyons, asseyez, asseient*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Asseyois, asseyois, asseyoit*, I did sit, or was sitting  
Plur. *Asseyions, asseyiez, asseyoient*, down.

### Preterite.

Sing. *Assis*, *assis*, *assit*, I sat down.  
Plur. *Assimes*, *assiles*, *assirent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Assiérai, assiéras, assiéra*, I shall, or will sit down.  
Plur. *Assiérons, assiérez, assiéront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Assiérois, assiérois, assiéroit*, I should, would, or  
 Plur. *Assiérions, assiériez, assiéroient*, could sit down.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Assieds, asseie*, sit down.  
 Plur. *Asseyons, asseyez, asseient*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Assie, asseies, asseie*, that I may sit down.  
 Plur. *Asseyions, asseyiez, asseient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Assisse, assisses, assît*, that I might sit down.  
 Plur. *Assissions, assissiez, assissent*,

*Asseoir* is active, but is most generally conjugated as a reflected verb, which may easily be done, by the learner adding a double pronoun to the different tenses, and forming the compound ones by the verb *être*, as in *se promener*, in page 219: ex.

*Je m'assieds, tu t'assieds, il s'assied ;*  
*Nous nous asseyons, vous vous asseyez, ils s'asseient.*

## COMPOUND TENSES.

*Je me suis assis, tu t'es assis, il s'est assis ;*  
*Nous nous sommes assis, vous vous êtes assis, &c.*

The compound of this verb is,

*Se rasseoir*, to sit down again.

*SEOIR*, TO FIT WELL, TO BECOME, TO FIT, the primitive of *asseoir*, is never used in the present of its infinitive mood; and in its other tenses is conjugated only as follows:

Part. act. *Séyant*, fitting well, fitting, or becoming.

Part. pass. *Sis*, (never used but in the sense of situate, or lying.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Il sied, ils sièent, it becomes, they become, &c.*

## Imperfect.

*Il s'étoit, ils s'étoient, it was becoming, &c.*

## Preterite wanting.

## Future.

*Il sièra, ils sièront, it or they will become.*

## Conditional.

*Il sièroit, ils sièroient, it or they would become.*

## Subj. Pres.

*Qu'il s'ise, qu'ils sièent, that it may, &c.*

The other tenses are never used.

**SURSEOIR**, TO SUPERSEDE, TO PUT OFF, a compound of *seoir*, is only used in law, and is thus conjugated :

Part. act. *Sursoyant.*

Part. pass. *Sursis, isc.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Je sursois, &c. nous sursoyons, &c.*

## Imperfect.

*Je sursoyois, &c. nous sursoyions, &c.*

## Preterite.

*Je sursis, &c. nous surstmes, &c.*

## Future.

*Je surseoirai, &c. nous surseoirons, &c.*

## Conditional.

*Je surseoirois, &c. nous surseoirions, &c.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Sursois, &c. sursoyons, &c.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que je surseoie, &c. que nous sursoyions, &c.*

## Preterite.

*Que je sursisse, &c. que nous sursissions, &c.*

**DECHOIR, TO DECAY, TO DECLINE.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**Present. *Déchoir*, to decay.

Part. act. wanting.

Part. pass. *Déchu*, *ue*, decayed.**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**Sing. *Déchois*, *déchois*, *déchoit*, I decay.Plur. *Déchoyons*, *déchoyez*, *déchoient*,**Imperfect.**Sing. *Je déchoyois*, &c. Plur. *Nous déchoyions*, &c.**Preterite.**Sing. *Déchu*, *déchus*, *déchut*, I decayed, or did de-Plur. *Déchûmes*, *déchûtes*, *déchurent*, cay.**Future.**Sing. *Décherrai*, *décherras*, *décherra*, I shall, or will de-Plur. *Décherrons*, *décherrez*, *décherront*, cay.**Conditional.**Sing. *Décherrois*, *décherrois*, *décherroit*, I should, would,  
or could decay.Plur. *Décherriions*, *décherriez*, *décherroient*,**IMPERATIVE MOOD** is wanting.**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**Sing. *Que* *déchoie*, *que* *déchoies*, *que* *déchoie*, that I may decay.Plur. *Déchoyions*, *déchoyiez*, *déchoient*,**Preterite.**Sing. *Déchusse*, *déchusses*, *déchût*, that I might decay.Plur. *Déchussions*, *déchussiez*, *déchussent*,*CHOIR*, the primitive of the above verb is obsolete.*ECHOIR*, TO FALL OUT, TO CHANCE, is conjugated like *DECHOIR*. Its part. act. is *échéant*, *échu*, p.p.

**MOUVOIR, TO MOVE.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**Present. *Mouvoir*, to move.Part. act. *Mouvant*, moving.Part. pass. *Mû, ue*, moved.**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**Sing. *Meus*, *meus*, *meut*, I move.Plur. *Mouvons*, *mouvez*, *meuvent*,**Imperfect.**Sing. *Mouvois*, *mouvois*, *mouvoit*, I did move.Plur. *Mouvions*, *mouviez*, *mouvoient*,**Preterite.**Sing. *Mus*, *mus*, *mut*, I moved, or did move.Plur. *Mûmes*, *mûtes*, *murent*,**Future.**Sing. *Mourrai*, *mourras*, *mourra*, I shall or will move.Plur. *Mourrons*, *mourez*, *mourront*,**Conditional.**Sing. *Mouvrais*, *mouvrais*, *mouvrait*, I should, could, orPlur. *Mouvrions*, *mouvriez*, *mouvraient*, would move,**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**Sing. *Meus*, *meuve*, move thou.Plur. *Mouvons*, *mouvez*, *meuvent*,**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**Sing. *Que Meuve*, *que meuves*, *que meuve*, that I may move.Plur. *Mouvions*, *mouviez*, *meuvent*,**Preterite.**Sing. *Musse*, *musses*, *mût*, that I might move.Plur. *Mussions*, *mussiez*, *mussent*.

The compound of this verb is,  
*Emouvoir*, to stir up, to move.



**POUVOIR, TO BE ABLE, TO HAVE IN ONE'S POWER.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Pouvoir</i> , to be able.
Part. act.	<i>Pouvant</i> , being able.
Part. pass.	<i>Pu</i> , been able.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Puis</i> , or <i>peux</i> , <i>peux</i> , <i>peut</i> , I am able, I can or may.
Plur.	<i>Pouvons</i> , <i>pouvez</i> , <i>peuvent</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Pouvois</i> , <i>pouvais</i> , <i>pouvait</i> , I was able, or I could.
Plur.	<i>Pouvions</i> , <i>pouviez</i> , <i>pouvoient</i> ,

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Pus</i> , <i>pus</i> , <i>put</i> , I was able, or I could.
Plur.	<i>Pûmes</i> , <i>pûtes</i> , <i>purent</i> ,

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Pourrai</i> , <i>pourras</i> , <i>pourra</i> , I shall, or will be able.
Plur.	<i>Pourrons</i> , <i>pourrez</i> , <i>pourront</i> ,

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Pourrois</i> , <i>pourrais</i> , <i>pourroit</i> , I should be able, I
Plur.	<i>Pourrions</i> , <i>pourriez</i> , <i>pourroient</i> , could, or might.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD wanting.****SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i> <i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Puisse</i> , <i>puisses</i> , <i>puisse</i> , that I may be able, or	
Plur.	<i>Puissions</i> , <i>puissiez</i> , <i>puissent</i> ,	I may.

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Pusse</i> , <i>pusses</i> , <i>pût</i> , that I might be able, or	
Plur.	<i>Pussions</i> , <i>pussiez</i> , <i>pussent</i> ,	I might.

When the words *can*, *may*, *could*, or *might*, express an absolute or permissive power, or a possibility of doing a thing, *can* and *may* are rendered by the present tense of the indicative of this verb: ex.

*Je puis vous vendre un bon cheval, si vous en avez besoin d'un,* I can sell you a good horse, if you want one.

*Vous pouvez aller au bal, mais revenez à dix heures,* You may go to the ball, but come back at ten o'clock.

N. B. *May*, expressing a wish, is rendered by the present tense of the subjunctive: ex.

*Puissiez-vous être heureux !* May you be happy !

*Could* is rendered by one of the following tenses, viz. the imperfect, preterite definite or indefinite, or conditional present; and *might* by the last tense: ex.

*Je ne pouvois pas mieux faire,* I could do no better.

*Il ne put pas venir avec nous la semaine passée,* He could not come with us last week.

*Vous pourriez vous tromper aussi bien que lui,* You might mistake as well as he.

*Could* or *might*, being joined to the verb *to have*, immediately followed by a participle passive, must be rendered by the conditional past of the above verb, with the participle turned into the present of the infinitive mood: ex.

*J'aurois pu vous le dire hier au soir,* I could have told it to you last night.

*Vous auriez pu le faire en trois jours,* You might have done it in three days.

### SAVOIR, TO KNOW something.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Savoir</i> , to know.
Part. act.	<i>Sachant</i> , knowing.
Part. pass.	<i>Su, ue</i> , known.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. Sais,	sais,	sait, I know.
Plur. Savons,	savez,	savent,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Savois, savois, savoit*, I did know, or knew.Plur. *Savions, saviez, savoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Sus, sus, sut*, I knew, or did know.Plur. *Sûmes, sûtes, surent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Saurai, sauras, saura*, I shall, or will know.Plur. *Saurons, saurez, sauront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Saurois,\* saurois, sauroit*, I should, would, orPlur. *Saurions, sauriez, sauroient*, could know.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Sache, sache*, know thou.Plur. *Suchons, sachez, sachent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Sache,† saches, sache*, that I may know.Plur. *Sachions, sachiez, sachent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Susse, susses, sût*, that I might know.Plur. *Sussions, sussiez, sussent*,

## VALOIR, TO BE WORTH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Valoir*, to be worth.Part. act. *Valant*, being worth.Part. pass. *Valu*, been worth.

\* This tense, conjugated negatively, is often Englished by *cannot*:  
ex.

*Je ne saurois vous le dire, I cannot tell it to you.*

† We sometimes employ the present of the subjunctive of this verb instead of the indicative; but it is never to be used without the negation *pas*, and most commonly in answering a question: ex.

*Le roi ira-t-il à la comédie?*

*Will the king go to the play?*

*Pas que je sache,*

*Not that I know of.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. <i>Vaux</i> ,	<i>vaut</i> ,	<i>vaut</i> , I am worth.
Plur. <i>Valons</i> ,	<i>valez</i> ,	<i>valent</i> ,

## Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Valois</i> ,	<i>valois</i> ,	<i>valoit</i> , I was worth.
Plur. <i>Valions</i> ,	<i>valiez</i> ,	<i>valoient</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Valus</i> ,	<i>valus</i> ,	<i>valut</i> , I was worth.
Plur. <i>Valûmes</i> ,	<i>valûtes</i> ,	<i>valurent</i> ,

## Future.

Sing. <i>Vaudrai</i> ,	<i>audras</i> ,	<i>audra</i> , I shall, or will be
Plur. <i>Vaudrons</i> ,	<i>audrez</i> ,	<i>audront</i> , worth.

## Conditional.

Sing. <i>Vaudrois</i> ,	<i>audrois</i> ,	<i>audroit</i> , I should, &c. be
Plur. <i>Vaudrions</i> ,	<i>audriez</i> ,	<i>audroient</i> , worth.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. <i>Vaux</i> ,	<i>vaille</i> ,	be thou worth.
Plur. <i>Valons</i> ,	<i>valez</i> ,	<i>vailent</i> ,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Que	que	que
Sing. <i>Vaille</i> ,	<i>vailleis</i> ,	<i>vaille</i> , that I may be worth.
Plur. <i>Valions</i> ,	<i>valiez</i> ,	<i>vailent</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Valusse</i> ,	<i>valusses</i> ,	<i>valût</i> , that I might be worth.
Plur. <i>Valussions</i> ,	<i>valussiez</i> ,	<i>valussent</i> ,

The compound of this verb is,

*Prévaloir*, to prevail, is conjugated as *VALOIR*: but we say in the present tense of the subjunctive,

*Que je préval-e, es, e, : ions, iez, ent.*

## VOIR, TO SEE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Voir</i> , to see.
Part. act.	<i>Voyant</i> , seeing.
Part. pass.	<i>Vu</i> , <i>ue</i> , seen.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Vois</i> ,	<i>vois</i> ,	<i>voit</i> , I see.
Plur.	<i>Voyons</i> ,	<i>voyez</i> ,	<i>voient</i> ,

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Voyois</i> ,	<i>voyois</i> ,	<i>voyoit</i> , I did see.
Plur.	<i>Voyions</i> ,	<i>voyiez</i> ,	<i>voyoient</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Vis</i> ,	<i>vis</i> ,	<i>vit</i> , I saw, or did see.
Plur.	<i>Vimes</i> ,	<i>vîtes</i> ,	<i>virent</i> ,

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Verrai</i> ,	<i>verras</i> ,	<i>verra</i> , I shall, or will see.
Plur.	<i>Verrons</i> ,	<i>verrez</i> ,	<i>verront</i> ,

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Verrois</i> ,	<i>verrois</i> ,	<i>verroit</i> , I should, &c. see.
Plur.	<i>Verrions</i> ,	<i>verriez</i> ,	<i>verroient</i> ,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Vois</i> ,	<i>voie</i> , see thou.
Plur.	<i>Voyons</i> ,	<i>voyez</i> , <i>voient</i> ,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing.	<i>Voie</i> ,	<i>voies</i> ,	<i>voie</i> , that I may see.
Plur.	<i>Voyions</i> ,	<i>voyiez</i> ,	<i>voient</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Visse</i> ,	<i>visses</i> ,	<i>vît</i> , that I might see.
Plur.	<i>Vissions</i> ,	<i>vissiez</i> ,	<i>vissent</i> ,

<i>Entrevoir</i> , to have a glimpse of.	<i>Prévoir</i> , to foresee.
<i>Revoir</i> , to see again.	<i>Pourvoir</i> , to provide.

**PREVOIR** differs from **VOIR** in the future: ex.

Sing. *Prévoirai, prévoiras, prévoira.*

Plur. *Prévoirons, prévoirez, prévoiront;* And,

Conditional. Present.

Sing. *Prévoirois, prévoirois, prévoiroit.*

Plur. *Prévoirions, prévoiriez, prévoiraient.*

**POURVOIR** makes in the Preterite,

Sing. *Pourvus, pourvus, pourvut.*

Plur. *Pourvûmes, pourvûtes, pourvurent.*

Future.

Sing. *Pourvoirai, pourvoiras, pourvoira.*

Plur. *Pourvoirons, pourvoirez, pourvoiront.*

Conditional.

Sing. *Pourvoirois, pourvoirois, pourvoiroit.*

Plur. *Pourvoirions, pourvoiriez, pourvoiraient.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Preterite.

Sing. *Pourvusse, pourvusses, pourvût.*

Plur. *Pourvussions, pourvussiez, pourvussent.*

**VOULOIR, TO BE WILLING.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vouloir, to be willing.*

Part. act. *Voulant, being willing.*

Part. pass. *Voulu, ue, been willing.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing. *Veux, veux, veut, I am willing, or I will.*

Plur. *Voulons, voulez, veulent,*

Imperfect.

Sing. *Voulois, voulois, voulait, I was willing, or I would.*

Plur. *Voulions, vouliez, voulaient,*

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Voulus,</i>	<i>voulus,</i>	<i>voulut,</i>	I was willing, or I
Plur.	<i>Voulûmes,</i>	<i>voulûtes,</i>	<i>voulurent,</i>	would.

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Voudrai,</i>	<i>voudras,</i>	<i>voudra,</i>	I shall be willing, or
Plur.	<i>Voudrons,</i>	<i>voudrez,</i>	<i>voudront,</i>	I will.

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Voudrois,</i>	<i>voudrois,</i>	<i>voudroit,</i>	I should be wil-
Plur.	<i>Voudrions,</i>	<i>voudriez,</i>	<i>voudroient,</i>	ling, or I would.

IMPERATIVE MOOD is wanting.

However, we say,  
*Veillez bien,* be willing to.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Veuille,</i>	<i>veuilles,</i>	<i>veuille,</i>	that I may be wil-
Plur.	<i>Vou lions,</i>	<i>vouliez,</i>	<i>veuillent,</i>	ling.

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Voulusse,</i>	<i>voulusses,</i>	<i>voulût,</i>	that I might be wil-
Plur.	<i>Voulussions,</i>	<i>voulussiez,</i>	<i>voulussent,</i>	ling.

When the words *will* or *would* signify a will, choice, or deliberation in the agent, and can be expressed by *choôse* or *chose*, *will* is rendered in French by the present of the indicative mood, or future of this verb: ex.

*Je veux y aller, et lui par-* I will, or choose to, go  
*ler moi-même,* there, and speak to him  
myself:

*Il ne veut pas manger,* He will not eat, or does  
not choose to eat:

and *would* by one of the following tenses, viz. the Imperfect, Preterite, Conditional, or Compound of the Present.

- Si je voulois, je vous dirois,* If I would, or chose, I could  
*où elle demeure,* tell you where she lives.  
*Il voulut absolument partir* He would, absolutely, or  
*hier,* absolutely chose to, set  
 out yesterday.  
*Que voudriez-vous que je* What would you have me  
*fisse ?* do ?

When *would* is joined to the verb *to have* immediately followed by a participle passive, they are to be rendered by the compound of the imperfect or compound of the conditional of the above verb, with the participle passive turned into the present of the infinitive mood : ex.

- Si j'avois voulu lui parler,* If I would have spoken to  
 him, or had I chosen to  
 speak to him.  
*Vous n'auriez pas voulu* You would not have taken  
*prendre les armes, si, &c.* up arms, if, &c.  
*Nous aurions pu l'arrêter, si* We could have stopped  
*nous eussions voulu,* him, if we had been wil-  
 ling, or had chosen.

### EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

- Why do not you sit down, sir ? - You  
*Pourquoi, adv.*  
 come to see me very seldom. - Let us sit down upon  
*rarement, adv.*  
 the grass. - Do not make (so much) noise, I cannot  
*herbe, f.* *faire, v. tant, adv.*  
 learn my lesson. - Do you know what has hap-  
*apprendre, v.* *est arri-*  
 pened to her ? - No, I do not. - As soon as he saw  
*ver, v.* *Aussitôt que, c.*  
 he could not make her hear reason, he went  
*entendre, v.* *s'en*  
 away. - We went there ourselves, and soon knew  
*aller, v.* *bientôt, adv.*



what she asked. - - See the letter she wrote me. - - We  
*écrire, v.*

will not sit down till you have determined to  
*que ne se déterminer, v. subj. à*

set out. - - The first time I saw your sister, she pleased  
*fois, f. plaire, v.*

me. - I would sit down upon the grass, if it were not so  
 damp. - - Mrs. P. desired me to tell you she could  
*humide, adj. prier, v. de dire, v.*

not come to see you this week, but (that) she would cer-  
*semaine, f. cer-*

tainly come (at the) beginning of next  
*tainement, adv. au commencement, m.*

month. - - Cannot you lend me three or four  
*mois, m. prêter, v.*

guineas? - - If I would, I could soon know  
*guinée bien tôt, adv.*

whether Mrs. D. has seen your aunt or not. - -  
*si, c. tante, f. non.*

The last time I was in the park, I could not distinguish  
 her on account of the trees that were between  
*à cause, p.*

her and me; (I had only a) glimpse of her. - - -  
*je n'ai fait que*

This cloth is not worth five shillings a yard, but the  
*drap, m.*

colour becomes you very well. - - Do you not see the  
 defects of it? - - When you know your lesson  
*défaut, m. (by the fut.)*

come and repeat it to me. - - Did you not know that  
*en répéter, v.*

Mr. A. (was to) marry Miss B.? - - - I knew it, but  
*épouser, v. mais, c.*

I was not willing to tell your brother of it. - - - I be-  
*parler, v.*

lieve you could learn your lessons much bet-  
*apprendre, v. beaucoup, adv.*

ter, if you would. - - Could you lend me your horse  
*prêter, v.*

for two or three days? - - If your brother come with  
 me, will he be able to follow me? - - What will you  
 lay that he will not come without his sister? - - This  
 room can contain about a hundred people. - - Could  
 they see so great an alteration, without being  
 vexed (at it)? - - (It is) better to be unfortunate than  
 criminal. - - He who cannot command himself, is inca-  
 pable of commanding others. - - His best coat was not  
 worth two-pence when he arrived from Germany. - - -  
 We saw them yesterday. - - They did not foresee  
 what would happen to them. - - We ought to  
 make a judicious choice of those friends, to  
 whom we intend to give our confidence. - - Do you  
 know where Miss B. lives? - - Yes, I do (know it),  
 and I see her every day at her window. - - - Why will  
 you not tell it me? - - She would marry him in  
 spite of all her relations. - - It is for this reason  
 her father says he will never see her again. - - I  
 have spoken of your wine to two friends of mine :  
 one has money, but he will not buy; the other would  
 buy, but he has no money. - - Some told me that  
 your brother could not pay me, others told me that

he would not; in short, I find that, when people  
*enfin,adv. gens,pl.*

will not pay, we have much trouble. - - We regularly  
 pay all that we owe, but he says, that he will pay  
 nobody. - - All the finest talents united are not  
*réunir,v.*

worth one virtue. - - Virtue is a quality which we can-  
*on,pro.*

not (too much) praise. - - Severity and rigour may  
*trop,adv. louer,v. Sévérité,f. rigueur,f.*

excite fear, but not love. - - You saw with what  
*crainte,f. amour,m.*

goodness she received him. - - I would not tell her  
*bonté,f. recevoir,v.*

what I think about it, for fear of giving her the least  
*de,p. inf.*

subject of complaint. - - If you foresee the danger,  
*plainte.*

why do you not endeavour to avoid it? - - They were  
*tâcher,v. de éviter,v.*

willing to withdraw but your brother hindered  
*se retirer,v. empêcher,v.*

them (from it), and desired them to sit down again.  
*prier,v. de*

- - You can speak to Mr. B. whenever you  
*parler,v. quand,*

please, but I may not take that liberty. - -  
*vouloir,v. prendre,v.*

Why may you not? - - - You know the esteem  
*estime,f.*

and friendship that I have for him: you know  
 that his father is one of my oldest friends;  
*ancien,adj.*

you know yourself the merit of both. - - He would  
 not sell me these buckles under four  
*vendre,v. boucle,f. à moins de,p.*

guineas. - - I will not see (any more) your brother,  
*plus,adv.*

but I will see you again as soon as I can. - - -  
*(by the fut.)*

Every body thinks, that, if ~~they~~ <sup>they</sup> would have pursued  
 the enemy briskly, <sup>poursuivre, v.</sup> they might have ended  
<sup>vigoureusement, adv.</sup> the war on that day. - - Should we, see ourselves re-

duced to so great difficulties? - - If I would have be-  
<sup>ré-</sup>  
 lieved him, he would have persuaded me to go to Italy  
<sup>croire, v.</sup> with him. - - He could have done his work in less

than ten minutes, if he had not amused himself in  
<sup>de</sup>  
<sup>faire, v.</sup> reading. - - If you want that book, you may take  
<sup>en, p.</sup>  
<sup>s'amuser, v.</sup> it, it is at your service. - - If he sold all his horses now,

the best of them would not be worth ten guineas. - - -  
<sup>à</sup>  
 We might have danced till (twelve o'clock) if

that had not happened. - - Oh! my children, may you  
<sup>jusqu'à, p.</sup>  
<sup>minuit,</sup>  
 be happy, and never bewail the moment of your  
<sup>heureux, adj.</sup>  
<sup>pleurer, v.</sup> birth! - - I spoke to her (a long while), but could

not persuade her to come with me. - - - May I go  
<sup>naissance, f.</sup>  
<sup>long-temps, adv.</sup>  
 and see him? - - - Yes, you may, but come back,

as soon as you can.  
<sup>de</sup>  
<sup>aussitôt que, c.</sup> (by the fut.)

\* After the conjunction *Si*, always use the imperfect; see p. 150, and 155.

## VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

*ABSoudre*, TO ABSOLVE, TO ACQUIT.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Absoudre*, to absolve.  
 Part. act. *Absolvant*, absolving.  
 Part. pass. *Absous, oute*, absolved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Absous*, *absous*, *absout*, I absolve,  
 Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Absolvois*, *absolvois*, *absolvoit*, I did absolve.  
 Plur. *Absolvions*, *absolviez*, *absolvoient*,

Preterite is wanting.

## Future.

Sing. *Absoudrai*, *absoudras*, *absoudra*, I shall, or will  
 Plur. *Absoudrons*, *absoudrez*, *absoudront*, absolve.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Absoudrois*, *absoudrois*, *absoudroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Absoudrions*, *absoudriez*, *absoudroient*, absolve.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Absous*, *absolve*, absolve thou.  
 Plur. *Absolvons*, *absolvez*, *absolvent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Absolve*, *absolves*, *absolve*, that I may absolve,  
 Plur. *Absolvions*, *absolviez*, *absolvent*,

Preterite is wanting.

*Soudre*, TO SOLVE, (the primitive of this verb), is used only in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

The other compounds are,

*Dissoudre*, to dissolve. *Résoudre*, to resolve.

*Dissoudre* has the same tenses wanting as *absoudre*.

*Résoudre* has its participle passive, *résolu*: its preterite is,

Sing. *Résolus*, *résolus*, *résolût*.

Plur. *Résolûmes*, *résolûtes*, *résolurent*.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

##### Preterite.

Sing. *Résolusse*, *résolusses*, *résolût*.

Plur. *Résolussions*, *résolussiez*, *résolussent*.

---

**ATTEINDRE**, TO REACH, TO HIT, TO ATTAIN,  
TO OVERTAKE, and

**ASTREINDRE**, TO OBLIGE;

**AVEINDRE**, TO REACH, TO FETCH OUT,  
are conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

The two foregoing verbs are growing obsolete.

---

**BATTRE**, TO BEAT.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Battre*, to beat.

Part. act. *Battant*, beating.

Part. pass. *Battu*, *ue*, beaten.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. *Bats*, *bats*, *bat*, I beat, or am beating.

Plur. *Battons*, *battez*, *battent*,

##### Imperfect.

Sing. *Battois*, *battois*, *battoit*, I did beat, or was beating.

Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battoient*, ing.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Battis*, *battis*, *battit*, I beat, or did beat.Plur. *Battîmes*, *battîles*, *battîrent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Battrai*, *battras*, *battrà*, I shall, or will beat.Plur. *Battrons*, *battriez*, *battront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Battrois*, *battrois*, *battroit*, I should, &c. beat.Plur. *Battrions*, *battriez*, *battroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Bats*, *balle*, beat thou.Plur. *Battons*, *ballez*, *battent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que* *Batte*, *que* *battes*, *que* *batte*, that I may beat.Plur. *Battions*, *battiez*, *battent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Battisse*, *battisses*, *battît*, that I might beat.Plur. *Battissions*, *battissiez*, *battissent*.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Abattre*, to pull down, to  
throw down.*Combattre*, to fight.*Débattre*, to debate.*Se débattre*, to struggle.*Rabattre*, to abate, to beat  
down.*Rebattre*, to beat again.

---

**BOIRE, TO DRINK.**

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Boire*, to drink.Part. act. *Buvant*, drinking.Part. pass. *Bu*, *ué*, drunk.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Bois,</i>	<i>bois,</i>	<i>boit,</i>	I drink, or am drinking.
Plur.	<i>Buvons,</i>	<i>buvez,</i>	<i>boivent,</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Buvois,</i>	<i>buvois,</i>	<i>buvoit,</i>	I did drink, or was drinking.
Plur.	<i>Buvions,</i>	<i>buviez,</i>	<i>buvoient,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Bus,</i>	<i>bus,</i>	<i>but,</i>	I drank, or did drink.
Plur.	<i>Bûmes,</i>	<i>bûtes,</i>	<i>burent,</i>	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Boirai,</i>	<i>boiras,</i>	<i>boira,</i>	I shall, or will drink.
Plur.	<i>Boirons,</i>	<i>boirez,</i>	<i>boiront,</i>	

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Boirois,</i>	<i>boirois,</i>	<i>boiroit,</i>	I should, &c. drink.
Plur.	<i>Boirions,</i>	<i>boiriez,</i>	<i>boiroient,</i>	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.		<i>Bois,</i>	<i>boive,</i>	drink thou.
Plur.	<i>Buvons,</i>	<i>buvez,</i>	<i>boivent,</i>	

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Boive,</i>	<i>boives,</i>	<i>boive,</i>	that I may drink.
Plur.	<i>Buvions,</i>	<i>buviez,</i>	<i>boivent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Busse,</i>	<i>busses,</i>	<i>bût,</i>	that I might drink.
Plur.	<i>Bussions,</i>	<i>bussiez,</i>	<i>bussent,</i>	

N. B. *Boire dans quelque chose*, is, To drink out of something.

---

*BRAIRE*, TO BRAY.

This verb is seldom used, except in the present tense of the infinitive mood, and the third person



singular and plural of the present, future, and conditional, of the indicative mood.

Infinitive. *Braire*, to bray.—Present, indicative. *Il brait, ils braient*.—Future. *Il braira, ils brairont*.—Conditional. *Il brairoit, ils brairoient*.—This verb expresses the discordant cry of an ass.

**BRUIRE**, TO ROAR, TO MAKE A GREAT NOISE.

This verb is used only in the present of the infinitive mood, and in the third person of the imperfect, indicative: *il bruyoit, ils bruyoient*. Its participle active, *bruyant*, is often but a mere adjective.

**CEINDRE**, TO GIRD,

And its compound, *Enceindre*, to inclose, to encompass, are conjugated like **CRAINDRE**.

**CIRCONCIRE**, TO CIRCUMCISE,

is conjugated like **CONFIRE**, but has its participle passive ending in *is, ise*, instead of *it*.

**CONCLURE**, TO CONCLUDE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Conclure</i> , to conclude.
Part. act.	<i>Concluant</i> , concluding.
Part. pass.	<i>Conclu, ue</i> , concluded.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Sing.	<i>Conclus, conclus, conclut</i> , I conclude.
Plur.	<i>Concluons, concluez, concluent</i> ,

Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Concluois, concluois, concluoit</i> , I did conclude.
Plur.	<i>Concluions, concluïez, concluoient</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Conclus*, *conclus*, *conclut*, I concluded, or did  
 Plur. *Conclûmes*, *conclûtes*, *conclurent*, conclude.

## Future.

Sing. *Conclurai*, *concluras*, *conclura*, I shall, or will  
 Plur. *Conclurons*, *conclurez*, *concluront*, conclude.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Conclurois*, *conclurois*, *concluroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Conclurions*, *concluriez*, *concluroient*, conclude.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Conclus*, *conclue*, conclude thou.  
 Plur. *Concluons*, *concluez*, *concluent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* . *que* . *que*  
 Sing. *Conclue*, *conclues*, *conclue*, that I may con-  
 Plur. *Concluions*, *concluïez*, *concluent*, clude.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Conclusse*, *conclusses*, *conclût*, that I might con-  
 Plur. *Conclussions*, *conclussiez*, *conclussent*, clude.

## CONDUIRE, TO CONDUCT, TO LEAD, TO CARRY.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Conduire*, to conduct.  
 Part. act. *Conduisant*, conducting.  
 Part. pass. *Conduit*, *te*, conducted.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Conduis*, *conduis*, *conduit*, I lead, &c.  
 Plur. *Conduisons*, *conduisez*, *conduisent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Conduisois*, *conduisois*, *conduisoit*, I did lead.  
 Plur. *Conduisions*, *conduisiez*, *conduisoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Conduisis</i> ,	<i>conduisis</i> ,	<i>conduisit</i> , I led.
Plur. <i>Conduisîmes</i> ,	<i>conduisîtes</i> ,	<i>conduisirent</i> ,

## Future.

Sing. <i>Conduirai</i> ,	<i>conduiras</i> ,	<i>conduira</i> , I shall, or
Plur. <i>Conduirons</i> ,	<i>conduirez</i> ,	<i>conduiront</i> , will lead.

## Conditional.

Sing. <i>Conduirois</i> ,	<i>conduirois</i> ,	<i>conduiroit</i> , I should, &c.
Plur. <i>Conduirions</i> ,	<i>conduiriez</i> ,	<i>conduiroient</i> , lead.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Conduis</i> ,	<i>conduise</i> , lead thou.
Plur. <i>Conduisons</i> ,	<i>conduisez</i> ,	<i>conduisent</i> ,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Conduise</i> ,	<i>conduises</i> ,	<i>conduise</i> ,	that I may	
Plur. <i>Conduisions</i> ,	<i>conduisiez</i> ,	<i>conduisent</i> ,	lead.	

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Conduisisse</i> ,	<i>conduisisses</i> ,	<i>conduisît</i> , that I might
Plur. <i>Conduisissions</i> ,	<i>conduisissiez</i> ,	<i>cōnduississent</i> , lead.

Its compound is

*Reconduire*, to lead again.

## CONFIRE, TO PRESERVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Confire</i> , to preserve.
Part. act.	<i>Confisant</i> , preserving.
Part. pass.	<i>Confit</i> , <i>te</i> , preserved.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. <i>Confis</i> ,	<i>confis</i> ,	<i>confit</i> , I preserve.
Plur. <i>Confisons</i> ,	<i>confisez</i> ,	<i>confisent</i> ,

## Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Confisois</i> ,	<i>confisois</i> ,	<i>confisoit</i> , I did preserve:
Plur. <i>Confisions</i> ,	<i>confisiez</i> ,	<i>confisoient</i> ,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Confis*, *confis*, *confit*, I preserved.Plur. *Confimes*, *confites*, *confirent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Confirai*, *confiras*, *confira*, I shall, or will pre-Plur. *Confirons*, *confirez*, *confiront*, serve.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Confirois*, *confirois*, *confiroit*, I should, &c. pre-Plur. *Confirions*, *confiriez*, *confiroient*, serve.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Confis*, *confise*, preserve thou.Plur. *Confisons*, *confisez*, *confisent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Que Confise*, *que confises*, *que confise*, that I may preserve.Plur. *Confissions*, *confisiez*, *confisent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Confisse*, *confisses*, *confit*, that I might preserve.Plur. *Confissions*, *confissiez*, *confissent*,**CONNOITRE**, TO KNOW, TO BE ACQUAINTED  
WITH, somebody.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Connoître*, to know.Part. act. *Connoissant*, knowing.†Part. pass. *Connu*, *ue*, known.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Connois*, *connois*, *connoît*, I know.Plur. *Connoissons*, *connoissez*, *connoissent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Connoissois*, *connoissois*, *connoissoit*, I did know.Plur. *Connoissions*, *connoissiez*, *connoissoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Connus*, *connus*, *connut*, I knew.  
 Plur. *Connûmes*, *connûtes*, *connurent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Connoîtrai*, *connoîtras*, *connoîtra*, I shall, &c.  
 Plur. *Connoîtrons*, *connoîtrez*, *connoîtront*, know.

## Conditional.

Sing. *Connoîtrois*, *connoîtrois*, *connoîtroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Connoîtrions*, *connoîtriez*, *connoîtroient*, know.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Connois*, *connoisse*, know thou.  
 Plur. *Connoissons*, *connoissez*, *connoissent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Connoisse*, *connoisses*, *connoisse*, that I may  
 Plur. *Connoissions*, *connoissiez*, *connoissent*, know.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Connusse*, *connusses*, *connût*, that I might know.  
 Plur. *Connussions*, *connussiez*, *connussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Méconnoître*, to take for another. | *Reconnoître*, to acknowledge, to know again.

**CONSTRUIRE**, TO CONSTRUCT, TO BUILD,  
 is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

• **CONTRAINdre**, TO CONTRAÎN, TO COMPEL,  
 TO FORCE,  
 is conjugated like **CRaindre**.

**COUDRE, TO SEW, TO STITCH.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Coudre</i> , to sew.
Part. act.	<i>Cousant</i> , sewing.
Part. pass.	<i>Cousu, ue</i> , sewed.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing. <i>Couds</i> ,	<i>couds</i> ,	<i>coud</i> , I sew, or am sewing.
Plur. <i>Cousons</i> ,	<i>cousez</i> ,	<i>cousent</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing. <i>Cousois</i> ,	<i>cousois</i> ,	<i>cousoit</i> , I did sew, or was sewing.
Plur. <i>Cousions</i> ,	<i>cousiez</i> ,	<i>cousoient</i> ,

**Preterite.**

Sing. <i>Cousis</i> ,	<i>cousis</i> ,	<i>cousit</i> , I sewed.
Plur. <i>Cousîmes</i> ,	<i>cousîtes</i> ,	<i>cousirent</i> ,

**Future.**

Sing. <i>Coudrai</i> ,	<i>coudras</i> ,	<i>coudra</i> , I shall, or will sew.
Plur. <i>Coudrons</i> ,	<i>coudrez</i> ,	<i>coudront</i> ,

**Conditional.**

Sing. <i>Coudrois</i> ,	<i>coudrois</i> ,	<i>coudroit</i> , I should, &c. sew.
Plur. <i>Coudrions</i> ,	<i>coudriez</i> ,	<i>coudroient</i> ,

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Couds</i> ,	<i>couse</i> , sew thou.
Plur. <i>Cousons</i> ,	<i>cousez</i> ,	<i>cousent</i> ,

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i> .
Sing. <i>Couse</i> ,	<i>couser</i> ,	<i>couse</i> , that I may sew.
Plur. <i>Cousions</i> ,	<i>cousiez</i> ,	<i>cousent</i> ,

**Preterite.**

Sing. <i>Cousisse</i> ,	<i>cousisses</i> ,	<i>cousît</i> , that I might sew.
Plur. <i>Cousissions</i> ,	<i>cousissiez</i> ,	<i>cousissent</i> ,

Its compounds are,

*Découdre*, to unsew.

*Recoudre*, to sew again.

# EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS:

I know several persons in this country who  
*plusieurs,adj.* *pays,m.*  
 speak as good French, as if they had been (brought up)  
*bien,adv.* *élevé,p.p.*  
 in France. - - - Do you know Mr. A.? - - -  
 Yes, we know him very well; and, though he is  
*Oui,adv.* *soit*  
 rich, I assure you he is not the more charitable for  
 it. - - - He has been beaten (soundly). - - If you  
*comme il faut,*  
 knew the question, you would resolve it in two  
*question,f.* *en*  
 words. - - I will soon conclude, if you think as  
*mot,m.* *comme,adv.*  
 your brother does. - - We should beat them, if they  
 did not fight in their own country. - - Do not  
*propre,adj.*  
 beat him any more, he acknowledges his fault. - - -  
*faute,f.*  
 We ran for above two hours, but at last  
*pendant,p.* *plus de,adv.* *enfin,adv.*  
 your brother overtook him, and brought him back. - -  
*ramener,v.*  
 You would never see him again, if you knew him. - - -  
 He struggled a long while, but he was soon obliged  
*temps,m.*  
 to (cry for) mercy. - - This mortification has pulled  
*de demander,v.* *grâce.*  
 down his pride, I assure you: however, the judge  
*cependant,adv.*  
 has acquitted him of the accusation falsely  
*faussetment,adv.*  
 brought against him. - - Mr. R. told me some time  
*inté, p.p.* *contre,p.*

ago, that he would build a ship on a new plan. - - .  
 What will you drink? - - I will drink (nothing but)  
*ne que*  
 water. - - Do not drink so much. - - If your father  
*tant,adv.*  
 were here, you would not drink (at all.) - - .  
*du tout.*  
 Let us fill our glasses, and drink our friend's health. - - .  
*verre,m. santé,f.*  
 We beat them because our troops were better dis-  
*parceque,c. dis-*  
 ciplined than theirs. - - Come with us, we shall  
*cipliné,p.p.*  
 see whether she will know you again or not. - - If you  
*si,c. non.*  
 knew her, I am certain she would please you. - - .  
*plaire,v.*  
 The English drink as much tea as the Venetians  
*autant,adv. thé, Vénitien,m.*  
 drink coffee. - - - After tea we conducted the ladies  
*café.*  
 to the concert. - - - When they had explained to us  
 all that had passed, we acknowledged we (were in the  
*se passer,v. avoir*  
 wrong). - - - Your brother's coat was torn,  
*tort. déchirer,v.*  
 but our tailor sewed it up again so skilfully,  
*tailleur,m. adroitement,adv.*  
 that his father did not perceive it. - - - Unsew  
 that gown. - - I will sew it to-morrow. - - - The  
 Jews and the Mahometans circumcise their  
*Juif,m. Mahométan,m.*  
 children a few days after their birth. - - - Why  
*peu,adv. naissance,f.*  
 do not you preserve some fruits this year? - - - He  
*année,f.*  
 would not know you, if he saw you now. - - - Did  
*à présent,adv.*



you ask him whether he (was acquainted with) any of  
 these ladies? - - I know Mr. Y. but I do not trust  
 to him. - - You will force your father to punish you  
 if you do not behave better. - - - The last  
 time we went to Vauxhall, we drank three bottles of  
 Champagne-wine. - - The enemy beat us on the  
 eighteenth, but we beat them again two days after.  
 - - What will you drink, ladies? - - We shall willingly  
 drink some wine; for we have not drunk  
 any since our departure from France. - - -  
 Drink, said she to me, (out of) that cup, the  
 only token which your father has left  
 us of his love. - - - Virtue in indigence is like  
 a traveller whom the wind and rain compel to  
 wrap himself up in his cloak. - - I would have  
 preserved some fruits this year, but sugar is too  
 dear. - - Thence we concluded you could not come  
 to-day. - - I know nobody in this neighbourhood. - - I  
 knew your sister again as soon as I saw her. - - Though  
 you should take three dozen of them, I could

*si, c.*  
*se fier, v.*  
*à*  
*se comporter, v.*  
*le*  
*mesdames, f.*  
*volon-*  
*tiers, adv.*  
*depuis, p.*  
*départ, m.*  
*dans*  
*coupe, f.*  
*seul, adj.*  
*marque, f.*  
*ait laisser, v.*  
*affection, f.*  
*dans, p.*  
*comme*  
*pluie, f.*  
*de*  
*enveloppe, v.*  
*de,*  
*manteau, m.*  
*trop, adv.*  
*De là, adv.*  
*voisinage, m.*  
*Quand, c.*  
*douzaine,*

not abate a farthing. - - The wind was so great that.  
*liard, m. vent, m. fort,*  
 it has thrown down one or two trees in our garden.

## **CRAINdre, TO FEAR, TO BE AFRAID. 4**

### **INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Présent. *Craindre*, to fear.  
 Part. act. *Craignant*, fearing.  
 Part. pass. *Craint, ainte*, feared.

### **INDICATIVE MOOD.**

#### **Present.**

Sing. *Crains, crains, craint*, I fear, or am afraid.  
 Plur. *Craignons, craignez, craignent*,

#### **Imperfect.**

Sing. *Craignois, craignois, craignoit*, I did fear, or  
 Plur. *Craignons, craigniez, craignoient*, was afraid.

#### **Preterite.**

Sing. *Craignis, craignis, craignit*, I feared.  
 Plur. *Craignîmes, craignîtes, craignirent*,

#### **Future.**

Sing. *Craindrai, craindras, craindra*, I shall, or will  
 Plur. *Craindrons, craindrez, craindront*, fear.

#### **Conditional.**

Sing. *Craindrois, craindrois, craindroit*, I should, &c.  
 Plur. *Craindrions, craindriez, craindroient*, fear.

### **IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Crains, craigne*, fear thou.  
 Plur. *Craignons, craignez, craignent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Craigne,</i>	<i>craignes,</i>	<i>craigne,</i>	that I may fear.
Plur.	<i>Craignons,</i>	<i>craigniez,</i>	<i>craignent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Craignisse,</i>	<i>craignisses,</i>	<i>craignît,</i>	that I might
Plur.	<i>Craignissions,</i>	<i>craignissiez,</i>	<i>craignissent,</i>	fear.

## CROIRE, TO BELIEVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Croire,</i>	to believe.
Part. act.	<i>Croyant,</i>	believing.
Part. pass.	<i>Cru, ue,</i>	believed.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing.	<i>Crois,</i>	<i>crois,</i>	<i>croit,</i>	I believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyons,</i>	<i>croyez,</i>	<i>croient,</i>	

## Imperfect.

Sing.	<i>Croyois,</i>	<i>croyois,</i>	<i>croyoit,</i>	I did believe.
Plur.	<i>Croyions,</i>	<i>croyiez,</i>	<i>croyoient,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing.	<i>Crus,</i>	<i>crus,</i>	<i>crut,</i>	I believed.
Plur.	<i>Crûmes,</i>	<i>crûtes,</i>	<i>crurent,</i>	

## Future.

Sing.	<i>Ecroirai,</i>	<i>croiras,</i>	<i>croira,</i>	I shall, or will believe.
Plur.	<i>Croirons,</i>	<i>croirez,</i>	<i>croiront,</i>	

## Conditional.

Sing.	<i>Croirois,</i>	<i>croirois,</i>	<i>croiroit,</i>	I should, &c. believe.
Plur.	<i>Croirions,</i>	<i>croiriez,</i>	<i>croiroient,</i>	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Crois,</i>	<i>croie,</i>	believe thou.
Plur. <i>Croyons,</i>	<i>croyez,</i>	<i>croient,</i>	

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. :

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Croie,</i>	<i>croies,</i>	<i>croie,</i>	that I may believe.	
Plur. <i>Croyions,</i>	<i>croyiez,</i>	<i>croient,</i>		

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Crusse,</i>	<i>crusses,</i>	<i>crût,</i>	that I might believe.
Plur. <i>Crussions,</i>	<i>crussiez,</i>	<i>crussent,</i>	

**CROITRE**, TO GROW,

And its compounds,

*Accroître*, to accrue,*Décroître*, to decrease, to  
grow less,*Recroître*, to grow again,are conjugated like **CONNOITRE**.**CUIRE**, TO BAKE, TO BOIL, often Englished by  
TO DO,And its compound *Recuire*, to bake again ;**DEDUIRE**, TO DEDUCT, TO ABATE,and **DETRUIRE**, TO DESTROY ;are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.**DIRE**, TO SAY, TO TELL.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	<i>Dire</i> , to say.
Part. act.	<i>Disant</i> , saying.
Part. pass.	<i>Dit, te</i> , said.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. <i>Dis,</i>	<i>dis,</i>	<i>dit,</i> I say, or am saying.
Plur. <i>Disons,</i>	<i>dites,*</i>	<i>disent,</i>

## Imperfect.

Sing. <i>Disois,</i>	<i>disois,</i>	<i>disoit,</i> I did say, or was saying.
Plur. <i>Disions,</i>	<i>disiez,</i>	<i>disoient,</i>

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Dis,</i>	<i>dis,</i>	<i>dit,</i> I did say, or said.
Plur. <i>Dîmes,</i>	<i>dîtes,</i>	<i>dirent,</i>

## Future.

Sing. <i>Dirai,</i>	<i>diras,</i>	<i>dira,</i> I shall, or will say.
Plur. <i>Dirons,</i>	<i>direz,</i>	<i>diront,</i>

## Conditional.

Sing. <i>Dirois,</i>	<i>dirois,</i>	<i>diroit,</i> I should, &c. say.
Plur. <i>Dirions,</i>	<i>diriez,</i>	<i>diroient,</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	<i>Dis,</i>	<i>dise,</i> say thou.
Plur. <i>Disons,</i>	<i>dites,*</i>	<i>disent,</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Dise,</i>	<i>dises,</i>	<i>dise,</i>	that I may say.
Plur. <i>Disions,</i>	<i>disiez,</i>	<i>disent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Disse,</i>	<i>disses,</i>	<i>dît,</i>	that I might say.
Plur. <i>Dissions,</i>	<i>dissiez,</i>	<i>dissent,</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Contredire,</i> to contradict.		<i>Interdire,</i> to interdict, to
<i>Se dédire,</i> to unsay, to re-		forbid.
tract, to recant.		<i>Prédire,</i> to foretell.

\* All the above compounds (*Redire* excepted, which is conjugated like its primitive) make *isez* instead of *ites*; and *Maudire* doubles its *s* through the whole verb; ex. *Nous maudissons, vous maudissez, ils maudissent,* &c.

<i>Médire de</i> , to slander, to speak ill.	<i>Redire</i> , to say, or tell again.
<i>Maudire</i> , to curse.	

**ECCLORE**, TO HATCH, TO OPEN, TO COME  
TO LIFE.

This verb is seldom used but in the infinitive mood, present tense, and the third persons of the following tenses.

**INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Eclore*, to open, to hatch, to come to life.  
Part. pass. *Eclos, ose*,

**INDICATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Il éclôt.*  
Plur. *Ils éclosent.*

**Future.**

Sing. *Il éclôra.*  
Plur. *Ils éclôront.*

**Conditional.**

Sing. *Il éclôroit.*  
Plur. *Ils éclôroient.*

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

**Present.**

Sing. *Qu'il éclose.*  
Plur. *Qu'ils éclosent.*

It is only used when speaking of oviparous animals or of flowers.

The primitive of the above verb is *Clore*, to shut, to surround; and another compound, *Enclore*, to shut in, to surround, with walls, hedges, or ditches.

**ECRIRE, TO WRITE.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Ecrire*, to write.  
 Part. act. *Ecrivant*, writing.  
 Part. pass. *Ecrit*, *ite*, written.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing. *Ecris*, *écris*, *écrit*, I write, or am writing.  
 Plur. *Ecrivons*, *écrivez*, *écrivent*,

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Ecrivois*, *écrivais*, *écrivait*, I did write, or was  
 Plur. *Ecrivions*, *écriviez*, *écrivaient*, writing.

**Preterite.**

Sing. *Ecrivis*, *écrivis*, *écrivit*, I wrote, or did write.  
 Plur. *Ecrivîmes*, *écrivîtes*, *écrivirent*,

**Future.**

Sing. *Ecrirai*, *écriras*, *écrira*, I shall, or will write.  
 Plur. *Ecrivons*, *écriverez*, *écriront*,

**Conditional.**

Sing. *Ecrirois*, *écrirais*, *écrirait*, I should, &c. write.  
 Plur. *Ecrivions*, *écrivriez*, *écriraient*,

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing. *Ecris*, *écrive*, write thou.  
 Plur. *Ecrivons*, *écrivez*, *écrivent*,

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Ecrive*, *écrives*, *écrive*, that I may write.  
 Plur. *Ecrivions*, *écriviez*, *écrivent*.

**Preterite.**

Sing. *Ecrivisse*, *écrivisses*, *écrivît*, that I might write.  
 Plur. *Ecrivissions*, *écrivissiez*, *écrivissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Décrire*, to describe.  
*Inscrire*, to inscribe.  
*Prescrire*, to prescribe.  
*Récrire*, to write again.

*Proscrire*, to proscribe, to  
 outlaw, to banish.  
*Souscrire*, to subscribe.  
*Transcrire*, to transcribe.

**ENDUIRE**, TO DO OVER,  
 is conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

**ETEINDRE**, TO EXTINGUISH,  
 is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

**EXCLURE**, TO EXCLUDE,  
 is conjugated like **CONCLURE**.  
 Its participle passive is *exclus*.

**FAIRE**, TO MAKE, TO DO.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Faire*, to make.  
 Part. act. *Faisant*,\* making.  
 Part. pass. *Fait*, *te*, made.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. *Fais*, *fais*, *fait*, I make, or am making.  
 Plur. *Faisons*\*, *faites*, *font*,

##### Imperfect.

Sing. *Faisois*, *faisois*, *faisoit*, I did make, or was making.  
 Plur. *Faisions*, *faisiez*, *faisoient*,

\*

##### Preterite.

Sing. *Fis*, *fit*, *fit*, I made, or did make.  
 Plur. *Fîmes*, *fîtes*, *fîrent*,

\* In the whole of the imperfect and in the other cases marked with a \*, *ai* is silent.



## Future.

Sing. *Ferai, feras, fera*, I shall, or will make.Plur. *Ferons, ferez, feront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Ferois, ferois, feroit*, I should, &c. make.Plur. *Ferions, feriez, feroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Fais, fusse*, make thou.Plur. *Faisons, faites, fassent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Fasse, fusses, fasse*, that I may make.Plur. *Fassions, fassiez, fassent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Fisse, fisses, fît*, that I might make.Plur. *Fissions, fissiez, fissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Contrefaire*, to counterfeit,  
to mimic.*Défaire*, to undo, to de-  
feat.*Se défaire*, to get rid of, to  
part with.*Refaire*, to do, or make up  
again.*Redéfaire*, to undo again.*Satisfaire*, to satisfy.*Surfaire*, to exact, to ask  
too much.

**FEINDRE**, TO FEIGN, TO DISSEMBLE, TO  
PRETEND,

is conjugated like **CRAINDRE**.

**FRIRE, TO FRY.**

This verb is more elegantly used in its present infinitive with the verb *faire* conjugated : ex.

Faites frire ce poisson, Fry that fish.

Its participle passive is *frit, ile, fried*.

**INDUIRE, TO INDUCE,****INSTRUIRE, TO INSTRUCT,**

and **INTRODUIRE, TO INTRODUCE,**  
are conjugated like **CONDUIRE.**

\* **JOINDRE, TO JOIN,**

and its compound, *Enjoindre, to enjoin,*  
are conjugated like **CRAINdre.**

**LIRE, TO READ.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present. *Lire, to read.*  
Part. act. *Lisant, reading.*  
Part. pass. *Lu, ue, read.*

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing. *Lis, lis, lit, I read, or am reading.*  
Plur. *Lisons, lisez, lisent,*

**Imperfect.**

Sing. *Lisois, lisois, lisoit, I did read, or was reading.*  
Plur. *Lisions, lisiez, lisoient,*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Lus,*      *lus,*      *lut,* I read, or did read.  
 Plur. *Lûmes,*   *lûtes,*   *lurent,*

## Future.

Sing. *Lirai,*      *liras,*      *lira,* I shall, or will read.  
 Plur. *Lirons,*   *lirez,*      *liront,*

## Conditional.

Sing. *Lirois,*      *lirois,*      *liroit,* I should, would, &c. read.  
 Plur. *Lirions,*   *liriez,*      *liroient,*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.              *Lis,*      *lise,* read thou.  
 Plur. *Lisons,*   *lisez,*      *lisent,*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que*      *que*      *que*  
 Sing. *Lise,*      *lises,*      *lise,* that I may read.  
 Plur. *Lisions,*   *lisiez,*      *lisent,*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Lusse,*      *lusses,*      *lût,* that I might read.  
 Plur. *Lussions,*   *lussiez,*      *lussent,*

Its compounds are,

*Elire,* to elect.

*Relire,* to read again.

**LUIRE, TO SHINE.**

and its compound *Réluire,* to glitter,  
 are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**;

but take no *t* at the end of their participle passive:

ex. *Lui,* shined.

**METTRE,\* TO PUT.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Mettre</i> , to put.
Part. act.	<i>Mettant</i> , putting.
Part. pass.	<i>Mis</i> , <i>se</i> , put.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing. <i>Mets</i> ,	<i>mets</i> ,	<i>met</i> , I put, or am putting.
Plur. <i>Mettons</i> ,	<i>mettez</i> ,	<i>mettent</i> ,

**Imperfect.**

Sing. <i>Mettois</i> ,	<i>mettois</i> ,	<i>mettoit</i> , I did put, or was putting.
Plur. <i>Mettions</i> ,	<i>mettiez</i> ,	<i>mettoient</i> ,

**Preterite.**

Sing. <i>Mis</i> ,	<i>mis</i> ,	<i>mit</i> , I did put, or put.
Plur. <i>Mîmes</i> ,	<i>mîtes</i> ,	<i>mîrent</i> ,

**Future.**

Sing. <i>Mettrai</i> ,	<i>mettras</i> ,	<i>mettra</i> , I shall, or will put.
Plur. <i>Mettrons</i> ,	<i>mettrez</i> ,	<i>mettront</i> ,

**Conditional.**

Sing. <i>Mettrôis</i> ,	<i>mettrois</i> ,	<i>mettroit</i> , I should, would, &c. put.
Plur. <i>Mettrions</i> ,	<i>mettriez</i> ,	<i>mettroient</i> ,

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Mets</i> ,	<i>mette</i> , put thou.
Plur. <i>Mettons</i> ,	<i>mettez</i> ,	<i>mettent</i> ,

\* *Mettre*, when conjugated as a reflexive verb, expresses the beginning or continuation of an action or application; it is then constantly followed by the particle *à*, and an infinitive mood. It is rendered, in English, by the verb *to begin*: ex.

*Toutes les fois qu'il la voit, il se met à rire,* Every time he sees her, he begins laughing.  
*Il s'est mis tout de bon à étudier,* He has begun to study in earnest.



## Preterite.

Sing. *Moulus*, *moulus*, *moulut*, I ground, or did  
 Plur. *Moulûmes*, *moulûtes*, *moulurent*, grind.

## Future.

Sing. *Moudrai*, *moudras*, *moudra*, I shall, or will grind.  
 Plur. *Moudrons*, *moudrez*, *moudront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Moudrois*, *moudrois*, *moudroit*, I should, would,  
 Plur. *Moudrions*, *moudriez*, *moudroient*, &c. grind.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Mouds*, *moule*, grind thou.  
 Plur. *Moulons*, *moulez*, *moulent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que* *que* *que*  
 Sing. *Moule*, *moules*, *moule*, that I may grind.  
 Plur. *Moulions*, *mouliez*, *moulent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Moulusse*, *moulusses*, *moulût*, that I might grind.  
 Plur. *Moulussions*, *moulussiez*, *moulussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

*Emoudre*, to wet.

*Remoudre*, to grind again.

# EXERCISES ON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND THEIR COMPOUNDS.

Do not fear to tell her what you think of it. - - I  
                           *de*    *lui*                    *penser*, v.  
 will speak to her to oblige you, but I know she  
   *pour*, p.  
 does not fear me. - - Why do you not believe me? - - -

They (are afraid) of being exposed to some dangers.

*être, v.*

- - We would not believe him, though he should tell  
the truth. - - Why would you not? - - - You should not

*quand, c.*

*vérité, f.* *devoir*

speak so imprudently before I know not whom,  
*devant, p.*

who slanders every body. - - - These flowers would  
*fleur, f.*

grow much better if you watered them oftener. - - -  
*arroser, v.*

Put out the candle, and do not pretend to sleep.  
*éteindre, v.*

- - - Were I in town, I would tell them all that  
*en, p.*

I think (about it). - - - Say nothing to her, believe  
*penser, en, pro. ne rien*

me. - - I will tell it to you to-morrow. - - I esteem  
*estimer, v.*

your daughter much, because she told me sin-  
cerely that she would do neither. - - - They who

say all they know, will readily say what they  
*\* volontiers, adv.*

do not know. - - Tell the truth with modesty: they  
who do not love it, will always respect and fear it. - -

If I see your father, shall I tell him you are afraid of  
*lui*

not succeeding? - - - Do you think me capable of  
*réussir*

forgetting my friends so soon? No, I do not. - - You  
*oublier, v.*

always contradict me when I speak. - - - It is pru-  
dent and humane not to speak ill of any body;  
*de*

but it is a meanness to speak ill of your bene-  
*ce,pro. bassesse,f. de bien-*

factors. - - We often do good to those who  
*fauteur,m. souvent,adv. bien,m.*

are not worthy of it, and harm to those who  
*mal,m.*

do not deserve it. - - Will you tell me, after  
*mériter,v.*

this, that I am not your friend? - - I hope she  
*que,c.*

will not tell them what happened to me yester-  
*leur*

day. - - I was telling it yesterday to several friends of

mine, and every body began crying. - - I do not  
*\* pleurer.*

like Miss D. because she speaks ill of every body.  
*parceque,c.*

- - Her father has transmitted her all his fortune, but  
*lui*

not his virtues. - - Sylla proscribed above four  
*plus de,adv.*

thousand Roman citizens. - - Does Mr. R. write to  
*Romain citoyen,m.*

you (now and then) from Paris? - - Do you  
*de temps en temps,adv.*

know his direction? - - Would you not write to him  
*adresse,f.*

if you knew it? - - We were writing while  
*pendant que,c.*

they slept - - If your brother come here, detain him,  
*à faire voir*

and tell him that I have something to show him.  
*à faire voir*

- - The last time they wrote to him, they desired  
*prier,v.*

him to send them the invoice of the goods, and he  
*de leur facture,f. marchandises,*

has still omitted it in his letter. - - What are you  
*encore,adv.*

\* See the note, page 194.



doing now? - - - I am making a cap for your sis-  
*maintenant,adv.*

ter. - - Do not do that, I will do it myself. - - I would  
 do it with all my heart if I could. - - What would  
*de*

you have done, if you had been in my place? - -  
*si,c. à,p.*

Why do you not fry that fish? - - - The first time  
*fois,f.*

you come to see me, I will show you some  
 (by the fut.)

flowers in my garden which will surprise you. - - -

- - - Silk-worms generally hatch at the end of the  
*Les vers à soie*

spring. - - - These rose-trees grow perceptibly,  
*printemps,m. rosier,m. à vue d'œil,adv.*

and those tulips would soon open, if it were a  
*faisoit,v.*

little warmer. - - Though they should deduct ten  
*chaud,adj. Quand,c.*

per cent, they would get still enough.  
*pour gagner,v. encore,adv.*

- - I never buy (any thing) at Mr. P\*\*\*s; for, he  
*acheter,v. rien chez car,c.*

always (asks too much for) his goods. - - - I will  
*surfaire,v. marchandise,f.*

undo my gown to-morrow, and do it up again imme-  
*sur-le-*

diately. - - - The first time you mimic any  
*champ,adv. (by the fut.)*

one, I will punish you severely. - - I would introduce  
*présenter,v.*

your sister to Mrs. F. if I knew her. - - - She would

consent to that, if you would promise her to come  
*vouloir lui de*

here. - - - They were playing while you instructed  
 them. - - You truly join what is useful to what is

*vraiment,adv.*

agreeable. - - - Did not our soldiers join dexterity  
adresse, f.

to valour ? - - - If you do not take great care of  
prendre, v.

+ your flowers, the frost will destroy them. - - - Mr.  
gelée, f.

S. says he will get rid of his horse (at the) begin-

ning of next month. - - You would put out the fire, if,  
au commence-  
ment, m.

&c. - - - Undo that, make it up again before dinner,  
avant, p.

and never defer until to-morrow what you can do to-  
à, p.

day. - - - Your daughter joins to the love of study the

desire of surpassing her companions. - - - Always  
compagne, f.

virtuous, still handsome, she makes herself  
toujours, adv.

more enemies than friends; but a day will come,

when every body will do her the justice she  
que, c. rendre, v. lui

deserves. - - She reads the History of England every  
mériter, v.

day from three o'clock till five. - - I will read  
depuis heure jusqu'à, p.

your letter as soon as I am dressed. - - The  
(by the fut.) habillé, p. p.

inhabitants of W\*\*\* have elected Mr. V. W. for

their representative in parliament. - - I was reading  
représentant, m. au

Marmontel's Tales when you came in. - - - Mr.  
Conte, m. entrer, v.

R. wrote to me some time ago, that when he  
was in London, the Earl of E\*\*\* told him  
à Comte, m.

we should soon see a great change in the  
changement, m.

ministry. - - - He often writes to me, and always concludes his letters thus : - (Be so kind as to) send me

*Avoir la bonté de*

some news, whatever it may be. - - Put these books in their places again. - - - I believe he did it through

*par, p.*

spite. - - - Shall I put another trimming to your

*dépit.* *garniture, f.*

gown? - - I read last year a very good book, but I cannot remember the author's name. - - - What grammar do you read? - - - Whatever merit a master has, he cannot succeed in teaching young people

*réussir à, p.*

if he do not join practice to theory. - - - I would put

all your china in that closet if I had

*porcelaine, f.*

*cabinet, m.*

the key of it. - - You could not do it in ten days, if

*en*

I did not help you. - - We could not permit him

*aider, v.*

to go out, though they would. - - - Why do not you

*de quand, c.*

abstain from wine, since it hurts you? - - -

*puisque, c.*

*faire mal, v.*

He promised to pay me the tenth of this month,

*de*

but he has now put me off to the third of Decem-

ber. - - - He submitted to it with the greatest pa-

*se soumettre*

tience. - - You promise enough, but you seldom

*rarement, adv.*

keep your word. - - - Mr. D. is a very promising

*tenir, v.*

young man. - - It is he who told me, that, be-

*Ce, pro.*

\*

*a-*

\* See rule in page 86.

fore the invention of water and wind-mills the an-  
vant

cients used to grind their corn in mor-  
avoir coutume, v. de grain, m. dans mor-  
tars. - - Will they not admit Mr. Z. in their society? - -  
tier, m.

No, they told me that they would not. - - The Eng-

lish fleets have performed actions worthy to be  
faire, v. de

transmitted to posterity. - - - Your brother promises

me every day to amend, but, &c. - - Were I  
de se corriger, v.

their master, I would not permit them to go out to  
leur de

day. - - - I was writing to you when your servant

brought me your letter.

### NAITRE, TO BE BORN, TO RISE.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Naître*, to be born.

Part. act. *Naissant*, being born, rising.

Part. pass. *Né, ée*, been born.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. *Nais*, *nais*, *nait*, I am born.

Plur. *Naissons*, *naissiez*, *naissent*,

##### Imperfect.

Sing. *Naissois*, *naissais*, *naissoit*, I was born.

Plur. *Naissions*, *naissiez*, *naissoient*,

##### Preterite.

Sing. *Naquis*, *naquis*, *naquit*, I was born.

Plur. *Naquimes*, *naquîtes*, *naquirent*,

## Future.

Sing. <i>Naîtrai,</i>	<i>naîtràs,</i>	<i>naître,</i>	I shall, or will be born.
Plur. <i>Naîtrons,</i>	<i>naîtrez,</i>	<i>naîtront,</i>	

## Conditional.

Sing. <i>Naîtrois,</i>	<i>naîtrois,</i>	<i>naîtroit,</i>	I should, &c. be born.
Plur. <i>Naîtrions,</i>	<i>naîtriez,</i>	<i>naîtroient,</i>	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. <i>Nais,</i>	<i>naisse,</i>	be thou born.
Plur. <i>Naissons,</i>	<i>naissez,</i>	<i>naissent,</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing. <i>Naisse,</i>	<i>naisses,</i>	<i>naisse,</i>	that I may be born.
Plur. <i>Naissions,</i>	<i>naissiez,</i>	<i>naissent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Naquisse,</i>	<i>naquisses,</i>	<i>naquit,</i>	that I might be born.
Plur. <i>Naquissions,</i>	<i>naquissiez,</i>	<i>naquissent,</i>	

The compound of this verb is,

*Renâître,* to be born again, to revive.

*NUIRE,* TO HURT,

is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*, but makes, in its participle passive, *nui*.

*OINDRE,* TO ANOINT.

This verb is seldom used, except in speaking of sacred ceremonies wherein oil is made use of. It is conjugated like *CRAINdre*.

**PAITRE**, TO FEED, TO GRAZE,  
**PAROITRE**, TO APPEAR, TO SEEM,  
 and its compounds,

*Comparoître*, to appear, to | *Disparoître*, to disappear,  
 make one's evidence,

are conjugated like **CONNOITRE**.

---

**PEINDRE**, TO PAINT, TO DRAW,  
**PLAINdre**, TO PITY,

and *Se Plaindre*, to complain,  
 are conjugated like **CRAINdre**.

---

**PLAIRE**, TO PLEASE

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Plaire*, to please.  
 Part. act. *Plaisant*, pleasing.  
 Part. pass. *Plu*, pleased.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### Present.

Sing. *Plais*, *plais*, *plait*, I please.  
 Plur. *Plaisons*, *plaisez*, *plaisent*,

##### Imperfect.

Sing. *Plaisois*, *plaisois*, *plaisoit*, I did please, or was  
 Plur. *Plaisions*, *plaisiez*, *plaisoient*, pleasing.

##### Preterite.

Sing. *Plus*, *plus*, *plut*, I pleased, or did please.  
 Plur. *Plûmes*, *plûtes*, *plurent*,

##### Future.

Sing. *Plairai*, *plairas*, *plaira*, I shall, or will please.  
 Plur. *Plairons*, *plairez*, *plairont*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Plairois, plairois, plairoit*, I should, would, &c.  
 Plur. *Plairions, plairiez, plairoient*, please.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Plais, plaise*, please thou.  
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaisez, plaisent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Plaise, plaisses, plaise*, that I may please.  
 Plur. *Plaisons, plaisiez, plaisent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Plusse, plusses, plût*, that I might please.  
 Plur. *Plussions, plussiez, plussent*,

The compounds of this verb are,  
*Complaire*, to humour. *Déplaire*, to displease.

**PRENDRE**, TO TAKE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Prendre*, to take.  
 Part. act. *Prenant*, taking.  
 Part. pass. *Pris, ise, taken*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Prends, prends, prend*, I take, or am taking.  
 Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Prenois, prenois, prenoit*, I did take, or was taking.  
 Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prenoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Pris, pris, prit*, I took, or did take.  
 Plur. *Prîmes, prîtes, prirent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Prendrai, prendras, prendra*, I shall, or will take.  
 Plur. *Prendrons, prendrez, prendront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Prendrois, prendrais, prendrait*, I should, would, &c.  
 Plur. *Prendrions, prendriez, prendraient*, take.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Prends, prenne*, take thou  
 Plur. *Prenons, prenez, prennent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Prenne, prennes, prenne*, that I may take.  
 Plur. *Prenions, preniez, prennent*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Prisse, prisses, prit*, that I might take.  
 Plur. *Prissions, prissiez, prissent*,

The compounds of this verb are,

<i>Apprendre</i> , to learn.	<i>Entreprendre</i> , to under- take.
<i>des nouvelles</i> , to hear of.	<i>Méprendre</i> , to mistake, to be deceived.
<i>Comprendre</i> , to apprehend, to understand, to in- clude.	<i>Reprendre</i> , to take again, to chide, to rebuke.
<i>Désapprendre</i> , to unlearn.	<i>Surprendre</i> , to surprise.

**PRODUIRE**, TO PRODUCE,  
**REDUIRE**, TO REDUCE, TO BRING TO,  
 are conjugated like **CONDUIRE**.

**RESTREINDRE**, TO RESTRAIN,  
 is conjugated like **CRAINdre**.



**RIRE, TO LAUGH.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Rire</i> , to laugh.
Part. act.	<i>Riant</i> , laughing.
Part. pass.	<i>Ri</i> , laughed.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Ris</i> ,	<i>ris</i> ,	<i>rit</i> ,	I laugh, or am laughing.
Plur.	<i>Rions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> ,	<i>rient</i> ,	

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Riois</i> ,	<i>riois</i> ,	<i>rioit</i> ,	I did laugh, or was laughing.
Plur.	<i>Riions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> ,	<i>rioient</i> ,	

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Ris</i> ,	<i>ris</i> ,	<i>rit</i> ,	I laughed, or did laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rîmes</i> ,	<i>rîles</i> ,	<i>rirent</i> ,	

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Rirai</i> ,	<i>riras</i> ,	<i>rira</i> ,	I shall, or will laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rirons</i> ,	<i>rirez</i> ,	<i>riront</i> ,	

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Rirois</i> ,	<i>rirois</i> ,	<i>riroit</i> ,	I should, could, &c. laugh.
Plur.	<i>Ririons</i> ,	<i>ririez</i> ,	<i>riroient</i> ,	

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Ris</i> ,	<i>rie</i> ,	laugh thou.
Plur.	<i>Rions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> ,	<i>rient</i> ,

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Rie</i> ,	<i>ries</i> ,	<i>rie</i> ,	that I may laugh.
Plur.	<i>Rions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> ,	<i>rient</i> ,	

## Preterite.

Sing. *Risse, risses, rît*, that I might laugh.Plur. *Rissions, rissiez, rissent*,

The compound of this verb is,

*Sourire*, to smile.

*SEDUIRE*, TO SEDUCE,  
is conjugated like *CONDUIRE*.

*SUFFIRE*, TO SUFFICE, TO BE SUFFICIENT,  
is conjugated like *CONFIRE*: but its participle  
passive is *suffi*.

*SUIVRE*, TO FOLLOW.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Suivre*, to follow.Part. act. *Suivant*, following.Part. pass. *Suivi*, ie, followed.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Suis, suis, suit*, I follow, or am following.Plur. *Suivons, suivez, suivent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Suivois, suivois, suivait*, I did follow, or was follow-Plur. *Suivions, suiviez, suivient*, ing.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Suivis, suivis, suivit*, I followed, or did follow.Plur. *Suivîmes, suivîtes, suivirent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Suivrai, suivras, suivra*, I shall, or will follow.Plur. *Suivrons, suivrez, suivront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Suivrois, suivrois, suivrois, I should, &c. follow.*  
 Plur. *Suivriers, suivriez, suivroient,*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Suis, suive, follow thou.*  
 Plur. *Suivons, suivez, suivent,*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Suiva, suives, suive, that I may follow.*  
 Plur. *Suivions, suiviez, suivent,*

## Preterite.

Sing. *Suivisse, suivisses, suivist, that I might follow.*  
 Plur. *Suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent,*

The compounds of this verb are,  
*S'Ensuivre, to follow from. Poursuivre, to pursue.*

*Se TAIRE, TO HOLD ONE'S TONGUE,*  
*is conjugated like PLAIRE.*

*TEINDRE, TO DIE,*  
*is conjugated like CRAINDRE.*

*TRADUIRE, TO TRANSLATE,*  
*is conjugated like CONDUIRE.*

*TRAIRE, TO MILK.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Traire, to milk.*  
 Part. act. *Trayant, milking.*  
 Part. pass. *Trail, aite, milked.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Trais, traits, trait*, I milk, or am milking,  
 Plur. *Trayons, trayez, traient*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Trayois, trayois, trayoit*, I did milk, or was milking.  
 Plur. *Trayions, trayiez, trayoient*,

## Preterite is wanting.

## Future.

Sing. *Trairai, trairas, traira*, I shall, or will milk.  
 Plur. *Tairons, tairiez, tairont*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Tairois, tirois, traitrait*, I should, &c. milk.  
 Plur. *Tairions, tairiez, tiroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Trais, traie*, milk thou.  
 Plur. *Trayons, trayez, traient*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*Que que que*  
 Sing. *Traie, traies, traie*, that I may milk.  
 Plur. *Trayions, trayiez, traient*,

## Preterite is wanting.

The compounds of this verb are,

*Abstraire*, to abstract.  
*Distraire*, to distract.  
*Extraire*, to extract.

*Rentraire*, to fine draw,  
*Soustraire*, to subtract.  
*Retraire*, to milk again.

**VAINCRE, TO VANQUISH, TO CONQUER.****INFINITIVE MOOD.**

Present.	<i>Vaincre</i> , to conquer.
Part. act.	<i>Vainquant</i> , conquering.
Part. pass.	<i>Vaincu</i> , <i>ue</i> , conquered.

**INDICATIVE MOOD.****Present.**

Sing.	<i>Vaincs</i> ,	<i>vaincs</i> ,	<i>vainc</i> ,*	I conquer.
Plur.	<i>Vainquons</i> ,	<i>vainquez</i> ,	<i>vainquent</i> ,	

**Imperfect.**

Sing.	<i>Vainquois</i> ,	<i>vainquois</i> ,	<i>vainquoit</i> ,	I did conquer.
Plur.	<i>Vainquions</i> ,	<i>vainquiez</i> ,	<i>vainquoient</i> ,	

**Preterite.**

Sing.	<i>Vainquis</i> ,	<i>vainquis</i> ,	<i>vainquit</i> ,	I conquered.
Plur.	<i>Vainquîmes</i> ,	<i>vainquîtes</i> ,	<i>vainquirent</i> ,	

**Future.**

Sing.	<i>Vaincrai</i> ,	<i>vaincras</i> ,	<i>vaincra</i> ,	I shall, or will con-
Plur.	<i>Vaincrons</i> ,	<i>vaincrez</i> ,	<i>vaincront</i> ,	quer.

**Conditional.**

Sing.	<i>Vaincrois</i> ,	<i>vaincrois</i> ,	<i>vaincroit</i> ,	I should, &c. con-
Plur.	<i>Vaincrions</i> ,	<i>vaincriez</i> ,	<i>vaincroient</i> ,	quer.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

Sing.	<i>Vaincs</i> ,	<i>vainque</i> ,	conquer thou.
Plur.	<i>Vainquons</i> ,	<i>vainquez</i> ,	<i>vainquent</i> ,

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.****Present.**

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>	
Sing.	<i>Vainque</i> ,	<i>vainques</i> ,	<i>vainque</i> ,	that I may conquer.
Plur.	<i>Vainquions</i> ,	<i>vainquiez</i> ,	<i>vainquent</i> ,	

\* The singular of this tense and the imperfect are very little used.

## Preterite.

Sing. *Vainquisse, vainquisses, vainquît*, that I might

Plur. *Vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent*, conquer.

The compound of this verb is,

*Convaincre*, to convince.

## VIVRE, TO LIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Vivre*, to live.

Part. act. *Vivant*, living.

Part. pass. *Vécu*, lived.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

Sing. *Vis, vis, vit*, I live, or am living.

Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent*,

## Imperfect.

Sing. *Vivois, vivois, vivoit*, I did live, or was living.

Plur. *Vivions, viviez, vivoient*,

## Preterite.

Sing. *Vécus, vécus, vécut*, I lived, or did live.

Plur. *Vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent*,

## Future.

Sing. *Vivrai, vivras, vivra*, I shall, or will live.

Plur. *Vivrons, vivez, vivront*,

## Conditional.

Sing. *Vivrois, vivrois, vivroit*, I should, would, &c. live.

Plur. *Vivrions, vivriez, vivroient*,

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing. *Vis, vive*, live thou.

Plur. *Vivons, vivez, vivent*,

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

	<i>Que</i>	<i>que</i>	<i>que</i>
Sing. <i>Vive,</i>	<i>vives,</i>	<i>vive,</i>	that I may live.
Plur. <i>Vivions,</i>	<i>viviez,</i>	<i>vivent,</i>	

## Preterite.

Sing. <i>Vécusse,</i>	<i>vécusses,</i>	<i>vécût,</i>	that I might live.
Plur. <i>Vécussions,</i>	<i>vécussiez,</i>	<i>vécussent,</i>	

The compounds of this verb are,

*Revivre,* to revive.

*Survivre,* to outlive.

EXERCISES UPON THE FOREGOING VERBS AND  
THEIR COMPOUNDS.

My brother was born in Paris, on the eighth of Feb-  
*à* *Fe-*  
 ruary, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-one. - -  
*vrier,*  
 The same men who seem not to fear death when  
*lorsque, adv.*  
 they are in good health, often dread it when  
*en* *redouter, v.*  
 they are sick. - - - What does your sister complain of ?  
 - - - - The swallows generally disappear towards the  
*hirondelle, f.* *vers, p.*  
 end of autumn. - - You do not seem to pay any  
*automne, f.* *faire, v.*  
 attention to what I say to you. - - This man paints  
 very well, I assure you. - - - Why would you  
*assurer, v.*  
 hurt him, he never did you any harm ? - - I should  
*lui* *faire, v.* *mal, m.*  
 pity and succour him if it were not his fault. - - -  
*ce, pro.*

You shall disappear as soon as you have ex-  
ecuted my orders, and take care not to speak  
(by the fut.)  
*ayez, v. soin, m. de*

to any body, for you know that walls have ears.  
*car, c. mur*

. . . . The last time I saw your sister she ap-  
peared to me thoughtful and melancholy. . . . She  
*roître pensif, adj. mélancolique, adj. Ce*  
is a lady that pleases every body. . . . She appears

*à*  
quite\* young: how old is she? . . . Does she not  
*tout, adv.*

learn drawing? . . Your brother has not included his  
*dessein, m.*

tailor's bill in the account which he has  
*tailleur, m. mémoire, m. compte, m.*

given me. . . I see you do not complain of him  
*rendre, v.*

without a cause. . . I really am surprised (at it), but  
*en, pro.*

he always smiles at (every thing) I tell him. . . *As sur-*  
*de tout ce qu'il*

prising as this seems to you, yet it is true. . .  
*cependant, adv. ce*

At last the enemy surprised and defeated them in the  
*Enfin, adv.*

space of twelve days. . . . If they had wished, they  
*espace, m.*

might have taken the town three days sooner, but the  
soldiers were so exhausted with fatigue, that they

*épuisés, p. p. de, p.*  
could not even hold their guns. . . . May these  
*même, adv. Puissent*

brave men long enjoy the glory which they have ac-  
*jouir de*

quired. . . I sincerely wish they may. . . . Children sel-  
*rare-*

\* *Tout*, adv. before an adjective beginning with a consonant or as-  
te, agrees with it.



dom forget, when they continually  
*ment,adv. lorsque,c. continuellement,adv.*  
 exercise their minds to study. - - If my brother do not  
*exercer,v.*

come this week, as he promised me, if you will, we  
 will go and see him in the country. - - Does not

*en à*  
 Mrs. H. appear much concerned at her daugh-  
*Mme bien affligée,p.p. de*  
 ter's death? - - When you see Mrs. B. I am  
 (by the fut.)

certain she will please you. - - Did you never see  
*sûr,adj.*

her? - - The children who (shall be born) from this

happy marriage, will be the delight of their  
*délices,f.pl.*

father and mother. - - She joins to the qualities of the

body those of the mind. - - Take some pears, and carry

them to your brother. - - Every time I see him, I take

him for a foreigner. - - My sister and I learn French,  
*étranger,m.*

and understand very well all that (is said) to us in that  
*on dit*

language. - - Though you should learn all the rules,  
*langue,f. Quand,c.*

they would not (be sufficient) without practice. - - I did  
*suffire,v.*

not understand what you said. - - Do not undertake to  
*de*

undecieve her; believe me, you will lose your time.  
*détromper,v.*

- - - Virtue procures and preserves friendship, but  
*obtenir,v. conserver,v.*

vice produces hatred and quarrels. - - If you  
*vice,m. haine,f. querelle,f.*

complain to the master, I will complain to the

mistress. - - Though you should undertake to prove

*Quand* the contrary, she would not believe you. - - Why did *de*

not you take the same road as we? - - - He (is not

pleased) in his situation, now he sees all the dangers *que*  
*se plaire, v.*

of it. - - He has suffered much, and none of his friends

has pitied him. - - The idea of his misfortune pur-

sues him every-where. - - When did you hear of him? *idée, f.* *malheur, m.*

*par-tout, adv.* *apprendre des nouvelles*

- - - Captain D. told my father that he had seen *à*

him and spoke to him at Madras. - - - We often

mistake when we judge of others by ap-

pearances; and often a person displeases us by the *se méprendre, v.* *juger, v.*

very\* quality by which another has pleased us.

*même, adj.*

- - - The people who often seem the most zealous

are not always the most constant. - - - Leave me *gens, m.* *zélé, adj.*

that book a little longer, do not take it again. - - - *Laisser, v.*

That apple-tree produces no fruit. - - They retook

our ship. - - Go and speak to Mr. — ; but above all *pommier, m.*

do not laugh. - - Would you not laugh, if you were *sur, p.*

in my place? - - - We laughed much yesterday at *à*

\*very, adv. is used here adjectively, and signifies same.

the play. - - - She was an agreeable lady, she was  
 ever smiling when any one had the honour  
*toujours,adv.*  
 of speaking to her. - - He seduced her by his fine  
 promises. - - Whatever he may undertake, he never  
 will succeed, he is (too much) addicted to the  
*trop,adv. adonné,p.p.*  
 pleasures of this world. - - - Young people tell  
*gens,m.&f.*  
 what they do, old people what they have done,  
*vieillard,m.*  
 and fools what they intend to do. - - - We  
*sot,m. se proposer,v. de*  
 learn much more easily the things which  
*facilement,adv.*  
 we understand than those which we do not. - - If we  
*comprendre*  
 go together to my brother's, shall you be able  
*chez,p.*  
 to follow us? - - I will follow you step by step. - -  
*pas à pas,adv.*  
 Why do you follow me as you do? - - You may set  
*comme*  
 out when (you please), we will follow you. - - Hold  
*il vous plaira*  
 your tongue, you do not know what you say. - - -  
 What books do you translate? - - My master says I  
 shall soon translate Marmontel's Works. - - We should  
*Œuvre,f.*  
 have conquered them if we had fought; and, believe  
*combattre,v.*  
 me, you (might have<sup>1</sup>) done<sup>2</sup> much<sup>3</sup> better<sup>3</sup>, if you had  
*auriez*  
 followed the advice which he gave you. - - - They  
 275

have debated the question a long time without

(being able to) resolve it. - - They were quite trans-

<sup>pouvoir</sup>ported with joy when they (heard of) the happy  
<sup>de,p.</sup>news of the peace. - - Every thing smiles in  
<sup>apprendre,v.</sup>  
<sup>nouvelle,f.sing.</sup> nature (at the) return of the spring. - - As long  
<sup>dans,p.</sup>

<sup>au</sup> her father and mother live, they never  
<sup>retour,m.</sup> <sup>printemps,m.</sup> <sup>Tant</sup>  
<sup>que,adv.</sup> will consent to her marriage with Mr. R. - - You

will not live long if you drink so much. - - She lived  
<sup>(by the fut.)</sup>

about four years after her husband's death. - -  
<sup>environ,p.</sup> <sup>après,p.</sup>

George III. the eldest son of Frederick, prince of  
<sup>ainé,adj.</sup>

Wales, was born on the fourth of June, 1738, and  
<sup>Galles,</sup>

was proclaimed king of Great-Britain on the twenty-  
<sup>proclamer,v.</sup>

sixth of October, 1760. - - In whatever country a  
<sup>do</sup>

man may live, he is sure to be respected and  
<sup>de</sup>

well treated every where, if his behaviour and  
<sup>mœurs,f.pl.</sup> <sup>régler,v.</sup>

manners are regulated by the principles of a  
<sup>sain,adj.</sup> <sup>politique,f.</sup>

sound policy, and the laws of the country he  
<sup>vives in.</sup>

lives in.  
<sup>où.</sup>

## OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Verbs which relate to no person or thing, and which, has been before observed, are *only conjugated in the third person singular*, are called impersonal verbs : they generally are preceded by one of the following pronouns *il* or *on* : of this number are,

*Il tonne,* It thunders.

*Il pleut,* It rains.

*On dit,* People say, or, it is said, &c.

To which may be added several other verbs, which become impersonal when employed in the same manner : ex.

*Il vous convient d'être modeste,* It becomes you to be modest.

*Il fait beau, froid, &c.* It is fine, cold, &c.

*Il fait grand vent,* The wind blows high.

*Il semble,* It seems.

*Il s'ensuit que,* It follows that.

*Il vaut mieux,* It is better, &c.

These verbs, like others, whether regular or irregular have their different tenses, and are conjugated in the same manner as the personal verbs from which they are derived. The learner having gone through the other conjugations, the verbs of this class may the more easily be dispensed with. It will only be necessary to select one that is not derived, and show the manner of conjugating it, only premising, that the compound tenses are formed, like others, by joining the participle passive to one of the tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, to have.

## CONJUGATION OF THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Pleuv*oir, to rain.

Part. act. *Pleuv*ant, raining.

Part. pass. *Plu*, rained.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Affirmatively.

Present, *Il pleut*, it rains, it does rain, it is raining.

## Negatively.

*Il ne pleut pas*, it does not rain, &c.

## Interrogatively.

*Pleut-il ?*

does it rain ?

*Ne pleut-il pas ?*

does it not rain ?

Imperfect.	<i>Il pleuvait,</i>	it rained, it was raining.
Preterite.	<i>Il plut,</i>	it rained, or did rain.
Future.	<i>Il pleuvra,</i>	it shall, or will rain.
Conditional.	<i>Il pleuvrait,</i>	it would, should, &c. rain.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il pleuve*, that it may rain.

Imperfect. *Qu'il plût*, that it might rain.

The following being of the first conjugation, I shall only give the third person, present tense, of the indicative mood: the learner may easily find out the rest.

<i>Il arrive</i> , it happens; from	<i>arriver</i> , to happen.
<i>Il bruine</i> , it drizzles;	<i>bruiner</i> , to drizzle.
<i>Il éclaire</i> , it lightens;	<i>éclairer</i> , to lighten.
<i>Il gèle</i> , it freezes;	<i>geler</i> , to freeze.
<i>Il grêle</i> , it hails;	<i>grêler</i> , to hail.
<i>Il neige</i> , it snows;	<i>neiger</i> , to snow.
<i>Il tonne</i> , it thunders;	<i>tonner</i> , to thunder.
<i>Il importe</i> , it matters, it concerns.	<i>importer</i> , to concern.

## EXERCISES UPON THESE VERBS.

Does it rain? - - It rained just now, but  
*tout-à-l'heure, adv.*  
 it does not rain at present. - - - Was it not raining  
*maintenant, adv.*  
 when you came? - - I advise you not to go out  
*conseiller, v. de*  
 this morning, I think it will soon rain. - - I am  
*bientôt, adv.*  
 sure it would rain if the wind was not so high. - -  
*s'il en fût, v. grand.*  
 Do you know what happened to my cousin  
*savoir, v.*  
 whilst he was in town? - - I foresaw what  
*pendant que, c. en prévoir*  
 would happen. - - The roads were very slippery  
*chemin, m. glissant, adj.*  
 yesterday, because it drizzled the whole day. - - - Did  
 you observe how it lightened last  
*remarquer, v. comme, adv.*  
 night? - - If it did not freeze I would go to see them  
*voir, v.*  
 to-day - - - It hailed this afternoon, and it will  
*après-midi, m.*  
 certainly snow to-night. - - It thundered much  
*cette nuit. beaucoup, adv.*  
 yesterday, and I think it will still thunder to-  
*croire, v. encore, adv.*  
 day. - - - It matters little whether you do your ex-  
*que (subj.)*  
 ercise now or later, provided it be well  
*pourvu que, c.*  
 done - - - It greatly concerns children to  
*beaucoup, adv. aux de*  
 avoid idleness, because it is the parent of all vice  
*éviter, v. mère, f.*  
 and destroyer of all virtues,  
*destructrice, f.*

The verb *Avoir*, to have, conjugated impersonally with *y*, adverb of place.

# INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Y avoir.*

# INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively.

Present. *Il y a,* there is, there are.

Negatively.

*Il n'y a pas,* there is not, there are not.

Interrogatively.

*Y a-t-il ?* is there? are there?

*N'y a-t-il pas ?* is there not? are there not?

Imperfect. *Il y avoit,* there was, there were.

Preterite. *Il y eut,* there was, there were.

Future. *Il y aura,* there shall, or will be.

Conditional. *Il y auroit,* there should, would, &c. be.

# IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Qu'il y ait,* let there be.

# SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il y ait,* that there may be.

Imperfect. *Qu'il y eût,* that there might be.

# COMPOUND TENSES.

*Il y a eu,* there has, or have been.

*Il y avoit eu,* there had been.

*Il y eut eu,* there had been.

*Il y aura eu,* there shall, or will have been.

*Il y auroit eu,* there should, &c. have been.

*Qu'il y ait eu,* that there may have been.

*Qu'il y eût eu,* that there might have been.



## EXERCISE UPON THIS VERB.

There are three ladies who (are waiting for) you  
*attendre, v.*  
 in your brother's study. - - - Is there any fire in the  
*cabinet, m.*  
 parlour? - - No, Sir, there is none. - - There were two  
*salle, f.*  
 men below who asked to speak to you. - - Was  
*en bas, adv.* *à*  
 there not formerly a (coffee-house) at the  
*autrefois, adv.* *café, m.*  
 corner of this street? - - There were great re-  
*coin, m.* *rue, f.* *ré-*  
 joicings in France when peace was proclaimed. - -  
*jouissance, f.* *proclamée, p. p.*  
 I was telling you that there will be a grand concert  
*dire, v.*  
 and afterwards a ball and supper in the course  
*ensuite, adv.* *courant, m.*  
 of this month. - - There would be no harm if you  
*mal, m.*  
 would learn\* your lesson better. - - My brother says  
*mieux, adv.*  
 that there has been a bloody engagement between  
*sanglant, adj.* *combat, m.*  
 an English frigate and a French one, and there  
*frégate, f.* *frégate*  
 have been many men killed on both sides. - - There  
*de part et d'autre.*  
 would have been a great riot yesterday in the  
*émeute, f.*  
 Strand, if the magistrates had not sent many constables,  
*connétables, m.*  
 who dispersed the mob.  
*populace, f.*

\* The conjunction *Si, if*, is used *only* before the present or imperfect of the indicative mood and their compounds; and sometimes elegantly before the compound of the imperfect of the subj. mood.

*There is*, immediately followed by the negation *no* and a participle active, must be rendered by *on ne peut pas*, *on ne sauroit*, with the participle in the infinitive mood; the other tenses, as *there was*, *there will be*, *there would be*, used as above, and made by the same tenses of the verb *pouvoir* only: ex.

*On ne peut pas, or, on ne sauroit sortir aujourd'hui à cause de la pluie,*

*On ne pouvoit l'appaiser,*

*On ne pourra pas jouer demain, mon père est très malade,*

*There is no going out to-day because of the rain; that is, one cannot, &c.*

*There was no pacifying him.*

*There will be no acting to-morrow, my father is very ill.*

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

*There is (such a deal) of snow that there is no going*  
*tant, adv.*

*out of the house. - You speak so low and so quick*  
*bas, adv. vite, adv.*

*that there is no hearing nor understanding what*  
*entendre, v. comprendre, v.*

*you say. - My brother runs so fast that there is*  
*vite, adv.*

*no following him. - There was no walking yesterday*  
*hier, adv.*

*In the streets of London on account of the dirt. - His*  
*à cause, p. boue, f.*

*arguments were so convincing that there was no re-*  
*ré-*

*plying to him. - There will be no skating in the*  
*patiner, v.*

*park to-morrow because it thaws. - There will be*  
*dégeler, v.*

*no going to the play next month, be-*  
*comédie, f. prochain, adj. parce*

*cause the play-house will be shut. - - There would*  
*que, c. théâtre, m.*

be no living with you, if you were always in the same  
*éliez, v. de*  
 humour. - - If a horse knew his strength, there  
*le connoître, v. force, f.*  
 would be no mastering him.  
*dompter, v.*

This verb *il y a*, when used to denote a quantity of time, is sometimes rendered in English by *it is, it was, &c.* when the English preposition *since* is rendered (in French) by *que*: but in all cases where the English phrase can be rendered negatively, *que* must be accompanied by the negation *ne*: *ex.*

*Il y a trois semaines que* *It is three weeks since*  
*votre père est arrivé,* *your father arrived.*  
*Il y a long-tems que je ne* *It is a long while since I*  
*vous ai vu,* *saw you, or, I have not*  
*seen you this long*  
*while.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

How long is it since we (saw one another?) *It is a*  
*Combien, adv. se voir, v. refl.*  
 year since I met *your brother in Italy, and*  
*rencontrer, v. en*  
 it is six months since I heard *of him: - -*  
*entendre parler, v.*  
 How long is it since you wrote to your mother? - -  
 It is but two months. - - *It was a week since I had*  
*ne que semaine, f.*  
 seen your brother, when I met him by chance *in*  
*par hasard, adv.*  
 a (coffee-room.) - - *How long was it since your friend*  
*café, m.*  
 had left *France when he wrote to you? - - It was*  
*laisser, v.*  
 three months. - - *It may be two years since Mr. Robert*  
 28

set out for the Indies. - - How long is it since you  
*partir, v. Indies.*

were in England? - - It is (such a) long while since I  
 learned German, <sup>si</sup> that I almost forgot it.

*Allemand, m.*

It often happens that the verb *there is*, or *it is*, &c. is understood: in this case, one of the words, *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, is expressed as a substitute: ex.

Il y a trois mois que j'étois en France, or j'étois en France il y a trois mois,\* I was in France three months ago.

Il y a quatre ans que mon frère est mort, My brother has been dead these four years.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

He is the same man whom we saw a quarter of an  
*C'est quart* hour ago. - - When did you see my father? - - I saw

him (a fortnight) ago. - - We have not heard† from my  
*quinze jours* brother these two years. - - You do not seem to  
*paraître, v.*

be so lively as you were three years ago. - - I would  
*enjoué, adj.*

have written to you a month ago, if I had known  
*savoir, v.* your direction. - - - I have not seen your sister these  
*adresse, f.*

\* From this instance it may be observed, that, if the verb *il y a*, &c. begin the sentence, the word *que* must immediately follow the noun of number; but, if it be transposed, *que* must be omitted. The first construction is to be preferred. The learner must at the same time observe, that in the above sentence, the verb, which; in English, is in the compound of the present, is rendered in French by the present of the indicative, and when in the compound of the imperfect by the imperfect of the same mood.

† See page 193.

four months. - - My father has been ill <sup>these</sup>  
<sup>malade, adj.</sup>  
 six weeks. - - He has been in London these five years,  
<sup>à</sup>  
 and (it is said) he there enjoys a considerable fortune.  
<sup>l'on dit, v.</sup>  
 - - - We have neither seen you nor your sisters these  
 three days.

It also happens, that neither the verbs, nor any of the words, *ago*, *these*, or *for these*, are expressed in the sentence: ex.

<i>Il y a neuf ans que ma tante demeure dans ce voisinage,</i>	My aunt has lived nine years in this neighbourhood.
<i>Il n'y a pas plus d'une heure que nous pêchons ici,</i>	We have not been above an hour fishing here.
<i>Il y avoit deux ans que ma sœur étoit en France quand j'y allai,</i>	My sister had been two years in France when I went there.
<i>N'y avoit-il pas six mois qu'elle demouroit avec nous quand elle mourut ?</i>	Had she not lived six months with us when she died ?
<i>Il y aura six ans à Noël que votre frère est chez M<sup>ons</sup>. O.</i>	Your brother will have been at Mr. O's. six years at Christmas.
<i>N'y aura-t-il pas un an au mois d'Août prochain que votre sœur est à Paris ?</i>	Will not your sister have been a year at Paris next August ?

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Some people\* have no pity on their poor  
<sup>gens, pl.</sup> <sup>de</sup>  
 fellow-creatures. - - Some people\* fancy  
<sup>semblable,</sup> <sup>personne, f.</sup> <sup>s'imaginer, v.</sup>

\* These sentences are the same as *there are some people who*, &c.  
*Il y a des gens qui*, &c.

that they can learn a language without  
*pouvoir, v.*  
 studying. - - - My brother has been four years at  
*étudier, v.*  
 Mr. W's. academy,\* and my father told him that he  
 should stay there two years more. - - I had been three  
*rester, v.*  
 years in England when that happened. - - I had not  
*arriver, v.*  
 been three months in France, when my brother returned  
 from America to London. - - Mr. N. had only  
*ne que*  
 learned French seven months when he wrote me  
 a letter in that language. - - - Had not Mr. David  
*langue, f.*  
 been four years and a half in Spain when his sister  
 was married? - - My father and mother had not been  
 (gone out) above a quarter of an hour when  
*sortir, v.* *plus de, adv.*  
 he arrived. - - - We had been playing at cards  
*aux cartes, f.*  
 for two hours when you came in. - - Thomas will have  
*entrer, v.*  
 been at the college two years the tenth of next  
*collège, m.*  
 month.

The verb *être*, to be, becomes impersonal when followed by a substantive, or one of the pronouns *personal*, *possessive*, or *demonstrative*, and is always conjugated with the pronoun demonstrative *ce*, whether speaking of persons or things : ex.

\* All the sentences in this exercise, should begin with the impersonal verb *Il y a*, *Il y avait*, &c.

*C'est la loi qui l'ordonne,*

It is *the* law that pre-  
scribes it.

*C'est moi qui l'ai fait,*

It is *I* who have done it.

*C'est mon bienfaiteur,*

It is *my* benefactor.

*C'est eux, or, ce sont eux,*  
*qui me l'ont rapporté,*

It is *they* who have related  
it to me.

From the last instance, it appears that *it is*, &c. fol-  
lowed by a pronoun of the third person plural, may be  
rendered in French two ways; but, when *is it*, &c. is  
used in asking a question, it is generally put in the sin-  
gular, though the pronoun be in the plural number:  
ex.

*Est-ce eux qui l'ont fait,*

Is it *they* who have done it?

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is prosperity which commonly<sup>2</sup> makes<sup>1</sup>  
*prospérité, f.* *rendre, v.*  
men haughty and proud, but it is adversity  
*fier, adj.* *orgueilleux, adj.*  
that makes them wise. - - - It was the custom  
*rendre, v.* *coutume, f.*  
among the Spartans to inure their  
*chez, p.* *Spartiate, m.* *de endurcir, v.*  
children early to the fatigues of war.  
*de bonne heure, adv.* *travail, m.* *guerre, f.*  
- - It is not I who occasioned the quarrel, it is  
*causer, v.* *querelle, f.*  
you who began first. - - - It was envy  
*avez commencé le* *envie, f.*  
which caused the first murder. - - Is it not you who  
*causer, v.* *meurtre, m.*  
wrote to Miss A. ? No, it is Miss Rose's sister.  
*avez écrit, v.*  
- - If you do not succeed, it will not be my fault.  
*réussir, v.* *faute, f.*  
- - If you happened to lose the friendship of your  
*venir* *à perdre, v.*

parents, it would be the greatest misfortune which  
*malheur, m.*  
 ever<sup>s</sup> might<sup>t</sup> happen to you. - It is my friend  
*jamais, adv. pouvoir, v. arriver, v.*  
 who told me that it was your father whom we saw  
*dire, v.*  
 yesterday. - - Speak to my brothers, for it is they  
*car, c.*  
 who told it me. - - - Why do you not accuse  
*Pourquoi, adv.*  
 my sisters? - - It is they who have done all the  
 mischief. - - - You blame my aunts, but is it they  
*mal, m. blâmer, v. tante, f.*  
 who have offended you?  
*offenser, v.*

*He, she, they, immediately followed by who, whom, or that, and such as, whether separated in English or not, but implying people in general, are often made into French by the impersonal c'est, with an infinitive followed by que de before a second infinitive, and if the sentence be negative, c'est ne pas must be used: observe well these examples,*

*C'est être fou que de He is a fool who loses his*  
*perdre le tems à ces time in those trifles.*  
*bagatelles,*

*C'est ne pas goûter les Such as love nobody, do*  
*plaisirs de l'amitié que not enjoy the pleasures*  
*de n'aimer personne, of friendship.*

*C'est trop présumer de soi They are too conceited who*  
*même que d'agir ainsi, act so.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

*He is a blind man who does not*  
*aveugle, adj. us*  
*perceive all the dangers which surround*  
*environner, v.*  
*in this\* deceitful world. - - Such as are satis-*  
*trompeur, adj. con-*



fled with their lot are happy. - - - He  
*tené,adj. de son,pro. sort,m.*  
 does not know the court who relies  
*connoître,v. cour,f. se fier,v.*  
 (on the) promises which (are made) there. - - They  
*aux on fait,v.*  
 are strangers to the charms of society who shun  
*société,f. fuir,v.*  
 company. - They are idle who do not know the  
*paresseux,adj. connoître*  
 value of time. - - They obey the commands of God  
*temps,m. aux*  
 who love their neighbours, and do not reproach  
*son prochain,sing.*  
 them with their small defects. - - He is not a Chris-  
*lui ses*  
 tian who seeks to hurt his neighbour and speaks  
*à voisin,m.*  
 ill of him on all occasions. - - They do not under-  
*dans f.*  
 stand their own interest who neglect study.  
*propre,adj.*

The verb *être*, to be, becomes also impersonal every  
 time it is followed by a noun adjective used in a vague  
 indeterminate sense, and relates to no particular object;  
 in which case the verb is generally preceded by the pro-  
 noun *il*; and when used to denote the state of the wea-  
 ther, it is rendered by the third person singular of the  
 verb *faire*, to make or do: ex.

*Il est extraordinaire, &c.*

It is extraordinary, &c.

*Il fait beau tems,*

It is fine weather.

*Ne faisoit-il pas chaud ?*

Was it not hot?

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is surprising to see you so lazy and in-  
*étonnant,adj. de*

attentive after having been punished severely  
*après, p. avoir sévère-*  
 ly for these faults. - - It is always dangerous  
*ment, adv.*

to (keep company with) people without any prin-  
*de fréquenter, v. personne aucun prin-*  
 ciple of religion. - - Does it rain? No, Sir,  
*cipe, m. Monsieur, m.*

it is fine weather. - - Was it not very cold? - - It will  
*froid, m.*

neither be cold nor hot. - - It has (been a) high  
*ni, c. ni, c. faire, v. grand, adj.*  
 wind, and I think it will soon freeze. - - It is not so  
*penser, v.*

cold as it was (at the) beginning of this month. - -  
*au commencement, m.*

Do you think (that) it is hotter in Italy than here?  
*pres. subj.*

The learner must observe, that the following verb is *absolutely impersonal* throughout all its tenses, and that nothing is more disagreeable than to hear young people say, *Je faut, vous faut, on faut, &c.* to prevent which, as much as possible, some examples are here set down.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. *Falloir*, to be needful, requisite, necessary.  
 Part. pass. *Fallu*, been needful, &c.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Affirmatively. Sing.

Present. *Il faut que je fasse*, I must do.  
*Il faut que tu fasses*, thou must do.  
*Il faut qu'il fuisse*, he must do.  
*Il faut qu'elle fasse*, she must do.

Plural.

*Il faut que nous fassions*, we must do.  
*Il faut que vous fassiez*, you must do.  
*Il faut qu'ils, or elles fassent*, they must do.

## Negatively.

*Il ne faut pas que je fasse,* I must not do.  
*Il ne faut pas que vous fassiez,* you must not do, &c.

## Interrogatively.

*Faut-il que je fasse ?* must I do ?  
*Faut-il que vous fassiez ?* must you do ?  
*Ne faut-il pas que je fasse ?* must I not do ?  
*Ne faut-il pas que vous fassiez ?* must you not do ?

Imperfect. *Il falloit qu'il écrivit,* it was necessary, &c.  
 for him to write.

Preterite. *Il fallut qu'il partît,* he was obliged to set  
 out.

Future. *Il faudra qu'il vienne,* he must come, he shall  
 be obliged to come.

Condit. *Il faudroit que j'allasse,* I should go, or it  
 would be necessary  
 for me to go.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *Qu'il faille,* that it may be necessary, &c.  
 Imperfect. *Qu'il fallût,* that it might be necessary.

As to the compound tenses of this verb, they are formed by adding its participle passive to the third person singular of any of the simple tenses of the verb *avoir*, to have : ex. *Il a fallu, il avoit fallu, &c.*

From the foregoing instances, it is easy to see, that, when the verb  *falloir*  is used in the present or future tense of the indicative mood, the following verb must be rendered by the present of the subjunctive ; but when it is used in the imperfect, preterite, or conditional present of the indicative, the verb following must be rendered by the preterite of the subjunctive : ex.

*Il faut, or il faudra que je fasse,* I must do, I shall be obliged  
 to do, or, it will be necessary for me to do.

*Il falloit, or, il fallut que* I was obliged, or, it was  
*je parlasse,* necessary for me, to  
*speak.*

*Il faudroit que je vendisse,* I should be obliged, or, it  
 would be necessary for  
 me, to sell.

# EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

If you go to Coxheath to-day you must  
*aujourd'hui, adv.*

(come back) to-morrow. - - - You may go to  
*revenir, v. pouvoir, v.*

London this morning, but remember that you must  
*souvenez-vous*

be (back) at three o'clock. - - - - You must get  
*de retour se*

up to-morrow morning at four o'clock. - - - -  
*lever, v.*

Custom must not always prevail over reason. - - - -  
*sur, p.*

Shall I be obliged to carry them there? - - - -  
*falloir, v. mener, v.*

Must I not show you my work? - - - - You  
*montrer, v. ouvrage, m.*

must have been well (acquainted with) the places  
*connoître, v. endroit, m.*

to expose yourself in that manner. - - If he  
*pour, c. de, p.*

wished to pay his debts, he would be obliged  
*vouloit, v. dette, f.*

to sell all his property. - - If your brothers had not  
*bien, m.*

ceased to quarrel, it would have been ne-  
*cesser, v. de quereller, v.*

cessary\* for them to part. - - - - You must not  
*se séparer, v.*

\* After the words *better, necessary, needful, expedient, good, im-possible, &c.* joined to the verb *to be*, conjugated impersonally, the preposition *for* is to be rendered by *que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood, either present or preterite, according to the tense of the preceding verb.

leave your country so soon, all your friends op-  
 quitter, v.      pays, m.      s'op-  
 pose it.  
 poser, v. y.

The same observation is to be made on the verb, *valoir* mieux, to be better, used impersonally; and the adjectives *bon*, *difficile*, *impossible*, *nécessaire*, *à propos*, &c. joined to the verb *être*, used in the third person singular only: ex.

*Il n'est pas bon que vous soyez seul,*      It is not good for you to be alone.  
*Il vaut mieux que vous ayez compagnie,*      It is better for you to have company.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is difficult for you to improve      if you  
    *faire des progrès,*  
 do not apply      better to study. - - It was impossible  
                  *s'appliquer, v.*      *étude, f.*  
 for you to have succeeded unless      you had taken  
                                  *à moins que, c. ne.* (by the sub.)  
 more convenient      measures. - - It would be expedient  
                  *convenable, adj.*      *à propos*  
 for you to read this book from      the beginning  
                                  *depuis, p.*  
 to      the end - - Believe me, it is better  
*jusqu'à, p.*      *fin, f.*      *valoir mieux, v.*  
 for you to go there to-morrow, for      it will snow  
                                  *car, c.*  
 soon. - - - Will it not be better for me to be at  
*bientôt, adv.*  
 school too soon      than too late? - - - Would it not  
                  *tôt, adv.*      *tard, adv.*  
 be better for him to go and speak to them himself,  
                  *ou*  
 than to send his servant? - - - It is good for us  
                  *de*      *domestique, m. & f.*  
 to help      one another in our troubles.  
                  *s'aider, v.*      *peine, f.*

The above verb *falloir*, being used before the verb *to have*, followed immediately by a noun substantive, may be rendered without expressing the auxiliary verb; instead of which, insert one of the following conjunctive pronouns, *me, te, lui, nous, vous, or leur*, according to the number and person : ex.

*Il me faut des livres,*

I must *have*, or, I want books.

*Il lui faut un chapeau,*

He must *have*, or, he wants a hat.

*Il lui faut un bonnet,*

She must *have*, or, she wants a cap.

N. B. If the verb *to have* be expressed in French, it must be rendered by the subjunctive mood :

*Il faut que j'aie des livres,*

I must *have*, or, I want books.

This method, however, is not so elegant as the former.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I shall want paper, pens, and ink. - - What do *falloir, v.*

you want ? - - I want nothing (for the) present, but I *à*

think I shall soon want a French grammar. - - *penser, v.*

My brother has an old hat, and he will soon *vieux, adj.*

want a new one. - - If you like *neuf, adj.* *en, pro.*  *aimez, v.* *à*

speak much, you must have (a good deal) of *bien, adv.*

circumspection not to (speak ill) of others. - - *retenue, f.* *pour ne pas médire, v.*

Since I cannot find my book, I must have *Puisque, c.*

another. - - If we wish to succeed in our under- *vouloir, v.*

taking, we must have (a great deal) of patience. - - -

*beaucoup*, adv.

My brothers have lost their buckles, they must have  
*boucle*, f.  
others.

Before the conclusion of this section, it will be proper to say something about the pronoun indefinite *on*, which commonly precedes a verb used impersonally (viz. in the third person singular) in French, and in English is generally made by a passive voice: ex.

*On m'a permis de chanter*, I have been allowed to sing.

People have allowed me, &c.

*On lui a défendu de sortir*, He has been forbidden to go out.

One has forbidden him, &c.

In this case, the verb which, in English, is in the passive voice, must, in French, be turned into the active, when the English nominative becomes the regimen of the verb in French, the sentence beginning with *on*, and translated as if the English were, *one* has allowed me to sing, *one* has forbidden him to go out.

*In French*, passive verbs are seldom used.

It is the same with,

*On dit*, It is said, or people say.

*On me dit*, I am told.

*On dit à votre frère*, Your brother is told.

*On disoit*, } It was said, or people said,  
*On dit*, } or were saying.

*On dira*, It will be said, or people will say.

*On dira à nos enfans*, Our children will be told, or one will tell, &c.

*On a dit*, It has been said, or people have said.

*On nous a dit*, We have been told, or one has told us.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.\*

In time of war, peace is always spoken of. - -

*En, p.*

Where is your brother? it is not known. - - -

*savoir, v.*

The death of the invincible admiral Lord Nelson  
*mort, f.*

is daily lamented, and will be

*tous les jours, adv. regretter, v.*

so a long time. - - - I was told yesterday that

your brother has been punished for his idleness;

had your father been told of it, he would have been

very angry with him. - - People will be eager

*contre, p.*

*s'empreser, v.*

in buying your book, and it will be read with avidity.  
*de, p.*

- - Learned men are found in villages, as well as in

towns. - - - It is reported on all sides that we shall

*de côté, m.*

soon have peace, but the news has not yet been

received, though it be ardently (wished for),

*ardemment, adv.*

*souhaiter, v.*

however, it is thought that the secret expedition

will sail in a few days. - - It will be be-

*mettre à la voile un peu de*

lieved that you blame me. - - It would not be supposed

that you praise us. - - I have been assured that he has

threatened him.

\* It is very important always to bear in mind the preceding rules and examples.



## RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE ON THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(Review them carefully before you write.)

There is no going out to-day, it rains apace. ---  
*à verse, adv.*  
 Do not make so much noise, there is no hearing  
*s'entendre, v.*  
 one another. - - Is it cold this morning? Yes, Sir, it  
*est* is very cold; however, I am told it is not so cold as  
*cependant*  
 it was yesterday. - - The weather is very inconstant  
 in this country, it was very hot yesterday, it is  
*pays, m.*  
 excessively cold to-day: it did freeze this morning,  
*très, adv.*  
 it hailed at noon, - it rained in the afternoon, and  
*midi,* *après-midi,*  
 now it drizzles. - - It sometimes lightens when it  
*quelquefois, adv.*  
 does not thunder, but (as often as) it thun-  
*toutes les fois que, c.*  
 ders, it lightens. - - - If it be fine weather next week,  
 I shall go to London, but if it be bad weather I  
 shall stay at home. - - - It is a pleasure to see  
*rester, v. au logis.* *de*  
 bees (coming out) of their hives when it is  
*abeille, f. sortir, v. ruche, f. faire, v.*  
 a sunny day. - - - Had I known you were returned  
*brillant, adj. revenir, v.*  
 from the continent, I would have gone to see you  
*être*  
 long ago. - - - My father and mother were told you  
 were in England ten years ago, but you neither saw  
 nor wrote to them. - - Every body agrees there  
*convenir, v.*

are fine women in Great-Britain, but there is not  
*dans Bretagne, f.*

such good wine as in France. - - - It greatly  
*si en beaucoup, adv.*

concerns children to avoid bad company. - - -  
*aux de éviter, v.*

If there were any real virtue in the world, should

we (meet with) so many false friends? - - - If he  
*trouver, v.*

behaved well, there would not be a man  
*se comporter, v.*

(in the world) that I should esteem more. - - - No  
*au monde, estimer, v. subj.*

object is more pleasing to the eye than the sight of  
*plaire, v. vue, f.*

a man whom you have obliged, nor\* (is) any music  
*est-il*

so agreeable to the ear as the voice of a man  
*oreille, f.*

who owns you for his benefactor. - - - Such  
*reconnoître, v.*

as support the conduct of idle and obstinate  
*encourager, v.*

scholars, make themselves contemptible. - - They are not  
*méprisable, adj.*

acquainted with the human heart, who rely upon  
*faire fond, v.*

the vain promises of men. - - You have already been  
*déjà, adv.*

told that (nobody in the world) has prepossessed me

against you, how many times must I repeat  
*contre, p. combien, adv. falloir, v.*

it to you? - - I was told yesterday that you were very

ill, and I am truly glad to see you so well. - - -  
*de bien portant.*

\* *Il est* and *est-il?* are often used elegantly in French, for *il y a*, and *y a-t-il?*

There is no persuading you when you have a mind  
 not to believe what you are told. - - - More virtue is <sup>envie</sup>  
 de requisite to support good fortune than bad. - - -  
 Much art and nicety <sup>pour,p.</sup> are requisite to  
 délicatesse please every body. - - - It matters little whether it be <sup>pour,p.</sup>  
 à my servant or yours who carries the letter to the <sup>que ce</sup>  
 porter.v. post. - - - You must honour your father and mother if  
 poste,f. you will live long and happy. - - - It is more glo-  
 vouloir,v. rious to conquer one's passions than to conquer  
 de vaincre,v. ses the whole world. - - Sir, I want a pair of boots,  
 entier,adj. you have some in your shop that will suit  
 boutique,f. me. - - - It is reported that the Russians have beaten <sup>convenir,v.</sup>  
 Russe,m. the Turks; it is said so, but it is not yet known as a  
 Turc,m. certain fact. - - It is thought Sweden has declared war  
 fait,m. against France. - - - It is true; but it is much  
 à vrai,adj. feared lest the Swedes should be  
 craindre,v. que,c. Suédois ne, (by the pres.subj.)  
 beaten, though they fight most courageously.  
 se battre,v. très  
 - - - Have the letters been received which were  
 expected yesterday? No, but the mail is ar-  
 attendre,v. malle,f.  
 rived, and they will be delivered this morning.  
 distribuer,v.

# SECT. V.

## OF PARTICIPLES.

Participles are either active or passive. The *participle active*, in French, always ends in *ant*: ex. *parlant*; *punissant*, and in English in *ing*: ex. *speaking*, *punishing*, &c. It is always, in its own nature, indeclinable: ex.

*Je vois des hommes et des femmes venant à nous,* I see men and women coming to us.

### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The persons whom you saw with us are people <sup>*gens, pl.*</sup> fearing God and loving virtue. - - - She met your father and sister (as she was) coming here. - - - My <sup>*en*</sup> mother was told (the day before yesterday) that <sup>*ici, adv.*</sup> your sister, remembering <sup>*avant-hier, adv.*</sup> the injuries she had received from your brother, refused to <sup>*reçues, p.p.*</sup> see him, and we are all glad to hear <sup>*de la part de,*</sup> it. - - <sup>*de apprendre, v.*</sup> Your aunt, having given the necessary orders to your cousins, (set out) immediately for London. - - - Did <sup>*partir, v.*</sup> you not see them coming to us? - - How many oxen, <sup>*bœuf, m.*</sup> sheep, and horses I hear <sup>*entendre, v. de*</sup> afar off <sup>*lowing,*</sup> bleating, and neighing! - - Do you not admire these <sup>*brebis, f. pl.*</sup> <sup>*mugir, v.*</sup> <sup>*béler, v.*</sup> <sup>*hennir, v.*</sup>

lambs, skipping in your father-in-law's meadow?  
*agneau, m. bondir, v. prairie, f.*

N. B. In order to distinguish between active participles, and many adjectives which are spelt alike, but which must agree with the nominative, consider whether there is an action expressed, or whether the word implies merely an attribute of the noun, thus, in these two sentences,

<i>Je vois des agneaux, bondissant dans la plaine,</i>	I see lambs <i>skipping</i> in the plain.
<i>J'aime à voir les agneaux bondissans, errer dans la plaine,</i>	I like to see <i>skipping'</i> lambs, wandering in the plain.

The first conveys this idea, that the lambs are *now* skipping, whilst the second implies that an attribute of lambs is to skip.

When the participle active in English is preceded by another verb, an article, or a preposition, it must be rendered in French by the verb in the infinitive mood, and it is sometimes used as a substantive : ex.

<i>Faut-il que je parle sans lui parler?</i>	Must I set out <i>without speaking</i> to him?
<i>La pauvreté du corps est la richesse de l'âme,</i>	<i>The impoverishing</i> of the body is <i>the enriching</i> of the soul.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I assure you there is a great deal of pleasure in <sup>à, p.</sup> teaching diligent scholars. - - - We are told there <sup>enseigner, v.</sup> will not be so much danger in travelling, as there <sup>à voyager, v. que</sup> was before. - - Lewis the Great had especially the superior and rare talent of knowing and choosing men <sup>surtout, adv.</sup> of merit. - - - He left the house without seeing his

father, and even without speaking to his mother.  
*même, adv.*

-- I should despise a man who is capable of  
*mépriser, v.*

deceiving his friends. -- After having (waited for) her  
*tromper, v.* *attendre, v.*

a long while, she (sent me word) that she was not  
*envoyer dire, v.*

ready to (go out.) -- She spends all her time in  
*prêt, adj. à* *passer, v.* *à*

reading or writing. -- My mother takes an infinite

pleasure in admiring the situation of your house. -- The  
*à* *situation, f.*

grace of God will always keep us from sinning.  
*empêcher, v.* *pêcher, v.*

-- I often admire the rising and setting of the sun. --  
*lever, m.* *coucher, m.* *soleil, m.*

The defending of a bad cause is worse than  
*défense, f.* *mauvais, adj.*

the cause itself.

*même.*

The participle passive is sometimes declinable, and sometimes indeclinable.

It is declinable,

First, when it is joined to the verb *être*, to be, forming a passive verb, and agrees with the nominative case of the verb in gender and number; and when it is not attended with any auxiliary verb; in this case it becomes an adjective or at least performs the same office.

*Mon frère est aimé,*  
*Ma sœur est aimée,*  
*Mes cousins sont partis,*  
*Mes cousines sont parties,*  
*Elle paroît affligée,*  
*Elles paroissent affligées,*

My brother is loved.  
 My sister is loved.  
 My cousins are gone.  
 My cousins are gone.  
 She appears afflicted.  
 They appear afflicted.

N. B. There is no exception to the above rule ; but it is very important to remember that in the compound tenses of the reflected verbs, the verb *être* is employed for the verb *avoir* ; all such cases will come under the next rule, as if the verb *être* were the verb *avoir*.

# EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

I have been told your brother-in-law is gone to  
*beau-frère, m.*  
 the Continent. - - - I have not seen your mother  
*vu, p. p.*  
 since she arrived from France ; does she appear  
*depuis que, c.*  
 satisfied with her journey ? - - - My brothers are gone to  
*de voyage, m.*  
 Dover, and intend to pay you a visit when  
*se proposer, v. de rendre, v.*  
 they are (come back). - - - The houses which are  
 (by the fut.) *revenir, v.*  
 built in the winter are not so wholesome as those  
*sain, adj.*  
 which are begun (in the) spring and finished (in the)  
*au* *au*  
 middle of summer. - - The wicked are always tor-  
*été, m. méchant, adj. pl. bour-*  
 mented, and the righteous are comforted by their  
*reler, v. juste, adj. consoler, v.*  
 own conscience. - - Virtuous people are esteemed  
*personne, f.*  
 and respected by those who are so. - - - I assure you  
*de*  
 that Mr. Brown's wife appears much afflicted  
*femme, f. fort, adv.*  
 at the death of her husband, but her sons appear  
*de mari, m.*  
 as much affected by it as she.  
*toucher, v.*

Secondly, with the verb *avoir*, the participle instead of agreeing with the nominative, must agree with the *direct object*, which is a noun or (in this instance) a pronoun governed in the *accusative case*, but that direct object must *precede* the participle, otherwise that participle does not agree with it; thus in this phrase, *j'ai vu ma sœur*, the participle does not change, because *ma sœur* which is the direct object, does not precede, but in this phrase *c'est ma sœur que j'ai vue*, the participle agrees, because *que* relative pronoun, which represents *ma sœur* is placed before that participle.

In the compound tenses of the reflected verbs where the auxiliary *être* is employed instead of *avoir*, if you suppose this last verb to exist where *être* is used, the above-mentioned rule must direct you. By the same reason that we say *il l'a tuée* (he has killed her,) we say *elle s'est tuée*, which is the same as if we could say *elle a soi tuée*, she has herself killed, she killed herself.

<i>J'ai vu Madame Wright et</i>	I saw Mrs. Wright and
<i>l'ai entendue chanter,</i>	<i>heard her sing.</i>
<i>J'ai lu tous les livres que</i>	I have read all the books
<i>vous m'avez prêtés,</i>	<i>which you lent me.</i>
<i>Avez-vous vu les marchan-</i>	Did you see the 'goods
<i>dises que j'ai reçues,</i>	<i>which I have received.</i>
<i>Vous l'avez souvent priée</i>	You often desired her to
<i>de passer chez vous,</i>	<i>call at your house.</i>
<i>Elles se sont repenties de</i>	They have repented of
<i>leurs fautes,</i>	<i>their faults.</i>

#### EXERCISÉ UPON THIS RULE.

The resolution which she has taken of going into  
 the country surprises me very much; I have spoken  
 to her myself, but I have not (been able to) learn  
 the reasons which have induced her to it. - - - Miss  
 Farren was an excellent actress, I have seen her

*étonner, v. très fort, adv.*  
*pouvoir, v.*  
*engager, v.*  
*Mlle*  
*actrice, f.*



play several times. - - I am very sorry for the  
*fâché*,adj. *de*

trouble that affair has given to your aunt. - - If you  
*peine*,f. *tante*,f.

can come with me, I will show you the lady  
*montrer*,v.

whom I have heard sing. - - What stuff have  
*entendre*,v.. *éttoffe*,f.

you chosen ? - - The letter which you have written to  
*choisi*,p.p.

me in French was tolerably well ; I have shown  
*en* *passablement*,adv.

it to your aunt, who is much pleased  
*très*,adv. *content*,adj.

(with it). - - I have not yet received the goods,  
*en*,pro. *marchandise*,f.

which you sent me by the ship. Good-  
*vaissau*,m.

Will. - - Ladies, have you returned him the letters  
*Mesdames*, *rendre*,v.

which he had desired you to read ? - - - Where  
*prier*,v. *de* *Où*,adv.

did you buy those gloves ? - - - - I bought  
*acheter*,v.

them in France. - - Alexander conquered Asia with  
*Asie*

the troops which his father Philip had disciplined.  
*troupe*,f.

- - The faults which he had committed, greatly  
*beaucoup*,adv.

increased his prudence. - - He has spent all the  
*augmenter*,v.

treasures which his father had amassed with so much  
*trésor*,m.

care and labour. - - I shall never forget the good  
*oublier*,v.

services which you have done to my mother.  
*service*,m. *rendre*,v.

- - Of all the letters which my brother has received

to-day, there is not one (of them) for  
*aujourd'hui*, adv.  
 me. - - The reasons, which you have given us, have

satisfied us. - - What books have you lost ? - - The  
*satisfaire*, v.

fine actions your brothers have done in  
*beau*, adj. *action*, f. *faire*, v. en

America deserve great praises, and (ought to) be  
*Amérique mériter*, v. *louange*, f. *devoir*, v.

transmitted to posterity. - - The three country

houses, which your father is said to have bought,  
*maison*,

are extremely fine and well situated. - - The  
*situé*, p.p.

soldiers, whom they obliged to (set out,) are  
*soldat*, m. à

(come back) already. - - - My sisters have  
*revenir*, v.

quarrelled the whole day, and are now reconciled.  
*se quereller*, v.

The participle passive is indeclinable when the participle is not preceded by a *direct object*, or pronoun governed in the accusative case.

This happens when the object follows, as in this phrase *J'ai vu ma sœur*, or when another verb governs the pronoun, as in this phrase, *Il ne faut jamais s'écarter de la bonne route que l'on a commencé à suivre*; here *suivre* governs *que* and not *commencé*.

<i>La maison que j'ai fait bâtir,</i>	The house I have built.
<i>C'est une belle chanson, je</i>	It is a fine song, I have
<i>l'ai entendu chanter plu-</i>	heard it sung many a
<i>sieurs fois,</i>	time.
<i>J'y suis allé avec elle et l'ai</i>	I went there with her,
<i>vu peindre,</i>	and saw her picture
	drawn.

*La langue que j'ai com-* The language I have be-  
*mencé d'apprendre est* gun to learn is very  
*fort utile,* useful.

In the above instances the pronouns are not governed by the participle passive, but by the verbs *chanter*, *peindre*, and *apprendre*.

# EXERCISES UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULE.

I have given him a fable to translate. - - I cannot  
*à traduire, v.*  
forget the good actions, which I have seen  
you do. - - - The goods which you ordered me to  
*de*  
send, are arrived ; permit me to show you the letters  
*de*  
which he has seen me open from Germany. - - -  
*Allemagne, f.*  
Have you already read the books, which I saw\* you  
buying ? - - - - I have bought the clothes for  
*habit, m. m.*  
which you saw me bargaining. - - - The history  
*marchander, v.*  
which I have begun to read is not entertaining. - -  
*à amusant, adj.*  
She has written more books than you ever have  
*jamais, adv.*  
read. - - The lady whom I saw singing is hand-  
some and young, but the song which I have heard  
sung is the best, as to words and music, that  
*quant*  
your brother ever wrote. - Miss B. has spent  
*passer, v.*

\* Observe that the participle, though it should not agree with books, *livres*, it should agree with the pronoun *vous*, so that it should be spelt *vue* if addressed to a female.

two or three days with your sisters, and saw their  
 (picture drawn); their cousins were in the next  
 room, and my sister saw them painting in minia-  
 ture.

It is often difficult to ascertain which is the *direct object*; a simple method is, to add one of these pronouns *who* or *what* to the participle, and then the answer will point out that object: thus, for this sentence, *ma sœur s'est cassé l'épaule*, ask my sister, *broke—what?—her shoulder*; this, then is the object, but as *l'épaule* follows, the participle does not change.

Sometimes a preposition is understood, or expressed by the pronoun, as in this sentence *voilà la dame dont j'ai parlé*; the pronoun *dont* is not the direct object, with which only the participle can agree; it is the *genitive*; besides, the verb *parler*, in this instance is neuter, and therefore cannot govern a noun in the accusative case: *ex.*

Les Anglois se sont rendus fameux dans cette guerre,      The English made themselves famous in this war?  
 Telles sont ses objections;      Such are his objections;  
 j'y ai pensé,      I have thought of them.

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE REMARKS.

Daughter, I had warned you of it. - - You  
 would have rendered yourself celebrated by your talents  
 and beauty, if you had not shown them so much vanity.  
 - - - He is the man (of whom) our neighbours have  
 complained. - - It is your fault, Miss, I have already  
 scolded you (about it).

Lastly, when the auxiliary verb and the participle passive are used impersonally. *Dû* (when not signifying owed), *pu*, and *voulu*, are also indeclinable: ex.

<i>Les pluies qu'il a fait,</i>	The rains which we have had.
<i>Je vous ai montré la reconnaissance que j'ai dû,</i>	I have shown you the gratitude I ought.
<i>Ma sœur a fait tout ce qu'elle a pu,</i>	My sister has done every thing she could.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

The storm, which we had yesterday, has  
*tempête, f.*  
 done (a great deal) of damage to our  
*causer, v.* *beaucoup, adv.* *dommage.*  
 ships. - - - The abundant showers which we have  
*pluie, f.*  
 had this week, have prevented me from going  
*empêcher, v.*  
 into the country. - - - The high winds which  
*à* *grand, adj.* *vent, m.*  
 they have had in the county of Kent, have (blown  
*comté, m.* *renver-*  
 down) many houses and trees. - - At last he has  
*ser, v.* *Enfin, adv.*  
 returned me all the sums which I had lent to  
*rendre, v.* *somme, f.*  
 him, and which he had owed me so long. - - - I  
*devoir, v.*  
 have not paid all the attention which I ought to  
*faire, v.*  
 the advice your father gave me. - - - She has ob-  
*avis, m.* *ob-*  
 tained from the king all the favours she would.  
*tenir, v.* *grâce, f.*

- - - My brother might have improved more,  
*faire des progrès*  
 but he has not made all the efforts he could.  
*effort, m.*

N. B. The rules on this subject, which have been regarded as being extremely intricate, and numerous, may be reduced to three, viz. 1st, The participle when attended with no auxiliary agrees with the nominative, like an adjective.—2d, When attended with the verb *être*, the participle *constantly* agrees with the nominative. Lastly the participle when attended with the verb *avoir* agrees with its *direct object*, only when that object precedes the participle; and in the compound tenses of the reflected verbs, the auxiliary verb *être* must be regarded as filling the place of the verb *avoir*, and subjected to the same rules, that being an anomaly in the language.

#### EXAMPLE UPON THE FOREGOING RULES.

<p><i>J'ai reçu les lettres que vous m'avez écrites au sujet de l'affaire, que je vous avois proposée: et après les avoir lues avec attention, j'ai reconnu, comme vous, que, si je l'avois entreprise, j'y aurois trouvé des obstacles que je n'avois pas prévus,</i></p>	<p>I have received the letters, which you wrote to me with respect to the affair which I had proposed to you: and after having read them with attention, I perceived, as you did, that, if I had undertaken it, I should have met with obstacles, which I had not foreseen.</p>
--	---

*Reçu* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded by any regimen; *écrites* is declinable, and agrees in gender and number with its direct object, or accusative, expressed by the pronoun relative *que*, which precedes the verb and relates to *lettres*; *proposée* likewise agrees with *que*, by which it is preceded,

and which relates to the word *affaire*; *lues* is declinable on account of its regimen *les*, which precedes it and relates to *letters*; *reconnu* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded by any regimen to which it can relate; *entreprise*, on the contrary, is declinable, and takes the gender and number of the conjunctive pronoun *l'*, which is its direct object and its antecedent, relating to *affaire*; *trouvé* is indeclinable, because it is not preceded but followed by its accusative *obstacles*; *prévu*, on the contrary, is declinable, because it is preceded by its direct object *que*, which relates to *obstacles*.

*Clearness* is the principal quality of the *French language*, therefore equivocations in the use of the participles should be carefully avoided: ex. *Je les ai rangés en ordre*, speaking of papers, may signify I have set them in order, or I have them and they are in order; in such a case a different regular turn should be chosen with which this language abounds.

---

## SECT. VI.

### INDECLINABLE PARTS OF SPEECH.

Under this head are comprehended *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

#### OF ADVERBS.

*Adverbs* have been distinguished, according to their several significations, into *adverbs of place*, *time*, *quality*, *quantity*, *number*, *order*, *affirmation*, *negation*, *doubt*, *interrogation*, *comparison*, *collection*, *separation*, &c. But this classification, however ingenious, is far from being exact: it was therefore judged, that, if those of the most frequent use, and which, when compounded, form a particular idiom, were carefully selected, and arranged in an alphabetical series, it would be more to the advantage of the learner.

## TABLE OF ADVERBS.\*

*Abondamment*, abundantly, plentifully.

*à l'Abandon*, at random, in confusion, in disorder.

*D'Abord*, at first, immediately.

*Absolument*, absolutely.

*D'Accord*, grant it, done.

*Agréablement*, pleasantly, comfortably.

*Ainsi* (de même), so, thus, in the same manner.

*Aisément*, easily.

*Mal aisément*, with difficulty.

*Dans un an d'ici*, a year hence.

*L'année qui vient*, the next year.

*Anciennement*, } formerly, anciently.

*Autrefois*, }

*En ami*, friendly.

*à l'amiable*, amicably.

*En arrière*, *tomber en arrière*, to fall backward.

*à reculons*, *marcher à reculons*, to walk backward.

*Assez*, enough.

*Assurément*, certainly.

*Aujourd'hui*, to-day.

Time to { *D'aujourd'hui en huit*, this day se'nnight.

come. { *D'aujourd'hui en quinze*, this day fortnight.

Time { *Il y a aujourd'hui huit jours*, this day week, this day se'nnight.

past. { *Il y a aujourd'hui quinze jours*, this day fortnight.

{ *Il y a aujourd'hui un an*, this day twelve months.

*Autant*, as much, as many.

*D'autant plus*, so much the more.

*D'autant moins*, so much the less.

*Tout autant*, } just as, just as much, every whit.

*Tout aussi*, }

*Dorénavant*, in future.

*à l'avenir*, for the future, hereafter.

*à l'Angloise*, after the English manner, fashion, or way.

*à l'Italienne*, after the Italian, &c.

*à la Française*, after the French, &c.

*à la Turque*, after the Turkish, &c.

\* Simple adverbs are generally placed after the verbs, and in compound tenses between the auxiliary and the participle passive.



## EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Our garden produces all kinds of fruits <sup>plentifully, f.</sup>  
*fully*. - - Your sister left <sup>all</sup> her things in *dis-*  
*order*. - - You did not know me *at first*. - - He would  
*absolutely* do it. - - If you please, <sup>vouloir, v.</sup> I will go to  
London with you. *Done*. - - I hope we shall spend  
the day *pleasantly*. - - Have we not spent it *so*? - - -  
My brother learns his lessons *easily*, and I *with dif-*  
*ficulty*. - - *A year hence* you will (be able to) speak  
French tolerably well. - - My father <sup>pouvoir, v.</sup> says I shall go  
to \*France *next year*. - - - It was done so an-  
*ciently*. - - I had the honour of seeing you *formerly*,  
but I do not recollect <sup>where</sup> I had that pleasure :  
<sup>se rappeler, v.</sup> I believe it was at Mr. P's. who received us  
*friendly*. - - - Your brother and mine have settled  
their affairs *amicably*. - - - Make two steps <sup>régler, v.</sup> back-  
*ward*. - - He who walks *backwards* <sup>pas, m.</sup> cannot see his  
way. - - Have you played *enough*? - - - Certainly  
you must <sup>be</sup> tired. - - - We do not expect him  
<sup>devoir, v.</sup> *fatiguer, v.* <sup>attendre, v.</sup>

\* See the article indefinite, page 41.

*to-day.* - - If it be fine weather, I shall be back  
*this day* <sup>*faire, v.*</sup> *tonight.* - - I shall see you *this day* <sup>*de retour*</sup> *fortnight*

if I am\* well. - - *This day week* I was (at your house).  
chez vous.

- - - *This day month* I met your brother. - - I came  
here *this day twelve months.* - - - He has as  
ici,adv.

much money and as many friends as you. - - I was  
so much the more persuaded of what you told me,

that I dismissed him *this day* three weeks. . . .  
renvoyer, v.

I will do it *so much the less*, as I promised him not  
que

to meddle with that affair. - - - My sister has  
*de se mêler, v.* *de, p.*

just as much wit, and is just as amiable as yours. - - -

Your son has given you some <sup>que</sup>trouble, but I <sup>peine, f.</sup>  
<sup>mais, c.</sup>

forgive him this time, he will not do it *for the future.* - - - *In future,* I never will trust him

any more. - - She dresses  
s'habiller, v.

*fashion, but she lives after the French way. - - She*  
vivre, v.

plays after the Italian manner. - - Your sister has a

cap - after the Turkish fashion. - - Come here,  
bonnet, m.

go there, look **every where.**  
*chercher, v.*

\* See note page 222.

## ADVERBS.

*Bas,* } off, down, down with, below.  
*à, or en bas,* }

*En badinant,* for fun.

*Beaucoup,* } much, many, a great deal.  
*Bien,* }

*à beaucoup près,* nothing near, (with *ne* before and *pas* after the verb.)

*De beaucoup,* by much, greatly.

*Bien,* well, very.

*De bon cœur,* heartily, with a good will.

*De bonne foi,* } sincerely.  
*Sincèrement,* }

*De bonne heure,* betimes.

*De bon jeu,* fairly.

*De bon matin,* early.

*De bouche,* by word of mouth.

*à la bonne heure,* in good time, luckily, well and good.

*à bon droit,* deservedly.

*à bon marché,* cheap.

*à bride abattue,* full speed.

*çà et là,* to and fro.

*à cause de quoi,* on what account.

*à cela près,* that excepted.

*Cependant,* in the meanwhile, nevertheless.

*à cheval,* on horseback.

## EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Hats off, gentlemen, and sit down. - - The whole  
 army<sup>3</sup> surrendered and laid down their arms  
*se rendre, v. mettre, v. les*

upon the ramparts of the citadel. - - There is a man  
 below, whom you will see with pleasure. - - Though\*  
*Quoique, c.*

we said it for fun, he was very angry with us. - -  
*contre, p.*

There were many ladies, and we had a great deal of  
 pleasure. - - You may say what you please,  
*pouvoir, v. il vous plaira, v.*

\* See conjunctions that govern the subjunctive, page 420.

but she is *nothing near* so handsome as her sister. - - He has *by much* increased his fortune. - -

Whatever you do, do it well. - - If you do not do it *with a good will*, I will do it myself. - - He has acted very *sincerely* in that business. - - Do you speak *sincerely*?

- - We will get up *belimes.* - - Have I not won *se lever, v.* *gagner, v.* *fairly*? - - We will (set out) *early*, that we may arrive

before the heat *afin que* of the day. - - - It (is *avant* *chaleur, f.* *valeir* better to) tell it him *by word of mouth*, than to *mieux, v.* write to him. - - Sir, I have done my exercise. - - *de* Well

and good. - - He has obtained it *thème, m.* *deservedly*. - - My *obtenir, v.* father has bought a horse *very cheap*. - - Do you see

those two horsemen, who come to us *full speed*? - - - *cavalier, m.*

They wandered *to and fro* without\* knowing whither *aller, v.*

to go. - - On *what account* is he angry with me?

- - That *excepted*, I have nothing to reproach him *à reprocher, v.* *lui* with. - - - I should *devoir, v.* speak, but, *in the meanwhile*, I

(hold my tongue). - - Miss White is very handsome, *se taire, v.*

nevertheless, I do not love her. - - - Some *Les uns* went to London in a coach, others on horseback. *en, p.* *à*

\* Without, *sans*, requires the present infinitive.

## ADVERBS.

*Combien, How much, how many, how?*

<i>Combien y a-t-il que,</i>	} <i>how long?</i>
<i>Combien de temps y a-t-il que,</i>	
<i>Combien y avoit-il que,</i>	
<i>Depuis quand,</i>	
<i>Combien de temps,</i>	
<i>Pendant combien de temps,</i>	

N. B. 1. *How much, how many, how,* are rendered in French by *que* before an admiration: ex.

*Que vous êtes jolie!*      *How pretty you are!*

2. We make use of *combien y a-t-il que*, when the action mentioned in the interrogation has not yet ceased; and then the verb, which (in English) is in the compound of the present, must be rendered (in French) by the present of the indicative mood: ex.

*Combien y a-t-il que vous êtes, or, depuis quand êtes-vous à Londres?*      *How long have you been in London?*

3. If the verb (in English) be in the compound of the imperfect, it is to be rendered (in French) by the imperfect of the indicative: ex.

*Combien y avoit-il que vous étiez, or, depuis quand étiez-vous à Londres quand il mourut?*      *How long had you been in London, when he died?*

4. If the action have entirely ceased, we make use of *pendant combien de temps*, with the following verb in the compound of the present: ex.

*Pendant combien de temps avez-vous été à Londres?*      *How long were you in London?*

5. *How long*, in the sense of *for what time*, is also rendered by *pendant combien de temps*, with the verb in the same tense as it is in English : ex.

*Pendant combien de temps* How long do you intend  
*vous proposez-vous de* to stay in Italy ?  
*rester en Italie ?*

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

*How much* do you owe him ? - - - You see to *how*  
*many* dangers and *how many* reproaches we are  
 liable. - - - *How many* times shall I be obliged to  
*exposé, p.p.* *de*  
 bid you to (be silent ?) - - - *How* troublesome  
*dire, v.* *de* *se taire, v.* *importun, adj.*  
 you are ! *How* sorry I am for\* having displeased  
*de*  
 you ! - - *How much* I should be obliged to you, if  
 you would grant me that favour ! - - *How long*  
*accorder, v.*  
 have you been learning French ? - - *How long* have  
 they been in Paris ? - - *How long* had you been in  
*à*  
 London, when you married ? - - *How long* had you been  
*se marier, v.*  
 learning Italian, when you wrote to me ? - - *How long*  
*Italien*  
 have your parents been in England ? - - *How long*  
*père et mère*  
 had your brother been in Germany, when we left  
*quitter, v.*  
 it ? *How long* were you in Holland ? - - *How long*  
*en*  
 did your cousin learn the mathematics ? - - *How long*

\* The prepositions *de*, *pour* and *à*, always govern the present infinitive and its compound.

have that gentleman and lady (been waiting for)  
*attendre, v.*  
 me? - - *How long* has your relation been dead? - - -  
*How long* had he been in his regiment, when he  
 died? - - *How long* was he ill? - - *How long* does your  
*malade?*  
 uncle intend to leave his son on the continent? - -  
*se proposer de*  
*How long* had your father and mother proposed  
 to stay in America? - - Why (are you proud) of  
*de en s'enorgueillir, v.*  
 your beauty? You do not know how long it will last.

## ADVERBS.

*Combien y a-t-il d'ici?* How far is it hence?  
*Dans combien de temps?* How long will it be before?  
*Comme,* as, like, how.  
*Comme il faut,* soundly, as it should be.  
*Comment,* how.  
*à contre-cœur,* against our will.  
*à contre-sens,* the contrary, or wrong way, in a wrong  
 sense.  
*à contre-temps,* unseasonably.  
*à corps perdu,* hand over head, desperately.  
*de côté,* }  
*à l'écart,* } aside.  
*à part,* }  
*à côté,* by the side of it.  
*à côté l'un de l'autre,* abreast.  
*De ce côté-ci,* on this side.  
*De ce côté-là,* on that side.  
*De côté et d'autre,* up and down, about.  
*De tous côtés,* on all sides, on every side.  
*Coup sur coup,* one after another.

## EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

*How far is it hence to Dover? - - How long will it be*  
*Douves?*  
*before you 'send me 'back the books I lent you? - -*  
*renvoyer, v.*  
*They are punished as they deserve. - - - My father's*  
*le*  
*house is like yours, it is very badly built. - - -*  
*mal, adv.*  
*See how it rains. - - - Have they not been beaten*  
*soundly? - - - This exercise is done as it should be.*  
*- - How can you speak thus? - - We went to the play*  
*against our will. - - You hold your book the wrong*  
*way. - - - Your brother took in a wrong sense all*  
*that I said to him. - - - Our master arrived very*  
*ce que*  
*unseasonably. - - - The French rushed on the*  
*fondre, v.*  
*Austrians desperately. - - Lay this aside. - - - Put*  
*Autrichien, m.*  
*that by the side of it. - - I perceive two ships sailing*  
*apprevoir, v.*  
*abreast. - - Let us walk on this side, and our companions*  
*will go on that side. - - They run up and down all day,*  
*and do (nothing but) play. - - How dare you run about*  
*ne que*  
*while your mother (is waiting for) you? - -*  
*pendant que, c.*  
*The enemies were victorious on all sides. - - - We*  
*hear on every side, that peace will very*  
*apprendre, v. bien*  
*soon take place. - - - They drank three bottles of*  
*avoir lieu, v.*  
*Burgundy wine one after another.*



## ADVERBS.

*Davantage*, more.

*Dedans*, } within, inwardly.

*En dedans*, }

*Dehors*, } without.

*En dehors*, }

*Déjà*, already.

*Demain*, to-morrow.

*Le lendemain*, the day after.

*Après demain*, the day after to-morrow.

*Dernièrement*, lately.

*Ci-dessus*, above.

*Par dessus*, above, over and above.

*Dessous*, } underneath.

*Au dessous*, }

*à découvert*, openly.

*à demi*, } half, by halves.

*à moitié*, }

*à dessein*, on purpose, designedly.

*à droite*, to the right.

*à double entente*, with a double meaning.

*Encore*, again, yet, as yet.

*Enfin*, at last.

*Ensuite*, afterward, then.

*Entièrement*, entirely.

*Exprès*, on purpose.

*à l'écart*, out of the way.

*à l'entour*, round about.

*à l'envers*, the wrong side outwards.

*à l'envi*, in emulation.

*aux environs*, thereabouts.

*En nulle manière*, in no wise, (with *ne* before the verb.)

*En plein jour*, } at noon, at mid-day.

*En plein midi*, }

*En temps et lieu*, in a proper time and place.

*En tous cas*, whatever may happen.

*En un clin d'œil*, in the twinkling of an eye.

*En sursaut*, suddenly.

## EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

I know how that happened, talk *no more* of it. - -  
 Look *within* and you shall see it. - - She was *within*  
 and I was *without*. - - Have you *already* done your ex-  
 ercise? - - I will call upon you *to-morrow*, and  
*passer, v. chez, p.*  
*the day after* we will go and see my uncle. - - - We  
 will pay you *the day after to-morrow* if we can. - -  
 I was *lately* (at your house). - - You will find it *above*.  
*chez vous.*  
 - - - I like your garden and walks *above all*.  
*aimer, v.*  
 - - There is a stone, look *underneath*, you will find  
 something curious. - - - Speak and show yourself  
*singulier.*  
*openly*. - - - We were *half* dead. - - - I never do  
 things *by halves*. - - They killed him *on purpose*. - -  
 They did say so *designedly*. - - Go *to the right*. - -  
 My brother always speaks *with a double meaning*. - - -  
 I have told the truth, and they do not yet believe me.  
 - - *At last* the rebels retired into the woods with  
*se retirer, v. dans, p. bois, m.*  
 a great loss. - - Do first what you have to do,  
*perte, f. Faire, v.*  
*afterward* you shall go out - - - He did it *entirely*  
 to please you. - - I came *on purpose* to see you.  
*vous, p.*

- - - Take all these papers, and put them out of the way. - - How can you find the place, if you always turn round about? - - - You have (put on) your waistcoat the wrong side <sup>mettre, v.</sup> ~~onwards~~. - - - My brother <sup>veste, f.</sup> and yours work in emulation of one another. - - - He lives in London or thereabouts. - - - I will do it in <sup>à</sup> no wise. - - I was stopped at noon. - - - We will tell him <sup>lui</sup> what we think in a proper time and place. - - - What-  
ever may happen, I (do not care) for it. - - He did <sup>se soucier, v.</sup> it in the twinkling of an eye. - - This morning I awoke suddenly, but I soon fell asleep again. <sup>s'éveiller, v.</sup>

## ADVERBS.

*Facilement*, easily.

*Fidèlement*, faithfully.

*à la file*, } in a file.  
*De file*, }

*à la fois*, together.

*Combien de fois* ? how many times ?

*Une fois*, once.

*Deux fois*, twice.

*Trois fois*, thrice, three times.

*Tant de fois*, so many times.

*Par fois*, now and then.

*Fortement*, strongly.

*Fort*, very.

*Fort et ferme*, stoutly.

*à fond*, thoroughly.

*De fond en comble*, from top to bottom, to all intents and purposes.

*De front*, abreast.

*Galamment*, genteelly, politely.

*Goutte à goutte*, by drops.

*Guère ou Guères*, (with ~~un~~ before the verb,) little, but little.

*à la hâte*, in haste.

*En haut*, } up there, up stairs, above stairs.  
*Là haut*, }

*D'heure en heure*, hourly, every hour.

*Hier*, yesterday.

*Hier-au soir*, last night.

*Avant-hier*, the day before yesterday.

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Your brother learns *easily*, but he forgets *almost*  
*as easily as he learns*. - - In the last battle our troops  
*oublier, v.*  
 fought (with the) French, all the soldiers and  
*livrer, v. aux*  
 officers did their duty *faithfully*: the enemy sur-  
*pl.*  
 rendered at discretion, and were obliged to (march  
*à de sor-*  
 out) of the country in a *file*: - - Let every one speak  
*tir, v. Que*  
 in his turn, for if you speak all *together*, how can  
*à*  
 I hear what you say? - - How many times did I tell  
*entendre, v.*  
 you to write to your parents? - - I spoke to him only  
*de père et mère?*  
 once, but I saw him *twice*. - - My father generally  
 goes to Germany *thrice* a year. - - I told it you *three*  
*Allemagne*

times. - - I saw him so many times. - - Do you go

often to London ? I go (there) now and then. - - The  
souvent,adv.

king strongly opposed <sup>y</sup> the enemy in the action.  
s'opposer à mellee,f.

- - - Your little sister is very pretty. - - - In all

that (which) they undertake they always act  
agir,v.

stoutly. - - My brother knows French thoroughly. - -  
savoir le François

They demolished the house from top to bottom. - -

I travelled in a post-chaise drawn by three horses

abreast. - - Always behave genteelly. - - Your brothers

came to see us, and we received them politely. - -

The wine runs from the hogshead by drops. - - Give  
couler,v. muid,m.

him but little wine. - - 'Never' do<sup>s</sup> things in  
Ne jamais,adv.

haste. - - Is Mr. D. above stairs ? - - Go up stairs, you

will find what you (look for) in the drawer  
chercher,v. tiroir,m.

behind the door. - - After having (waited for) him  
derrière,p. attendre,v.

hourly, he arrived at last. - - We see the army

increasing every hour. - - I went yesterday to London.  
grossir,v.

- - It rained very much last night, and it has frozen

very hard this morning. - - The day before yesterday  
très-fort

I met your brother, who was riding on horse-  
se promener,v.

back.

## ADVERBS.

*Ici*, here.

*Ici autour*, hereabouts.

*Ici près*, hard by.

*D'ici*, hence.

*D'ici en quinze jours*, within a fortnight.

*Par ici*, this way.

*Par ici par là*, here and there.

*à l'instant*, immediately, instantly.

*Jamais*, ever.

*Ne jamais*, never.

*à jamais*, for ever.

*Justement*, just, precisely.

*Jusqu'à quand ?* how long ?

*Jusqu'ici*, hitherto, as far as this.

*Jusque-là*, so far, as far as that.

*Jusqu'où ?* how far ?

*De jour*, in the day time.

*De jour à autre,* } from day to day, daily.

*De jour en jour,* }

*De deux en deux jours,* }

*De deux jours l'un,* } every other day.

*Tous les deux jours,* }

*Dans quinze jours*, in a fortnight.

## EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Did I not tell you to stay *here* ? - - How  
*de*  
many miles is it *hence* to Hampton-Court ? - -

(There must) be (a great deal) of game *here*-  
*Il doit, v. imp.* *gibier, m.*

abouts. - - How long has he lived *hard by* ? - - How  
*demeurer, v.*

far is it *hence* to Canterbury ? - - I will (call upon) *your*  
*Cantorbéry* *passer chez*  
brother *within a fortnight*. - - Come *this way*. - - *Your*

books are scattered *here and there*. - - Come back  
*épars,adj.*  
*immediately*. - - They *instantly* invited him to dine  
*à*  
 with them. - - I do not believe that he *ever* will follow  
 (by the subj.)  
 your advice. - - My father *never* will see him again.  
*conseil,m.*  
 - - Great men will *for ever* be celebrated in history.  
 - - (This is) *just* what I say. - - *How long*, O  
*Voilà,adv.*  
 Catiline, will you abuse our patience? - - -  
*Catalina abuser,v.de*  
*Hitherto* the enemy has done nothing considerable.  
*de*  
 - - Learn this piece of poetry *as far as that*. - -  
*poésie*  
*How far* will you go? - - You always come to see me  
*en*  
 by night, why do not you come in the *day-time*? - -  
*de*  
 We expect *from day to day* to receive news from  
*de*  
 the Continent. - - We are *daily* exposed to great  
*m.*  
 dangers. - - My master comes here *every other day*.  
 - - I shall go to France and Italy in a *fortnight*.

## ADVERBS.

*Là*, there, thither.  
*Là autour*, thereabouts.  
*Là bas*, yonder.  
*De là*, }  
*En de là*, } thence.  
*Par là*, that way.  
*Loin*, far.  
*De loin*, afar off, at a distance.

*Long-temps*, a long while, long time.

*Lors*, then, at the time.

*Alors*,  
*Pour lors*, } then.

*Dès-lors*, from that time.

*Mal*, ill, wrong.

*Maintenant*, now.

*Médiocrement*, indifferently.

*Même*, even, yet.

*De même*, so, in the same manner.

*Mieux*, better.

*De mieux en mieux*, better and better.

*Moins*, less.

*Moins—Moins*, the less—the less.

*à moins*, for less, at less.

*Au moins*, *du moins*, } at least, at the least.

*Tout au moins*,

*En moins de rien*, in a trice.

*Naïvement*, plainly, ingenuously.

*Naturellement*, naturally, by nature.

*au Naturel*, to the life.

*Ne ni, ni*, neither—nor.

*Non pas, ne pas, ne point, non*, no, not.\*

*De nuit*, by night, in the night-time.

*Obligamment*, kindly, obligingly.

*Où*, where.

## OBSERVATION ON THE ADVERB *Où*.

The adverb of place, *Où*, where, is most commonly and more elegantly turned into French by *que* after the two other adverbs *ici*, here, *là*, there, to prevent the hiatus caused by the meeting of the two vowels; and sometimes after nouns expressing the place where something has happened, been done or committed, especially when

\* *Pas*, with the negation *ne* before it, merely expresses a negative, without affirming it, whereas *point* denies and affirms at once. *Par* often denies but partly, or with some modification; *point*, on the contrary, always denies absolutely, totally, and without any reserve.



the sentence begins with the verb *être*, to be, used impersonally, as, *it is, it was, it will be, &c.* : ex.

<i>C'est ici que nous l'attendons,</i>	It is here (where) we are waiting for him.
<i>Ce fut là que je le vis pour la première fois,</i>	It was there (where) I saw him for the first time.
<i>Ce fut en plein sénat que César fut inhumainement assassiné,</i>	It was in full senate (where, or in which) Cæsar was inhumanly murdered.

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

It was *there* or *thereabouts* that I met him. - - Do  
*Ce* you see that tree *yonder*.<sup>2</sup> - - *Thence* I went to France,  
 and soon after to Germany. - - If you go *that way*  
*après, p.* you may call at Mr. H's. - - We are yet *far* from  
*pouvoir, v. passer chez* our house. - - I see many ships *afar off*. - - I saw him  
*yesterday*, but it was *at a distance*. - - You made me  
 wait *a long while*. - - The fight lasted *a long*  
*combat, m.* *time*. - - He was ill *at the time* of my arrival. - - *Then*,  
 I believe you. - - *From that time* I began to  
*commencer, v.* speak to him. - - Does your son behave ill *now* ? - -  
 When I do wrong, I repent *very soon*. - - They are  
*tort* *bientôt, adv.* *now* in England. - - The tree that I planted grows  
*indifferently*. - - Virtue is amiable *even* in an enemy.

You blame him, and nevertheless you act *in the*  
*agir, v.*  
*same manner.* - - You work *better* than your sister. - -  
 She reads French *better and better.* - - My cousin  
*le*  
 has *less* money and merit. - - *The less* you work  
 (by the fut.)  
*the less* you will improve. - - - He will not do  
*faire des progrès.*  
*it for less.* - - There are now in America 30,000 men  
*at the least.* - - If you cannot come, *at least* write  
 to us. - - He replied *plainly* to all my questions, and  
 I am much pleased with him. - - What he does, he  
*bien satisfait de, p.*  
 does it *naturally.* - - Miss Nichol's picture is  
*portrait, m.*  
 drawn *to the life.* - - I will *neither* see him nor  
*fait, p. p.*  
 speak to him. - - My mother and sisters (were to) go  
*devoir, v.*  
 next week to France, but my father says, that he  
*neither can nor will* expose them to the dangers of  
*vouloir, v.*  
 a journey through a distant country. - - I (asked  
*dans éloigné de-*  
 for) a glass of wine, and *not* a glass of water.  
*mander, v.*  
 - - Will you come with me? No, for you always  
*car, c.*  
 travel *by night.* - - Always speak *kindly.* - - *Where* did  
 you meet them? - - It was *where* I saw your brother  
 for the last time. - - - It was at Caernarvon *where*

Edward the Second (was born,) the first who bore the  
*Edouard* *naître, v.*  
 title of Prince of Wales. - - It was near the walls of  
*Galles, f.* *muraille*  
 Corunna in Spain, *where* (or near *which*) the brave  
*la Corogne*  
 Sir John Moore was wounded, and died a  
*chevalier, m.* *Jean*  
 few hours after; England will long regret the loss  
 of that great general. It was there also *where* that<sup>a</sup>  
 famous<sup>3</sup> battle<sup>4</sup> (was fought<sup>1</sup>) (in *which*) both our  
*se donner, v.* *où* *on*  
 officers and soldiers showed so much courage. - - It is  
 not amidst the pleasures of this world *where* (or *amidst*  
*parmi, p.*  
*which*) we find happiness; it is in the bosom of inno-  
*sein, m.*  
 cence and peace *where* (or in *which*) we ought to  
 (look for) it. - - It is in the county of Huntingdon  
*chercher, v.* *province, f.*  
*where* the best cheeses in the kingdom are made.\*

## ADVERBS.

*D'où ?* whence ?

*Par où,* through what place ? which way ? through  
 which ?

*Oui,* yes.

*D'outre en outre,* through.

*Pas à pas,* step by step.

*De part et d'autre,* on both sides.

*Nulle part,* no-where, any-where.

*à peine,* hardly, scarcely.

*Pêle-mêle,* helter-skelter.

\* See rules, page 337.

*Peut-être*, may be, perhaps.

*Peu*, little.

*Peu à peu*, by little and little, by degrees.

*à peu près*,  
*à peu de chose, près*, } almost, very near, thereabouts.

*Dans peu*, in a short time.

*Depuis peu*, lately, not long ago, a little while ago.

*à pied*, on foot.

*Pieds nus*, barefoot, barefooted.

*Au pis aller*, let the worst come to the worst.

*De pis en pis*, worse and worse.

*De plein gré*, with a good will, freely.

*De plein pied*, on the same floor.

*à pleines mains*, largely.

*Plus*, more, above.

*Plus—Plus*, the more—the more.

*Plus qu'il n'en faut*, more than enough.

*Au plus, tout au plus*, at the most.

*De plus en plus*, more and more.

*à plus forte raison*, much rather, much more so.

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

Did my brothers tell you *whence* they came? - -

*Which way* are they gone? - - The hole *through*

*which* they (made their escape) was so small, that I  
*s'échapper, v.*

do not know how they could (get out). - - Do you know  
*sortir, v.*

your lesson? Yes, Sir. - - The barrel is pierced  
*baril, m.*

*through*. - - I will follow you *step by step*. - - -

The battle was cruel and bloody, and  
*combat, m.* *sanglant, adj.*

kept up (a long time) with an equal advantage  
*se maintenir, v.*

*on both sides*. - - I can find my book *no-where*. - - -

(There is no) going *any-where* in winter. - - He speaks  
so low, that I can *hardly* hear <sup>en</sup> what he says. - - - The

Spaniards pursued them so closely that they  
*Espagnol,m.* *de si près,adv.*  
entered the town *heller-skelter*. - - - I shall see you  
*dans*  
*perhaps* to-morrow. - - He has *little* money. - - If you

give me a verb, I will learn it *by little and little*. - -

She is as tall as you, or *thereabouts*. - - I heard that  
your sister will (be married) *in a short time*. - - Have  
*se marier*

you (heard from) your mother *lately*? - - I received a  
letter from her *not long ago*. - - I was *on foot*, and  
he was in a coach. - - I often pity the poor little

chimney <sup>ou</sup> sweepers, who walk *barefooted* in  
*cheminée ramoneur,m.*  
winter - - - *Let the worst come to the worst*, I will

(get rid) of it. - - - Your brother writes *worse*  
*se défaire,v.*

*and worse*. - - He submitted to it *with a good will*. - -  
*se soumettre*

All our rooms are *on the same floor*. - - He is so cha-  
ritable, that he gives alms *largely*. - - I shall

*never more* complain of the rude *reception*  
*aumône,f.sing.* *malhonnête,adj.* *accueil,m.*  
which your uncle has given to my father. - - - I have  
*fait,p.p.*

written three letters, neither *more* nor *less*. - - You  
are *above* twenty years old. - - - *The more* we are  
*plus de*

above others, *the more* it becomes us to be  
*au dessus de, p.* modest and humble.\* - - - You give me *more than*  
*de* enough. - - How many coats have you? - - I have six  
*at the most.* - - I shall endeavour to deserve your kind-  
 ness *more and more.* - - If I have done that to ob-  
 lige my friend, I would *much more so* do it for my  
*pour, p.* relations.  
*parent, m.*

## ADVERBS.

*Plûtôt,* sooner.

*Point du tout,* not at all.

*à point nommé* seasonably.

*Tout à point,* in the nick of time.

*à propos,* seasonably.

*Pourquoi ? or que ne ?* why ?

*De près,* near, nearly, narrowly.

*Premièrement,* } first, in the first place.  
*En premier lieu,* }

*Dès à présent,* from this moment.

*Presque,* almost, hardly.

*Presque jamais,* hardly ever, (with *ne* before the verb.)

*Presque toujours,* most commonly.

*De propos délibéré,* on purpose, purposely, deliberately.

*Par cas fortuit,* by chance, accidentally.

*Par derrière,* behind.

*Par dessus le marché,* into or over the bargain.

*Par en bas,* downward.

*Par en haut,* upward.

*Par malice,* through ill-nature, out of ill-nature.

*Par mégarde,* unawares.

*Par terre,* upon the ground, down.

\* See the rule page 63.

## EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

My father arrived yesterday *sooner* than we expected him. - - - Do you like that book? *Not at all*. - - - You come very *seasonably*, and your brother came in the *nick of time*. - - He speaks *little*, but he speaks *seasonably*. - - - Why do you not learn your lessons better? - - Why do not you come yourself? - - Your dog is so snarling, that (there is no) approaching him *near*. - - - He *narrowly* escaped being killed. - - - In the *first place*, I must tell you, that I shall punish you, if you do not behave better. - - From this moment I begin to believe that you are altered. - - You are almost as tall as I am. - - He is *hardly ever* at home. - - We dine most commonly between three and four o'clock. - - They killed him *purposely*. - - I met him *by chance*. - - That has happened *accidentally*. - - He struck his enemy *behind*. - - - He gave me three yards of muslin into the bargain. - - Shall I begin downward or upward? - - - Begin *downward*. - - He has torn my book through *ill-nature*. - - If I have

done him any harm, certainly I did it *unawares*. - -  
*du*

I always find your books and hat *upon the ground*.

- - It was Peter who threw me *down*.  
*jeter, v.*

## ADVERBS.

*Quand?* when?

*Depuis quand?* how long is it since?

*Que?* why? how?

*Quelquefois*, sometimes.

*à quoi bon?* to what purpose?

*Rarement*, seldom.

*Au reste,* } as to the rest.

*Du reste,* }

*à rebours*, the wrong way.

*à reculons*, backward.

*à la renverse*, backward, upon one's back.

*Au or à rez de chaussée*, even with the ground.

*Sens devant derrière*, preposterously.

*Sens dessus dessous*, topsy-turvy.

*De tous sens,* } every way.

*De tous les sens,* }

*Séparément*, separately.

*Seulement*, only.\*

*De sang froid*, in cold blood.

*De suite*, together, one after another.

*Dans la suite,* } afterward.

*Par la suite,* }

*Sur le champ*, directly, upon the spot.

*Sûrement*, safely.

### EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.

*When* shall I have the pleasure of seeing you? - -

*How long* is it since you lived in London? - - *Why* do  
*à*

\* *Only* is often also expressed, in French, by *ne* before the verb  
 -- *que* after it, then it becomes a conjunction.



you not come to see us *sometimes*? - - To *what* pur-  
 pose shall I write to him? - - He writes to me very  
*seldom*. - - As to the rest, do as you please. - - You  
 do (every thing) the wrong way. - - You hold your  
 book the wrong way. - - He fell upon his back. - - -  
 If you walk backward, you will fall backward. - - Our  
 eating-room is even with the ground. - - You put all  
 your things *preposterously*. - - She has left (every  
 thing) *topsy-turvy*. - - - You may find it every-  
 where. - - He defeated them *separately*. - - I only saw  
 him once. - - He committed the murder in cold  
 blood. - - They go together. - - He will give you much  
 pleasure afterward. - - Do directly what I bid  
 you. - - We arrived *safely*.

### ADVERBS.

*Tant*, so much, so many.

*Tant mieux*, so much the better.

*Tant pis*, so much the worse.

*Tantôt*, by and by, sometimes.

*Tantôt—Tantôt*, sometimes—sometimes.

*Tôt*,  
*Bientôt*, } soon, very soon.

*Tôt ou tard*, one time or other, sooner or later, soon or late.

*Tant soit peu*, very little, ever so little.

*Tard*, late.

***à temps*, time enough, in proper time.**

*De long-temps*, for a long time, this long while.

*De temps en temps,*  
*De temps à autre,* } now and then, from time to time.

**à tort, wrongfully.**

*à tort ou à droit*, right or wrong.

*à tort et à travers, at random.*

*Trop*, too much.

**Toujours, always, ever.**

*Pour toujours, for ever.*

***Tous les jours, every day.***

*Tour à tour, by turns.*

**Tout, quite, wholly, thoroughly, entirely.\***

*Tout à coup*, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

*Tout bas, softly, with a low voice.*

*Tout d'un coup*, suddenly, on a sudden, all at once.

**EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.**

He has *so much* money, and *so many* goods,  
that he does know what to do (with them.) - - -  
en,pro.

(It is) so much the better for me, but it will be so  
C'est, v. ce

*much the worse for you. -- My father will come back*  
*revenir, v.*

by and by. - - - Sometimes you write well, some-  
times you write very badly. - - My father says I shall

*soon* go to France. - - Have patience, you will succeed *one time or other*. - - The sun is the em-

blem of truth, which dispels, *sooner or later*, the  
dissiper, v.

\* This adverb takes the nature of a noun adjective, and becomes declinable, in French, when placed before another adjective feminine beginning with a consonant and an *h* mute: ex.

*Ces femmes paroissoient tout effrayées et toutes consternées,*      These women seemed quite frightened and quite dismayed.

vapours of slander. - - Did he give you any meat ?  
 He gave me *very little*. - - You arrived *late*, but I  
 came in *proper time*. - - I have not (heard from) my  
 brother *for a long time*. - - Come and see us *now and*  
*then*. - - - You accuse him *wrongfully*. - - - *Right or*  
*wrong* he will *vouloir, v.* speak, and always speaks *at*  
*random*. - - Give him a little money, but never give  
 him *too much*. - - You *always* contradict me when I  
 speak. - - O my children ! be *ever* good, and you will be  
*ever* happy. - - I bid you adieu *for ever*. - - I go *every*  
*day* to town. - - We will dance *by turns*. - - I am  
*quite* tired with repeating the same things. - - My  
*sisters* were *quite* transported with joy when they  
 heard the happy news of the victory. - - Misfortunes  
 come sometimes *suddenly* upon us. - - Speak *softly*.  
 - - - A storm arose *suddenly*, and the sailors  
 were *quite* frightened. - - The ladies I saw at the  
 play were *quite* young and happy. - - He has more  
 brilliancy than solidity. - - - Science is estimable,  
*brillant* *solide.*  
 but virtue is more *so.*  
*davantage, adv.*

## ADVERBS.

*Tout à fait, quite.*

*Tout à l'heure, this minute, presently.*

**Tout droit, straight along.**

*Tout de bon*, in good earnest.

*Tout de son long, all along.*

*Tout franc, frankly, freely.*

*Tout haut, aloud.*

*Tout oultré, through and through.*

à tout bout de champ, } at every turn.  
à tous coups,

*à tous coups,*

*à tous égards*, in all respects.

*De toutes ses forces,* with all his or her might.

*Par tout, every-where.*

*Par tout où, wherever.*

*Vîte,* } quickly.  
*Vîtement,* }

*Vêtement,*

*Vivement,*  
*Au pis.* } to the quick.

*Au vif,*

*à vide*, empty.

*Au plus vîte,* with all speed.

*Voici*, here is, behold.

*Voilà, there is, behold.*

*à vue d'œil*, perceptibly.

**Y, there, therein, within, thither.**

**EXERCISE UPON THESE ADVERBS.**

You are quite altered. - - I will do it *presently*. - -  
*changé.*

If you do not come *this minute*, I shall go and

fetch      you. - - Go *straight along*. - - Do you be-  
chercher, v.

lieve it in good earnest? - - He was lain down all  
couché, p.p.

along. - - He acts *frankly*, and speaks aloud. - - He

ran him through and through, - - She speaks  
percer, v.

at every turn, without knowing what she says. - -  
*sans, p. savoir, v.*

She is better than her sister in all respects. - - He

struck me with all his might. - - I have (looked  
*frapper, v. cher-*

for) you every-where. - - I will follow you wherever  
*cher, v.*

you go. - - - Set out quickly. - - Her misfortunes  
*(by the fut.) malheur, m.*

touch me to the quick. - - The coach was returning  
*s'en retourner, v. refl.*

empty. - - Go with all speed to Mrs. Lucas, and  
*chez, p.*

tell her to come directly. - - Here is my room, and  
*de*

there is yours. - - These children grow  
*percep-*  
*grandir, v.*

tibly. - - Go thither instantly.  
*tout de suite, adv.*

## SECT. VII.

### OF PREPOSITIONS.

Prepositions are divided into the three following classes. First, those that govern the genitive or ablative case. Secondly, those that govern the dative. And, lastly, those that govern the accusative.

First, the following govern the genitive or ablative.

*Autour de*, about, round.

*à cause de*, because of, on account of.

*à cause de vous, de lui, d'elle, de nous, &c.* on your, his, her, our, &c. account.

*à côté de*, aside, by.

*à couvert de*, free, secure, or screened from.

*à fleur de*, close to, even with.

*à moins de*, under.

*à force de,\** by dint of.

*à raison de,* at the rate of.

*à l'abri de,* sheltered from.

*à l'égal de,* in comparison of.

*à l'égard de,* with regard, with respect, as to, concerning.

*à la faveur de,* by means of.

*à l'insu de,* without the knowledge of, unknown to.

*à la manière de,* } in or after the manner or fashion of.

*à la mode de,* }

*à l'opposite de,* } over against.

*Vis à vis de,* }

*Au deçà de,* } on this side.

*En deçà de,* }

*Au delà de,* on that side, on the other side.

*Au dehors de,* out, without.

*Au dessus de,* above, over, upon.

*Au dessous de,* under, below, beneath.

*Au devant de,* before.

*Aller au devant de,* to go to meet.

*Au derrière de,* behind, in the back part.

*Au dedans de,* in, within.

*Au lieu de,* instead of.

*Au milieu de,* in the middle of.

*Au prix de, en comparaison de,* in comparison to.

*Aux environs de,* about, round about.

*Ensuite de,* after.

*Faute de,* for want of.

*à la hauteur de,* (sea term,) off.

*Hors de,* out of.

*Le long de,* along.

*Loin de,* far from.

*Près or proche de,* } near, or nigh, by.

*Auprès de,* }

*Pour l'amour de moi, de lui, d'elle, de vous, &c.* for my sake, for his, her, your sake, &c.

*Tout auprès de,* close, hard by.

*à l'épreuve de,* proof against, (able to resist.)

\* This proposition is sometimes Englished by *with* : ex.

*Il pleure à force de rire,* He cries *with* laughing.

## EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

Come this way ; we shall walk *round* the meadow. - - *prairie, f.*

I have sent nothing to your brother *because* of his idleness, but I forgive him *on* your account. - - Sit down *by*

that lady's sister. - - Endeavour to set yourself *mettre, v.*

*free* from blame. - - - We are not yet *secure* from all danger. - - - Cut that sorrel *even with the ground. oscille, f.*

- - - He is become a very good master *by dint* of study and practice. - - - He will not sell it *under vouloir, v.*

twelve guineas. - - - My brother bought yesterday twenty pair of silk stockings *at the rate* of fourteen shillings and sixpence a pair. - - - Under that tree *Sous, p.*

we shall be *sheltered* from the rain. - - - Your horse (is worth) very little *in comparison* of his. - - - *With valoir, v.*

*regard* to what you say, I do not mind it. *se soucier, v. en*

- - All the prisoners (made their escape) *by means* of *s'échapper, v.*

the darkness of the night. - - - Your brother is *obscurité, f.*

gone to London *without the knowledge* of your

mother. - - - He (left off) Latin *unknown* to his *quitter, v.*

father. - - Now the English ladies (dress themselves) *s'habiller, v.*

*after the French fashion.* - - Mrs. Tart lives *in demeurer, v.*

the Strand *over-against* Catharine-street. - - We now  
 live <sup>Cathérine</sup> *on this side* of the river. - - Do not you say that  
*demeurer*  
 you met my father *on the other side* of the bridge?  
 - - Why did you stay *out* of the house? - - Mrs. A.  
 is very proud, she (thinks herself) *above* every body,  
<sup>se croire</sup>  
 and consequently she (looks upon) every body as  
<sup>regarder, v.</sup>  
*beneath* her. - - Did you observe the elegant  
<sup>remarquer, v.</sup>  
 lady who was in the box *below* you? - - There  
<sup>loge, f.</sup>  
 is a large tree *before* the house. - - I am  
<sup>grand</sup>  
*going to meet* my aunt, will you accompany me? - -  
 My uncle has a rich plantation in the *back*  
*part* of Virginia. - - There is a fine statue *within* the  
<sup>f.</sup>  
 garden. - - He took my hat *instead of* his. - - Let us  
*go in the middle* of the meadow. - - - My house (is  
<sup>va-</sup>  
 good for) nothing in *comparison* of hers. - - He  
<sup>loir, v.</sup>  
 walks two or three times a\* day *about* the garden. - -  
<sup>fois, f.</sup>  
 We drank tea, *after* which we went to  
<sup>prendre, v.</sup> <sup>quoi, pro.</sup>  
 the play. - - I can do nothing *for want* of money. - -  
 They were *off* the Cape of Good Hope when they  
<sup>Cap, m.</sup> <sup>Espérance, f.</sup>  
 were taken. - - Do not push me *out of* the  
<sup>pousser, v.</sup>

\* Remember the observations after the article *un, une, a or an*,  
 at the bottom of page 48.



*sans, p. connoître*

*Jusqu'à,* } till, until, even to, as far as, to.  
*Jusques à,* }  
*Par rapport à,* with respect to, on account of.  
*Quant à,* as for, as to.

**A candid and sincere man always speaks and acts**

**parlement, m.**

\* See rule, page 44.

They fought with obstinacy on both sides until the  
*des deux*  
 beginning of the night. - - If I had not stopped him,  
*entrée, f.*  
 he would have gone even to Dover. - - We accompa-  
*être*  
 nied them as far as Rochester, and they pursued  
 their way to Canterbury. - - I will do it with respect  
*chemin*  
 to you, but never on account of them. - - As for me  
 I will not give him a penny. - - As for us we were  
*sou, m.*  
 (very much) dissatisfied, I assure you. - - As to what  
*très*  
 people may say, I do not (care for) it.  
*gens, pl. pouvoir, v. (fut.) se soucier de, v.*

Thirdly, the following require the accusative.

*Après*, after.

*D'après*, after, \* according to.

*Avant*, before.

*Avec*, with.

*à travers*, cross, through.

*Chez*, in, to, at, among.

*Chez moi, chez toi, chez lui, chez elle, chez nous, &c.* at or  
 to my, thy, his, her, our, &c. house.

*Contre*, against.

*Dans*, in, into, within.

*De*, about, through.

*Depuis*, since, from.

*Derrière*, behind.

*Dès*, from.

*Devant*, before.

*De dessus*, from the top.

*De dessous*, from under, from beneath.

*Durant*, during.

\* We make use of this preposition in the sense of *after* in the fol-  
 lowing diction and others similar :

*Peint d'après un bon maître,* He paints after a good master.

*En, in, into, like, as a, at.*

*Entre, between.*

*Envers, towards, with regard to.*

*Environ, about.*

*Excepté, }  
Hors, } except, but, save.  
Hormis, }*

*Moyennant, for, provided.*

*Nonobstant, }  
Malgré, } notwithstanding, in spite of.*

*Outre, beside.*

*Par, by, through.*

*Par deçà, on this side.*

*Par delà, on that side.*

*Par derrière, behind.*

*Par dessus, above, over.*

*Par dessous, under, below.*

*Parmi, among.*

*Pendant, during, for.*

*Pour, for.*

*Sans, without.*

*Sauf, saving, but with.*

*Selon, }  
Suivant, } according to.*

*Sous, under.*

*Sur, upon, about.*

*Touchant, concerning, about.*

*Vers, towards, to.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

He arrived here an hour *after* you. - - Miss A.

paints *after* nature. - - *According to* her assertion, it

is false. - - Let me drink *before* you. - - Did you

*Laisser, v.*

not see her walk *with* her father? - - - It was

the ancient Britons, who cut a road *Ce* *through*  
*Breton,* *chemin, m.*

this mountain. - - - Such was the custom *among* the

Romans. - - I was going *to your house* : but as I have met you, we will go *to my house*, where we shall dine.

- - Do not lean *against* that wall. - - Go and  
*s'appuyer, v.* *mur, m.*

take a walk *in* the garden. - - I am going *into* my  
*faire un tour*

room. - - (Keep yourself) *within* the limits of de-  
*Se tenir, v.* *borne*

cency. - - I spoke to your father *about* your affairs. - -

His father died *through* grief. - - I have not (heard from) her *since* her departure. - - Go into my room ;

you will find a letter *behind* the looking-glass ;  
*miroir, m.*

(be so kind as) to bring it to me. - - *From* this mo-  
*avoir la bonté de*

ment I believe you. - - Do not put yourself *before*

me. - - We saw the camp *from the top of* the hill. - -

I saw it *from under* a tree. - - He behaved well *during*

your absence. - - My sister is *in* England. - - He be-

haved *like an* honest man in that affair. - - He acts *as*

a tender father who loves you. - - Tell nobody what

passed *between* you and me. - - Be not unjust *towards*  
*se passer*

your neighbours. - - It was *about* four o'clock when  
*prochain, m. sing.*

we (set out.) - - Take all that you please *except* my  
*vouloir, (fut.)*

sword. - - I give you all my books, *but* the History of

France. - - They were all drowned *sans* my friend. - -  
*noyer, v.*

He will do it *for* two guineas. - - I walk every day  
*notwithstanding* the bad weather. - - I hope you will  
 succeed in your undertaking *in spite of* Mrs. Slander.  
*réussir*

- - *Beside* his own money, he spends all his sister's.

- - It is said that Gibraltar is (blocked up) *by* land  
*bloquer, v.*

and *by* sea. - - I have passed *through* France and

Italy. - - We have passed *through* Germany. - - He  
*Allemagne.*

lives *on this side*, and his brother *on that side* of

London. - - \*He is a coward who attacks his enemy

*behind*. - - Let us see whether you can jump *over*  
*si, c.* *sauter, v.*

the table. - - Look *under* the door, and you will see

it. - - Envy, jealousy, and slander, always reign  
*médiance, f.*

*among* authors. - - What have you done *during* my ab-

sence? - - I have (been expecting) you *for* a long time.

- - Your aunt has sent me some books *for* you. - - -

*Without* him what could I have done? - - A woman may  
*pourvoir*

please *without* beauty, but she cannot succeed *without*

virtue.† - - He always (goes out) *without* me. - - The

army marched three days and three nights *without*

stopping. - - He (carried away) all my furniture, *saving*  
*s'arrêter.* *meubles, m. pl.*

\* See page 106.

† Use no article.

my bed. - - Do I not live\* according to the rules  
 which you have prescribed? - - I found your buckle *règle, f.*  
*prescrire, v.* under the chair. - - You said you had left it upon *boucle, f.*  
*chaise, f.* the table. - - How could I lend you a guinea? I had no  
*laisser, v.* money about me. - - Did not my brother write to you  
 concerning that affair? - - It was towards the evening  
*Ce* when he arrived.  
*que, c.*

### OBSERVATIONS ON SOME PREPOSITIONS.

*Above.* This preposition, when preceding a noun expressing time or number, so as to signify more than or longer than, is to be rendered in French by *plus de*: ex.

*Le combat dura plus de deux heures,* The fight lasted above two hours.

### EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

My brother was not above twenty years old, when  
 he (was married). - - He made us wait above a week. - -  
*se marier.* My father's country-house is very handsome, but it  
 costs him above six thousand pounds. - - In the last  
 sea-fight which took place between the French and  
*avoir lieu* the English, above twelve hundred men perished in  
 the action (on the) side of the French, and the  
*du*

\* See the N. B. before the Exercises upon the first Conjugation, page 178. *Vivre*, means, to live, to exist, *Demeurer*, means, to live, reside.

English took *above* fifteen ships of the line. - - It is

above a year since my cousin set off for Jamaica.  
que partir, v. Jamaïque, f.

*À* is most commonly rendered by *à*, and sometimes by one of the French articles *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*, according to the gender and number of the noun following : **ex.**

*Nous étions à diner,*

**We were at dinner.**

**Elle est à la maison.**

**She is at home.**

**Il joue bien aux cartes,**

**He plays well at cards.**

**EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.**

**If you be *at Rome*, live as they do *at Rome*. - -**

**vivre on,**

We will (get up) next week at six o'clock. - - When I  
se lever

called upon Mr. B. he was at breakfast. - - (Every  
passer chez

thing) I have is at your service. - - My brother is at

**Mr. H's. academy. - - Were you at Mrs. C's. ball last**

**week? - - You always travel by night at the peril of**

**your life. - - I will pay you *at* the end of the year. - -**

**My mother is at the height of happiness. - - He plays  
comble.m.**

very well at chess, and his companion begins  
échecs, m. pl.

to play a little at draughts. - - He did it at the insti-  
dames, f. pl.

gation of his friend.

After nouns or verbs denoting anger, derision, joy, provocation, resentment, sorrow, surprise, or concern, *at* is rendered by one of the following articles, *de, du, de la, de l', des*: ex.





## EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITIONS.

I called upon Miss Brown this morning, as I had  
*passer chez*  
 promised your mother, but she was not at home. - -  
*à*  
 Where was she then? She was at her aunt's. - - I  
*done ?*  
 thought my friend was at his father's, but I mistook,  
*se tromper*  
 for he was at his uncle's. - - How long have you been  
*car*  
 at Mr. H's. ? - - We lodge at my friend's, but we board  
*manger*  
 at the pastry-cook's. - - If you go to my brother, tell  
 him to come to my cousin's, where I (am to) spend  
*de*  
 the day, and we will go together to his friend's. *passer, v.*

*By*, when preceding a numeral adjective immediately followed by another adjective expressing the *dimension* or *superficies* of an object, is rendered in French by *sur*, and when it precedes a verb in the participle active, it is then rendered by *en* : ex.

<i>Cette chambre a dix pieds</i>	This room is ten feet
<i>de longueur sur sept et</i>	long by seven and half
<i>demi de largeur,</i>	wide.
<i>En agissant ainsi, vous</i>	By acting thus, you will
<i>vous ferez des ennemis,</i>	get enemies.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

My box is a foot and a half deep by two wide and four long. - - The general (drew up) his army in order  
*ranger, v.*  
 of battle, on a plain three miles long by two *en*

and half wide. - - - Our (school-room) at Alfred  
*école, f.*  
 House, Camberwell, is forty feet long by  
 thirty-six wide, and our garden contains above  
 an acre of land. - - You will soon speak French  
*arpent, m.*  
 by applying so. - - Your father gets a considerable  
*s'appliquer faire, v.*  
 fortune by buying cheap and selling dear. - - Men  
 acquire learning by working and not by sleeping. - -  
 Water hollows a stone, not by falling with force,  
*creuser, v.*  
 but by falling often; so men become learned, not  
 by studying with force, but by studying often.

By, after the verbs *to sell, to buy, to work*, and the like, preceding a noun of *weight or measure, day, week, month, or year*, is rendered into French by *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, according to the gender and number of the following noun: ex.

<i>Je ne vends rien à la</i>	<i>I sell nothing by the</i>
<i>livre,</i>	<i>pound.</i>
<i>Il achète toujours à l'aune,</i>	<i>He always buys by the ell.</i>
<i>Nous travaillons à l'heure,</i>	<i>We work by the hour, or</i>
<i>ou à la journée,</i>	<i>by the day.</i>

#### EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Always buy tea by the pound, and never by the ounce, you will get it cheaper. - - I never buy my  
*avoir*  
 cloth by the ell, but by the piece. - - It is a sad thing to buy coals by the bushel. - - How do you sell your  
*de*  
 brandy? We sell it by the gallon, and not by the

bottle. - - He sells his wine by the dozen. - - - I sell  
eggs by the hundred, and chestnuts by the quarter.

- - How do you measure your cambric? by the ell,  
*basiste, m.*  
or by the yard? - - Do you buy cider by the hogshead,  
*tonneau, m.*  
or by the pipe? - - Does your father work by the  
week or the month? - - No, Sir, he works by the year.

Well! I always thought he worked by the piece.

By, immediately following the verbs *to kill, to wound, to knock down*, and the like, is made into French, by *d'un coup de*, when it expresses the effect, blow, thrust, stroke, firing, &c. of an instrument by which a man was either killed, wounded, &c. provided the blows have not been repeated: if the blows have been repeated, we make use of *à coups de*, in which case it is most commonly rendered in English by *with*: ex.

*Il fut blessé d'un coup de* He was wounded by an  
*flèche,* arrow.  
*Ils l'assommèrent à coups* They knocked him down  
*de bâton,* with a stick.

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE PREPOSITIONS.

Achilles was killed (at the) siege of Troy by an  
*Achille* *au* *Troie*  
arrow, which Paris, king Priam's son, (let fly)  
*décocher, v.*  
at his heel.\* - - (Unable to) catch the thief,  
*talon, m.* *Ne pouvoir attraper, v.*  
they knocked<sup>s</sup> him<sup>t</sup> down<sup>s</sup> with sticks. - - - At last  
*Enfin, adv.*  
the king, having broke his battle-axe and sword  
*hâche-d'armes, f.*

\* See rules, pages 101 and 401.

was (knocked down) *by* a stone, and taken prisoner.  
*renversé, p.p.* *fait, p.p.*

- - - William the Second was killed *by* an arrow in the

New-Forest. - - - My brother was wounded *by* a gun,  
*fusil, m.*

and my cousin was killed *by* a cannon-ball. - - Edward  
*boulet de canon, m.*

the First was wounded in Palestine *with* a poisoned  
*f.*

dagger. - - - He is so strong, that *with* his fist he  
*poignard, m.*

could knock down an ox. - - - He threw my brother

down, and almost killed him *with* his feet. - -  
*par terre,*

They killed him not *with* stones, but *with* arrows. - -

The soldiers kill one another *with* bayonets, and the  
*se tuer*

officers *with* sabres and swords. - - He killed his dog

*with* kicks. - - The city of Vera Cruz has been destroy-

ed *by* cannon-shot.

For, after *reflected verbs*, as also those which denote  
*thanksgiving, &c.* is rendered by one of the following  
 articles, *de, du, de la, de l', des* : ex.

<p><i>Je me réjouis du service</i>  <i>qu'il vous a rendu, et je</i>  <i>l'en remercierai demain,</i></p>	<p>I rejoice <i>for</i> the service          which he has done to          you, and will thank him          to-morrow <i>for</i> it.</p>
---	--

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

I am very grateful *for* all the kindness  
*reconnoissant, adj.* *bonté, f.*  
 you have had for me. - - He is very sorry *for* the

grief he has caused you. - - When we have reached <sup>atteindre, v.</sup>  
 the age of reason, we are often sorry; but too late,  
 for the time we lost when we were young. - - My  
 brother desired me to thank you <sup>de</sup> for the part you  
 took in his troubles. - - Every one leaped <sup>peine, f.</sup> for joy,  
 when the happy news of peace arrived. - - A child  
 who cares <sup>se soucier, v.</sup> little for the author of his life,  
 is an unnatural being. - - An ungrateful son will be <sup>jours, m. pl.</sup>  
 punished (one time or other) <sup>dénaturé, adj.</sup> for his ingratitude.

*From*, preceding the name of a man or woman, or one of the *personal*, *possessive*, *relative*, or *interrogative*, pronouns, after the verbs *to go*, *to come*, *to send*, &c. is generally rendered in French by *de la part de*, or *de ma*, *de sa*, *de notre part*, *de votre part*, &c.: *ex.*

*Allez, de ma part chez* Go from me to Mr. D.

*Mons. D.*

*Je viens de sa part,*

*I come from him or her.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

Go from me to Miss Dunkin's and tell her I shall  
 be glad to see her: no, stop a little, tell her that <sup>lui</sup>  
<sup>de</sup> you come from my cousin, who has something very  
 pretty to show her. - - *From* whom do you come?  
 "said she" to me". - - Madame, replied I to her, I come  
 from my parents, <sup>répliquer, v.</sup> who sent me. - - Well, answered  
<sup>père et mère</sup>

she, any one is always welcome, who comes from them. - - Send from me to Mr. Lucas, and let him know that I am (very much) vexed at the letter I received from him; I never could have expected to receive such an affront from an old acquaintance.

*faire*  
*très de*  
*s'attendre, v.*  
*connoissance, f.*

*In* requires some attention from the learner, who is to observe that *dans* is followed by the article, a pronoun, or any word which may define the noun, when, on the contrary, *en* seldom admits of the article, whether expressed in English or not : ex.

*Il est dans la maison,*  
*Elle est en Angleterre,*

He is in the house.  
She is in England.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

He always keeps himself (shut up) in his room. - -  
Take all the linen which I shall want in our journey, and put it into my box. - - Walk\* into the parlour.  
- - We live in the county of Surrey. - - Is there a good fire in the room ? - - Ovid, one of the finest poets of the Augustan age, expired in the seventeenth year of our Lord, at Tomi, near Varna. - - Is your sister in France ? - - No, madam, she is in

\* To walk or step into is translated by *entrer* followed by *dans* in French ; but to walk or take a walk is *se promener*.

Spain. - - How long do you intend to stay in town? - -

Sir, do you keep house? - - No, we live in

(ready furnished) lodgings. - - When we are in  
*garni,adj. chambre,f. on*

peace, people talk of war; and when in war, they

talk of peace. - - Your eldest son behaved (*like a*)  
*on en*

hero. - - If my son behave *like an* honest man, I shall

act towards him *as a* tender father. - - In what does

human happiness consist? - - If you wish to be happy

and esteemed in this world, live *like a* man of

honour and probity. - - He walks in the garden with

his friend. - - He is gone to spend the winter in

Italy. - - The American<sup>3</sup> navy<sup>2</sup> officers<sup>1</sup> have acted  
*marine*

*like* heroes.

*In*, after words denoting *pain, hurting, or wounding*, and preceding one of the possessive pronouns in conjunction with any part of the body, is to be rendered by one of the following articles, *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, and the possessive pronoun left out; and when *in* precedes a noun denoting a part of time, it is not to be expressed in French: ex.

*Il étoit blessé au bras et non à la jambe,* He was wounded in his arm, and not in his leg.

*Vous le trouverez toujours chez lui le matin,* You will always find him at home in the morning.

## EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

My brother has constantly (a pain) in his head, and I have very often a pain in my teeth. - - Never eat any fruit which is not ripe, for there is nothing more apt to give you a pain in your stomach. - - My companion, by jumping over a form, (fell down), and was much hurt in the shoulder. - - Your brother was wounded in the arm, but not dangerously, and my cousin was mortally wounded in the head. - - My master comes generally in the morning. - - I will call upon you in the afternoon, and in the evening go to the play.

*On or upon.* This preposition is rendered by *de* after the verbs *to depend*, *to live*, *to subsist*, and the like; and by one of the following articles, *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, *des*, after the verb *to play*, preceding the name of an instrument: and before the days of the week and the names of the month, preceded by a numeral adjective the above preposition must not be expressed: ex.

*Il vit de pain et d'eau,*

He lives on bread and water.

*Vous jouez du violon, et il joue de la flûte,*

You play on the violin, and he plays on the flute.

*Cela arriva le dix-huit du mois dernier,*

That happened on the eighteenth of last month.



## EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

We all depend *upon* divine mercy. - - A *miséricorde, f.*  
 good end generally depends *on* a good beginning. - -  
 Men do not live only *on* bread and meat, but *on* the  
 grace of God. - - Birds subsist *upon* what they can  
 catch. - - What do you live *upon*, you who never eat  
 any meat? - - In winter I live *on* milk and vegetables,  
 and in summer I live *upon* bread and butter, cheese, and  
 all sorts of fruits. - - *Upon* what instrument does your  
 sister play? - - She plays very well *on* the harpsichord,  
 and she is now learning to play *on* the harp. - - Come  
 on Friday early, and I will go to see you *on* the Saturday  
 following. - - Why did you not play *on* the violin *on*  
 Wednesday last? - - *On* June the eighth, 1376, died  
 Edward, prince of Wales, the delight of the  
 nation, in the forty-sixth year of his age. (in the pl.) - - *On* the  
 third of June, 1664, the English obtained a great victo-  
 ry over the Dutch *sur*. *remporter, v.* off Harwich, took eighteen  
*Hollandois, m.* ships, and destroyed fourteen more.

*Over.* This preposition is commonly rendered in French by *sur*; but it must be rendered by the participle passive of the verbs *finir*, *passer*, *achever*, when it denotes an action ended; *ex.*

**Il a l'avantage sur tous,**

**He has the advantage  
over you.**

*Votre frère partit dès que  
la pluie fut passée,*

Your brother set out as soon as the rain was over.

### ***Le dîner est-il fini ?***

**Is dinner over?**

**EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.**

**A coach passed over his body and killed him. . .**

**Tollia, Tarquinius' wife, the unnatural daughter**  
*Tarquin dénaturé,adj.*

**Tarquin**

**dénaturé, adj.**

of Servius, king of Rome, ordered her coachman  
*ordonner à*

to drive over the dead body of her father. - In  
de passer, v.

going to London, did you go over Westminster  
passer, v.

bridge? - - Yes, but in coming back I passed <sup>past</sup> over

**Blackfriars bridge. - - They dissolved the army  
dispenser, v.**

as soon as it was resolved that the campaign was

over. - In France they drink coffee as soon as  
on prendre le

dinner is over. - - You may go and walk when  
(by the fut.)

the rain is <sup>(by the fut.)</sup> over. - - They fought well, and the

**battle was soon over.**

*With* is rendered by *dans*, when it is used before nouns denoting the purpose, design, or motive of the agent : ex.

*Il le fit dans l'attente d'être  
bien récompensé,*

He did it *with* an expectation of being well rewarded.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

He poisoned his brother *with* the hope of inheriting his estates. - - My brother is gone to your house *with* the design of scolding you well. - - He who beats another *with* the intention of killing him, is a murderer (at the) bottom of his heart. - - He did it *with* the intention of pleasing you, and not *with* any design of hurting you. - - I went last week to Mr. Olympus, *with* the expectation of receiving the money which I lent him a month ago, but he was not at home. - - I live *with* the hope of receiving it (one time or another). - - He said so *with* a design of deceiving you, if he could.

*With* must be made by *de* after the following verbs, to starve, to die, to do, to dispense, to meddle, to encompass, to load, to cover, to strike, and those denoting fulness : likewise after the following adjectives, amorous, charmed, pleased, displeased, endowed, &c. ex.

Elle meurt de froid et de faim,	She dies with cold and hunger.
Je suis content de ce que j'ai,	I am pleased with what I have.

## EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

Lazy people (ought to) die *with* hunger and  
*devoir, v.*  
 cold. - - The winter was so severe, that I was dying  
*with* cold. - - They are so rich, that they do not know  
 what to do *with* their money. - - I hope you will dis-  
*que* *in*  
 pense me *with* that disagreeable (piece of work).  
*besogne, f.*  
 - - Do not meddle *with* my affairs, meddle *with* your  
 own. - It is reported on all sides that that city (is to) be  
 encompassed *with* walls. - - Do you see that waggon?  
*chariot, m.*  
 It is loaded *with* goods. - - Do you wish your house  
*que*  
 be covered *with* slates or tiles? - He was overwhelmed  
*soit, v.* *tuile, f.* *accablé, adj.*  
*with* grief. - - The enemy, struck *with* terror and  
 astonishment, ran away. - - Honour me *with* your  
 commands. - - I have filled my cellar *with* good beer  
 and excellent wine. - - Narcissus, seeing himself in a  
*Narcisse*  
 clear fountain, fell (in love) *with* his own  
*devenir, v. amoureux, adj.*  
 person. - - I am charmed *with* the agreeable company  
 of your sister. - - As to us, little satisfied *with* his  
 answers, we took other measures. - - Are you not

pleased *with* the behaviour of your son Thomas ? - -  
*satisfait, p.p.*

You would be wrong to be dissatisfied *with*  
*avoir tort, de mécontent, adj.*  
 him, for he behaved (like an) honest man in  
*se conduire, v. en*  
 that affair, and he is endowed *with* many good  
*doué, adj.*  
 qualities. - - The man who meddles *with* nobody's  
 affairs, but quietly lives in peace, seldom makes  
 himself enemies.

*With* is rendered by *contre* after words denoting  
 anger or passion : and before nouns denoting the  
 matter, instruments, tools, or expressing how and in  
 what manner a thing is done or made, it is rendered by  
 one of the following articles, *à, au, à la, à l', aux*, ac-  
 cording to the gender and number of the following  
 noun : ex.

<i>Madame votre mère est très-</i>	Your mother is very angry
<i>fâchée contre vous,</i>	<i>with you.</i>
<i>Une table à tiroirs,</i>	A table <i>with</i> drawers.
<i>Dessiner au crayon, à la</i>	To draw <i>with</i> a pencil,
<i>craie,</i>	<i>with chalk.</i>
<i>Se battre à l'épée, au pis-</i>	To fight <i>with</i> swords, <i>with</i>
<i>tolet,</i>	<i>pistols.</i>

#### EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

My brother was in<sup>2</sup> such<sup>1</sup> a passion<sup>2</sup> *with* me, that I  
*si en colère*  
 thought he would have beaten me. - - I believe what  
*croire, v.*  
 you say, but I was very angry *with* her when she  
 told me she would not do it. - - I live near the river,

and if you will come to see me, we will fish *with a*  
*vouloir, v.*

net *or a line.* - - Your brother and my cousin  
*filet, m. ligne, f.*

fought *with* sabres and pistols; the former was  
*sing. sing.*

wounded in his thigh, and the latter in his side. - -

My house has been built *with* lime and sand. - - Did

Miss Arnold show you the picture she has drawn

*with* India ink? - - No, but she showed me her  
*Chine, f.*

mother's picture done *with* chalk, I assure you it is  
*crayon, m.*

very like. - - Do not go so near that wall, it is newly  
*ressemblant, adj. mur, m.*

painting *with* (white lead). - - I bought a penknife *with*  
*céruse, f.*

two blades. - - The Americans fought bravely  
*lame. se battre*

*with* the English at New-Orleans.

*Nouvelle*

*With* is not to be expressed after some verbs, such as, *to meet with, to trust with, to supply with, to reproach with, &c.* It is likewise to be suppressed where it expresses the situation, position, &c. of a person, or when it is used in the sense of *having, holding, &c.* : ex.

*Il a essayé bien des cha-*  
*grins,*

*Nous lui fournirons tout ce*  
*dont il aura besoin,*

*Il se promène toujours un*  
*livre à la main,*

He has met *with* many  
 troubles.

We will supply him *with*  
 every thing he may want.

He always walks *with* a  
 book in his hand, that  
 is, *having or holding a*  
*book, &c.*

## EXERCISE UPON THE SAME PREPOSITION.

He met *with* (so many) mortifications from his  
*essuyer, v.*  
 sons, that through grief he fell ill and died  
*de* *tomber, v.*  
 almost with despair. - - When you meet  
*de* *rencontrer, v.*  
 a poor man, never reproach him *with* his poverty,  
 but endeavour to furnish him *with* the means  
*moyen, m.*  
 of emerging from his misery. - - I have trusted Mr.  
*sortir, v.*  
 N. *with* my son's education, with the utmost con-  
 fidence that he will answer my expectation. - - The  
 New River supplies London *with* all the water which  
 the inhabitants stand in need of. - - I reproached  
*avoir besoin, v.*  
 her *with* her ingratitude towards her benefactors. - -  
 He always walks round his garden *with* a stick in his  
*bâton, m.*  
 hand. - - Never speak to any body *with* your hat on  
*le* *à*  
 your head. - - He is represented on horseback, *with*  
 a sword in his right-hand and a horse - pistol  
*l'épée* *arçon* *pistolet, m.*  
 in his left.  
*gauche, adj.*

*Without (sans):* this preposition is sometimes ex-  
 pressed (in English) by the imperfect or compound of  
 the imperfect of the verb *to be*, preceded by the con-  
 junction *if*, and sometimes by *but for*: ex.

Sans vous, je ne sais ce que *If it were not for you, I do*  
 je deviendrais, *not know what would*  
 become of me.

Sans lui, mon frère auroit *Had it not been for him,*  
 été puni, *my brother would have*  
 been punished.

Sans elle, je serois mort de *But for her; I should have*  
 faim, *starved.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS PREPOSITION.

*Without* the assistance of the divine Providence,  
*secours, m.*  
 what are we? What are we capable of? - - - Accord-  
 ing to what you tell me, and what I have heard,  
*entendre, v.*  
 she has (a great deal) of wit and merit; and, *but for*  
 that large scar which she has in her fore-  
*grand, adj. cicatrice, f.*  
 head, she would be very handsome. - - - *Had it not*  
*been for* the help of good and honest people, what  
 could you have done? - - *If it had not been for me,*  
 he never would have paid you. - - *Were it not for* rich  
 and charitable persons, what would become of the  
 poor and needy? - - Our neighbour fell into the river,  
*voisin, m.*  
 and *but for* my father, who was passing that way, he  
 would have been drowned. - - *Were it not for* emula-  
*se noyer, v. refl.*  
 tion, (every thing) would languish in the world.  
*tout*



## SECT. VIII.

### OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Most of the conjunctions are adverbs and prepositions, but always attended by *de* or *que*. They have been divided into *copulative, comparative, disjunctive, adversative, casual, dubitative, exceptive, conditional, continuative, conclusive, &c.* Instead of following this arrangement, it will be of more importance for the scholar to understand, that different conjunctions require different states of the verb. Some require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*, others in the *indicative*, and others again in the *subjunctive*.

These require the following verb in the *infinitive mood*.

*Afin de*, in order to.

*à moins de*, or  
*à moins que de*, } unless.

*Avant de*, or  
*Avant que de*,\* } before.

*Au lieu de*, instead of.

*De crainte de*, or  
*De peur de*, } for fear of.

*Excepté de*, except to.

*Faute de*, for want of.

*Jusqu'à*, to that degree that, till.

*Loin de*, far from.

*Plutôt que de*, rather than.

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

*In order to* learn well, we must study with (a  
*on devoir, v.*  
great deal) of attention. - - It will be impossible for  
you to learn French *unless* you be diligent. - - Let us  
*de*

\* This is now little used.

breakfast *before* we begin (any thing). - - A prudent  
 man (ought to) think several times, *before* he acts. - -  
 He is gone to church, *instead* of coming with us. - -  
 I would not do it *for fear of* displeasing you. - - He  
 is capable of (every thing) *except of* doing good. - -  
 For want of sending for <sup>*tout*</sup> a surgeon <sup>*in*</sup>  
 time, he lost his arm. - - He carried <sup>*envoyer chercher, v. chirurgien, m. à*</sup> his inso-  
 lence to that degree that he spoke injurious words  
 to him. - - Your cousin has humbled <sup>*dire, v. parole, f.*</sup> himself, till  
 he fell (on his) knees before the idol. - - Far from  
 exciting them to fight, I did all that I could in order  
 to prevent them. - - She would do (any thing) (in the)  
 world <sup>*tout au*</sup> rather than speak to him. - - Rather than study,  
 he loses his time, or spends it in trifles.  
*passer*

The following require the verb in the *indicative mood*.

*Ainsi que*, \* as.

*Tout ainsi que*, \* just as.

*Après que*, \* after that, after.

*à cause que*, } because.  
*Parce que*, }

*à ce que*, according as, or to.

*à condition que*, on, or upon condition that.

*à mesure que*, \* in proportion as, as.

*Au lieu que*, whereas.

\* See the rule, page 417.

*Dès le moment que,* \* the moment that.

*Aussi long-tems que,* \* as long as.

*Aussi loin que,* \* as far as.

*Aussitôt que,*  
*D'abord que,*  
*Dès que,*  
*Sitôt que,* } \* as soon as.

*Attendu que,* considering that, seeing that.

*Comme, or*  
*En tant que,* } \* as.

*De façon que,*  
*De manière que,*  
*De sorte que*  
*Si bien que,*  
*Tellement que,* } in such manner that, so that, so.

*Depuis que,* ever since, since.

*Puisque,* since.

*De même que,* even as.

*D'où vient que,* how comes it to pass that, why.

*Lorsque,* } \* when.

*Quand,* }

*Mais,* but.†

*Outre que,* beside that.

*à peine—que,* hardly, scarcely—but, or when.

*Pendant que,* } \* while.

*Tandis que,* }

*Peut-être que,* perhaps.

*Quand,*  
*Quand même,* } though.

*Selon que,* } \* according as.

*Suivant que,* }

*Tant que,* \* as long as.

*Que—de—ne,* than, only.

*Autant que,* \* as much as.

† This conjunction, when beginning a sentence, is always rendered by *mais*. In the middle of a sentence, the word *but* as *only* is always rendered by *ne* before the verb, and *que* after it: ex.

*Je n'ai parlé à votre frère que deux fois,* I have spoken to your brother but twice.

*D'autant que*, whereas, for so much as, since.

*D'autant plus—que*, so much the more, the more,—as.

*Tout que*, for all that.\*

*Toutefois*, yet, nevertheless.

*Toutes les fois que*, every time, as often as, whenever.

*Sinon que*, except that.

*Si*, if, in case, whether. (*Were I*, *Si J'étois*.)

#### EXERCISE UPON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I called at your sister's, *as* you had desired me.  
*passer, v.* *prier, v.*

- - I punish you *as* you deserve (it). - - *After* you

were gone, I began writing. - - I love you *because*

you behave better than your brother. - - - *According*

as I see, you are very well. - - He will write to you,

*on condition that* he shall speedily *receive*

your answer. - - - *In proportion as* we study, we  
*promptement, adv.*

become learned. - - A skilful gardener pulls up

weeds *as* they grow. - - - Your brother  
*habile arracher, v.*

*mauvaise herbe, f.* *croître, v.*

learns his lessons, *whereas* you do nothing. - - *The*

*moment that* I saw you, I knew you again. - - I did

not stay in Italy, *as long as* you did. - - I followed him

(with my) eyes *as far as* I could. - - *As soon as* they  
*des*

*had* taken the general, the army surrendered. - - Why

did you give it to him, *considering that* you had

promised it to me? - - I did not come to see you,

\* See the rule, page 132.

seeing that I did not know that you were ill. . . .

You (look at) me, as if I had taken your book. . .  
*regarder, v.*

I will lend you my horse, as you are my friend. . .

So you will not come when I call you? . . . He

beat him so that he almost killed him. . . .

Your mother is quite altered, since I saw her  
*changé, p.p.*

last. . . . You must stay at home, since you  
*dernièrement, adv.*

are not well. . . The thing happened even as I had  
*au logis,*

foreseen it. . . How comes it to pass that, I have not

seen your friend until now? . . Why, in proportion as

we grow older, do we not grow wiser? . . . When  
*devenir, v.*

you are going to undertake an affair of importance,

permit me to tell you, that you (ought to) consult  
*de*

your friends before you begin it. . . . When she had

done speaking, she (fell asleep). . . Did you not see  
*s'endormir, v.*

Mr. Brown this morning? . . Yes, but I could not speak

to him. . . . Sometimes those who meddle with our

affairs but to serve us, are those who do us most  
*pour* *le plus*

harm. . . . The misfortunes of others seem to us  
*tort, m.* *sembler, v.*

but a dream in comparison to our own. . . . If you  
*songe, m.*

could give me *but* half of the money you owe me, I  
 should be (very much) obliged to you. - - - *Beside that*  
 he does not apply as he should, he is often absent  
 from school. - - - We were *hardly* arrived, when it  
 began to rain. - - - *While* you lose your time, your  
 brother improves fast. - - - Play on the harpsichord,  
*beaucoup,adv.* *clavécin,m.*  
*while* I write my exercise. - - *Perhaps* the master will  
 forgive me. - - *Though* you should cheapen *for*  
 two hours, I could not abate sixpence. - - Our father  
 punishes and rewards us *according as* we deserve. - - -  
*le*  
 Speak *as long as* you please, I will not grant you  
 what you ask me. - - He had rather do harm  
 to his companions *than* (be doing) nothing. - - - If  
 you loved to study, *as much as* you love to play, I  
 should have (no occasion) to complain. - - I avoid  
 slanderers, *as much as* I fear them. - - - You may  
 believe me, *for so much as* I was present when he  
 said so. - - This proceeding was *the more* extraor-  
 dinary, *as* it was contrary to the laws of the king-  
 dom. - - The belief *of* another life appears to  
*croyance,f.*

me so much the more conformable to truth, as it is the more necessary to virtue. - <sup>¶</sup> Virtue reigns so much the more sovereignly, as it does not reign by force and fear. - - For all that he is rich, I cannot esteem him. - - - All men (seek after) riches, and *rechercher, v.* yet we see few rich men happy. - - I see the king and queen every time I go to Windsor. - - He interrupts me as often as I speak. - - Whenever I go to London, I meet him. - - She said nothing to me except that it was impossible (for her) to do what you required of her. - - I know not *lui, pro. de* whether he would come, even though *vouloir, v.* you should desire him. - - In case Mr. S. calls here, tell him I am not at home. - - If you do it, you will be punished. - - Tell me sincerely whether he did it or not. - - We should spare ourselves *s'épargner, v.* many troubles, were we more prudent. *peine, f.*

The conjunctions that have this mark \* affixed, as it appears in the preceding ones, when followed, in English, by a verb in the present of the indicative mood, and connected with another verb denoting futurity, require the verb, which, in English, is put in the present, to be rendered in French by the future.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You will be rewarded *just as* you deserve. - -

*After* you have done your exercises, you shall (go out.)  
*devoir, m.*

- - I will explain these rules to you, *as* we read them.

- - *The moment* that you burn this letter, the danger  
will be over. - - We will follow you *as far as* you go.

- - *As long as* you (keep company with) those people,  
*fréquenter, v.* *gens,*  
never come to my house. - - We will (set out) *as soon*

*as* we have dined. - - - *As* you deserve, you *will* be  
*le*  
rewarded. - - Send me Miss White, *when* she has

done writing. - - You will write the words *accord-*  
*fini, p. p. de*

*ing as* I dictate them. - - *As long as* you behave  
*se comporter, v.*  
well, you will be dear to me - - - In short, said this

good king, I shall only (think myself) happy in *as much*  
*se croire*

*as* I cause the happiness of my people.  
*faire*

It has been remarked in the degrees of comparison, that every comparative must be attended by the conjunction *que*, than; it must now be observed, that, if it precede a verb in the infinitive, *que* is to be followed by *de*. But if the verb be neither in, nor can be turned into the infinitive, the conjunction must then be attended by *ne*; that is, *que* before the noun or pronoun, and *ne* before the verb: ex.



*Il vaut mieux être mal-  
heureux que d'être cou-  
pable,* It is better to be unfor-  
tunate *than* criminal.  
*Mon père est revenu  
plutôt que nous ne l'at-  
tendions,* My father came back  
sooner *than* we ex-  
pected him.

## EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

It is more pleasing to enjoy good health,  
*agréable, adj.*  
*than* to possess a large fortune. - - It is harder (to  
*grand, adj.* *de*  
be revenged) of an enemy, *than* forgive him. - -  
*se venger, v.*  
It is better to (make a sacrifice of) a limb, said the  
*sacrifier, v.*  
surgeon, *than* to let him die. - - When the thunder  
roars it is less dangerous to be in an open field,  
*gronder, v.*  
*than* to take shelter under a tree. - - Should you  
*se mettre* *devoir*  
not apply more *than* you do; you, especially, who  
*refl.*  
(are to) be useful to your country? - - - That would  
give me more pleasure *than* you imagine. - - Did you  
*refl.*  
not receive your goods sooner *than* you thought?  
- - How many people can say to themselves, Had I  
*se dire, v.*  
employed my time *better than* I did when I was  
young, I should be (in good circumstances) now. - -  
*à mon aise*  
Diseases come faster *than* they go away.  
*s'en retourner, v.*

The following require the verb in the *subjunctive mood*.

- Afin que,* } that, in order that, to the end that.  
*Pour que,* }  
*Avant que,\** before.  
*Au or en cas que,* in case that, if, suppose that.  
*A moins que,\** }  
*Excepté que,* } unless, till.  
*Si ce n'est que,* }  
*Que—ne,* }  
*Bien que,* } though, although, for all that, as.  
*Encore que,* }  
*Quoique,* }  
*De crainte que,\** } lest, for fear.  
*De peur que,* }  
*Dieu veuille que,* God grant.  
*Plaise, or plutôt à Dieu que,* please God, or would to God.  
*à Dieu ne plaise,* God forbid.  
*Hormis que,* } save that, unless, except.  
*Hors que,* }  
*Jusqu'à ce que,\** till, until, (*Cham. Band. 335, without ne.*)  
*Loin que,* far from. (*Jusqu'à ce qu'il vienne.*)  
*Moyennant que,* } save that, provided that.  
*Pourvu que,* }  
*Nonobstant que,* notwithstanding that.  
*Pour peu que,* how little soever, however little.  
*Sans que,* without that.  
*Soit que,* whether,—or.  
*Supposons que,* suppose, let us suppose that.  
*Tant s'en faut que je,* I am so far from.  
*Tant s'en faut qu'il or elle,* he, or she is so far from.  
*Tant s'en faut que nous, or vous,* we, or you are so far from.

\* These conjunctions require the negation *ne* before the verbs following them: ex.

*A moins qu'il ne le fasse,* Unless he does it.  
*De crainte, or de peur qu'ils ne viennent,* For fear, or lest they come.

## EXERCISE UPON THESE CONJUNCTIONS.

I will explain to you every difficulty, *that* you may not be disheartened in your undertaking. - - - *décourager, v.*  
 Carry that money to Mrs. Nolle, *in order that* she may pay the writing-master when he comes. - - - A (by the fut.)  
 wise and prudent man lives with economy when young, *to the end that* he may enjoy the fruit of his labour when he is old. - - - *Before* you begin an (by the fut.)  
 action, consider well, and see whether you can bring it about; for, it is the end that crowns the work. - - - *en venir à bout*  
*In case* you want my assistance, call me, I shall be near you. - - *If* I do not call upon you this afternoon, I will write to you. - - - *Suppose* you should lose your friends, what would become of you? - - You will never be respected, *unless* you forsake the bad company you keep. - - - *abandonner, v.*  
 You cannot finish (to-night), *unless* I help you. - - - *ce soir,* I will not lend it you, *unless* you promise me to return it to her, as soon as you can. - - - *de rendre, v.*  
 I shall not cease to importune you, *till* you have forgiven me. - - *de* They are not happy, *though*

they be rich. - - The general arrived yesterday morn-  
 ing (at the) camp, weary and tired, but very season-  
 ably; immediately he gave his orders to  
 begin the action, *though* he had not yet all his  
 troops. - - - *Although* you have a good memory, this  
 is not enough to learn any language whatever,  
 you must (make use) of your judgment. - - *For all*  
*that* she has no fortune, I do not love her the less for  
 it. - - - *As* zealous *as* he appears, I know one  
 action of his life which is neither Christian nor  
 equitable. - - I lend you my violin *although* you did  
 not return it to me the other day. - - - My mother  
 will come to see you, *for fear* you should forget to  
 go to the play with her. - - - I will not give you  
 that penknife, *lest* you should make a bad use of it.  
 - - - I will go to London to-morrow, *for fear* he  
 should come himself. - - - I will write again to  
 your brother to-morrow, *lest* he should not  
 have received my last letter. -- We avoided an engage-  
 ment, *for fear* we should be taken, their force being

superior to ours. - - God *grant* you be not disappointed  
in your hopes ! - - - *Would to God* I had been there ! I  
would have conquered or perished. - - God *forbid* I  
should blame your conduct. - - Your business never  
will be done properly, *unless* you do it yourself. - - I  
shall not go out to-day, *except* you go with me. - -  
They fought with fury on both sides,  
*se battre, v.* *acharnement*  
*till* night came. - - I shall not set out, *till* I have  
dined. - - I am going to write, *till* we go out. - - *Far*  
*from* hating him, I wish him all kinds of prosperity.  
- - - I forgive you this time, *provided* you promise me  
to be lazy no more, and pay more attention to  
*de* *faire, v.*  
what you are told. - - I will give you leave to dance,  
*permission de*  
*provided* you give me your word of honour  
*parole, f.*  
not to overheat yourself. - - Why did you tell  
*de s'échauffer, v.*  
me my father was arrived, *notwithstanding* you  
knew the contrary ? - - He is so quick, that  
*prompt, adj.*  
*however little* he is contradicted, he (flies into a passion)  
*s'emporter, v.*  
in an instant. - - - *However little* you give her  
she is of so<sup>2</sup> good<sup>3</sup> a<sup>1</sup> temper<sup>4</sup>, that she is always  
*naturel, m.*

pleased. - - - Can you touch it *without* my brother content,adj.

perceiving it? - - Suppose we dine here to-day, *s'apercevoir de*

and to-morrow at our house. - - I am so far

from blaming you for assisting him, that, (on the)  
(comp. of the pres. inf.) *au*

contrary, I (very much) admire your conduct. - -

He is so far from despising her, that, on the con-

trary, he respects and honours her. - - - It is so

far from raining, that, on the contrary, I think

we shall have dry and hot weather during all this

week.

The conjunction *si*, if, or whether, instead of being repeated in a sentence, is more elegantly rendered by *que*, with the verb following it in the subjunctive mood, as, instead of saying,

<i>Si vous venez chez moi, et</i>	If you call upon me, and
<i>si vous ne me trouviez</i>	do not find me at
<i>pas,</i>	home,

It is more elegant to say,

*Si vous venez chez moi, et*  
*que vous ne me trouviez*  
*pas, &c.*

*Que* must also be repeated in the second part of a sentence, as well as the pronoun, when there is a conjunction in the first part of it; in this case *que* requires the following verb to be put in the same mood as the preceding: ex.

*Dès que je l'aurai vu et  
que je lui aurai parlé,  
je vous le ferai savoir,  
Quoiqu'il soit plus riche que  
vous, et qu'il ait de meil-  
leurs amis,*

As soon as I have seen him  
and spoken to him, I will  
let you know it.  
Though he be richer than  
you, and have better  
friends.

**EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.**

*If* your father do not arrive to-day, and if you  
want money, I will lend you some. - - -  
*avoir besoin de*  
*If* you should see your sister, and speak to  
her, &c. - - *If* you study and take pains, I  
assure you that you will learn the French  
language in a very short time. - - *Whether*  
you sing, or dance, do it with grace and atten-  
tion. - - - *If* you love me, and (be willing to) ob-  
lige me, do not go to France with her. - - *If* men  
were wise, and would follow the dictates of  
reason, they would (save themselves) many sor-  
rows. - - - *If* you meet my brother, and he speak  
to you, do not answer. - - - *So that* you saw and  
spoke to her. - - *Though* you have good relations,  
parent, m.





or withdraw it to himself, and only leave them  
*retirer, v.*

their own weakness; he teaches them their duty

in a sovereign manner. - - *Whether* you speak or  
*de, p.*

(hold your tongue,) you will obtain nothing from  
*se taire, v.*

me; but whatever you may say, speak so that you

may never offend any one. - - Your brother told me  
*personne.*

he was young, and was\* but twenty years old when

he was made a captain; I think he was better in-  
*plus*

formed and had more experience than you have. - -  
*instruit*

I can assure you, that both our officers and soldiers

have behaved nobly, and performed prodigies of  
*faire*

valour, though the enemies were superior in num-

ber, and had the advantage of the ground.

*terrein.*

It is here necessary to observe, that verbs denoting  
*wish, will, command, desire, doubt, fear, ignorance, entreaty,*  
*persuasion, pretension, surprise, &c.* always require the  
 conjunction *que* after them, with the following verb in  
 the *subjunctive mood*.

In short, in those *dispositions* of mind where the will  
 is chiefly concerned, or whenever we express a thing  
 with some degree of *doubt* or *hesitation*, then the verb,  
 which, in English, is put in the infinitive mood, the  
 participle active, or the future tense, must, in French,  
 be put in the subjunctive mood: *ex.*

\* See the remark after the verb *être*, to be, page 174.

*Croyez-vous qu'il soit hon- nête?* Do you believe him to be honest?

*Je doute que vous le fassiez,* I doubt of your doing it.

*Je ne crois pas qu'elle vienne,* I do not believe she will come.

See *Falloir*, and the rules after it, page 332.

*Pay the utmost attention to the*

**EXERCISE UPON THIS AND THE PRECEDING RULES.**

You wish him to pay you; he has no money, I am obliged to lend him some every day. - - I do not think that true philosophy may be less useful to women than men; but I remark, that the most part of those who meddle (with it) are but very bad philosophers, without becoming better wives for it. - - I do not believe that your mother will arrive to-day. - - - She wishes you may succeed in all your undertakings. - - I fear\* she (will go away) without speaking to me. - - I much fear he will come sooner than you expect him. - - Do you not say you are surprised that William has not spoken to you (ever since) last week. - - - For my part, I am not surprised at it, for he is always pouting.

\* The verbs *craindre* and *appréhender* when attended with no negation, require that *ne* should be placed before the verb which follows: ex. *Je crains qu'il ne meure*, I fear he will die.

-- Do you think he will succeed, and obtain the place  
*croire, v.*

he aims at? -- You have had much trouble, and we  
*aspirer, v.*

all fear lest hereafter she should give you much  
*peine*  
(pres. of subj.)

more. -- If you believe him to be your friend, why

then do not you follow his advice? -- It is necessary

for you to go thither, and assure him, that I am very  
*que*

thankful for all his kindness. -- I wonder that  
*reconnoissant de,*

Mr. R. has not yet asked your sister in marriage. --

If you see her and she speaks to you, do not answer

her. -- Order her to do it. -- Do you imagine

*Dire, v.* *s'imaginer, v.*  
we are sure they will come to-night? -- Do you

think it is possible for you to (bring it about)?  
*croire, v.* *de en venir à bout, v.*

-- It is just we should suffer, since we deserve it. --

I do not say I have seen it. -- He (was afraid) lest  
*craindre, v.* *que*

you should come while he was (gone out). --  
*sortir, v.*

Our master has ordered, that we should (get up) to-  
*se lever*

morrow morning early. -- You did not think that she

(wanted to) deceive you, when she told you that.  
*vouloir, v.*

-- I wonder you should doubt, that it is your  
*être surpris, v.* *ce*

daughter who told it me. -- Do you think my mother

will let us go to the ball next week? - - Were Mr. S. discreet and willing to undertake that affair, I would communicate it to him immediately. - - It *sur le champ.* will be better for you to go and speak to him yourself, while he is town, because I do not doubt\* of his undertaking it. - - Were I certain that you would *ne* with the subj. pres. speak to him about it, I would desire him to come and dine with us to-morrow; for I (am to) *prier de* see him to-night at his brother's. - - I am certain that he will satisfy you: are you certain he will satisfy me?... Your uncle is very glad you have written to your father. - - I will give you no rest, unless you are reconciled with your mother. - - I do not believe it is *que ne* she who has done it. - - Do you believe it? - - My brother is not well, and I doubt (very much) of his coming to see us before next *fort,* spring. . . . Do you think he is on the road? - - I doubt *en, p. en route?* whether he will come before next *suivant, adj.* week. . . . I did not know you had studied geography so long.

\* After the verbs *Douter* and *Nier*, when these verbs are attended with a negation, *ne* is employed with the verb which follows: *ex. Je ne nie pas que cela ne soit,* I do not deny that it is so.

It must be observed, that, after the verb *vouloir*, the verb *to have* is not expressed, but rendered in French by *que*. It must also be observed, that the sign of the future tense, *shall*, when it refers to the will of a person, and meaning, *I choose, I do not choose, do you choose?* &c. must be rendered in French by the present tense of the indicative mood of the verb *vouloir*, according to the number and person, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood: *ex.*

*Je veux qu'il fasse cela,*

*I will have him do that.*

*Je veux que vous me mon-  
triez cette lettre,*

*You shall show me that  
letter, that is to say,  
I choose you should  
show, &c.*

*Voulez-vous que je danse?*

*Shall I dance? that is, do  
you choose, &c.*

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

You would have your daughter return to-  
*vouloir, v.* *revenir, v.*  
morrow, but that is impossible. - - I will have your  
father know what you have done: you must stay  
*rester, v.*  
here till he comes. - - Your mother would have you  
come directly; why do you not you come then? - - I  
absolutely intend that she shall go thither  
*vouloir, v.*  
directly, and tell him, that, whether he be ill or  
*se porter*  
well, I will have him set out as soon as he has re-  
ceived my letter. - - I will have you see my house,  
and tell me what you think of it. - - She shall not go  
*penser, v.*

into the country, unless I go with her. - - My father would have me and my brother walk *all the* way. - - Your sister shall go with me to Croydon, and *faire à pied, v.* *chemin, m.* not you. - - Your father will have you go to France in a month; I am very glad of it, however I would not have you do things too precipitately. - - - Shall my brother show you his translation? - - Your brother asked me whether he might go home to-morrow; I told him he might go whenever he thought he should be wanted: but you shall remain here till *croire, v.* you have learned all your lessons. - - I know a gentleman who is going to Paris; shall I tell him to call upon you? I would not have you go to Germany *passer* *chez* without understanding French well, as that language will enable you to learn German much sooner than *mettre en état de bien* you expect. - - Your brother shall not go out to-day. *s'attendre.* - - Will you (be so good as) to go and carry that letter *avoir la bonté de* to the post? No, I cannot leave my play. But I tell you, that you shall (go there); I would have you pay *faire, v.* more attention to what you are told.

*Qui, que, or dont*, preceded by a superlative, require the following verb in the subjunctive mood, and when *qui* stands as a nominative to a verb, denoting a condition, it also requires the following verb to be put in the subjunctive mood: ex.

<i>C'est la plus belle femme qui</i>	She is the handsomest wo-
<i>puisse se voir,</i>	man <i>that</i> can be seen.
<i>C'est le plus méchant garçon</i>	He is the most wicked boy
<i>que je connoisse,</i>	<i>that</i> I know.
<i>Je veux une femme qui soit</i>	I will have a wife <i>who</i> is
<i>belle,</i>	handsome:

that is, I will not have any woman for a wife, but on condition she be handsome.

#### EXERCISE UPON THIS RULE.

Do you say you are surprised, that he has not yet written to you? I assure you it is not to be wondered at; for, he is the most negligent man I know. *s'étonner*

- - - It is necessary for you to go thither, and assure him that he has done nothing that should *que* *devoir, v.*

(make<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> angry<sup>2</sup>). - - He is the most charitable man *fâcher, v.*

we have in this neighbourhood; his purse is open to the poorest men he can find. - - - Did

you not tell me you (sought for) a master who had *chercher, v.*

a good pronounciation, and was endowed with (a great deal) of patience? - - *doué de* When a father is capable

of teaching his children, he is the best master whom

they can have. - - I know nobody that improves  
 more than Miss K——; and when she was learning *faire des progrès*  
 French, had she learned it by rules, she would speak,  
*le* write, and translate now much better than Miss S—,  
 though she was two years in France. - - Has not your  
 brother some friends whom he can trust? - - Your  
 father has bought the finest horse that I have ever  
*se fier à, v.*  
 seen. - - Is there any lady that appears more reasonable  
 than she does? - - If you ever choose a friend, I wish  
 you may choose one whom you esteem, and who  
 may be an honest man. - - It (will be better for) you to  
*vouloir mieux*  
 go and speak to him yourself, instead of writing to  
 him, because I do not doubt of his undertaking and  
 (bringing about) your affair; he is the most diligent  
*venir à bout de*  
 and the most careful man we have in this country. - -  
 Before you begin any thing of importance, consult  
 some body who is your friend, and on whom you can  
 rely. - - - Do you know any body who goes to  
*faire fond, v.*  
 France? - - I have something to send to my sister. - -  
 If you do not follow my advice, believe me, it will



be the greatest misfortune that can happen to you.

- - Babylon was the finest city that ever was built. - -

The best reason I can <sup>pouvoir, v.</sup> give you is, that I

(was not) well. - - If you lend me a horse, lend me <sup>se porter, v.</sup>

one that goes well. - - - The God who has created us,

and who created the universe, is the only one <sup>seul, adj.</sup>

to whom we owe homage, and the only one whom we

(ought to) fear.

## SECT. IX.

### OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections, as before observed, serve to express the sudden emotions of the soul.

There are several sorts, viz.

Of joy, grief, pain, admiration, aversion, silence, calling, encouraging, warning, &c. such as,

*Allons, gai !* come, be cheerful !

*ça, courage !* come, come on !

*Bon !* good !

*Ah, mon Dieu !* oh, my God !

*Ah, ouidà !* ay, marry !

*Ha, quelle joie !* O, joy !

*ô ciel !* O Heaven !

*Fi, fi !* fy upon ! shame !

*Holà, ho !* ho there !

*Hélas !* alas !

*Malheur à !* wo to !

*Miséricorde !* bless me !

*Prenez garde, gare !* have a care !

*Paix, chut, st !* hist, hush !

*Silence !* silence !

## EXERCISE UPON THE INTERJECTIONS.

Come, friends, let us rejoice! - - - Good! here are  
*se réjouir, v.*  
 news for you, brother. - - - Fy, fy! Robert, you do  
 not think of what you say. - - Oh! how<sup>1</sup> lovely<sup>2</sup> a'  
*penser, v. à* *que*  
 virtue<sup>3</sup> is<sup>2</sup> modesty<sup>2</sup>! Why do you not endeavour to  
*s'efforcer, v. de*  
 acquire it? - - Alas! who can express the torments  
 I suffer here? - - - Man without religion, never  
 having his heart or mind at peace, can, alas!  
*esprit, m. en, p.*  
 be but a very unhappy creature. - - - Wo to you!  
 usurers, misers, unjust possessors of (other people's)  
*usurier, m. avare, m.* *autrui, pro.*  
 goods, hearken to these words: The treasures  
*bien, m. écouter, v.* *parole, f.*  
 of iniquity (will be of no service) to you. - - O  
*ne servir de rien*  
 (lazy people), go to the ant, consider what she  
*paresseux* *fourmi, f.*  
 does, and learn from her, wisdom and industry.

Bless me! I am undone! - Hush there! silence!  
*perdu, p. p.*  
 - - Oh! the dismal effects which laziness pro-  
*funeste, adj.*  
 duces! - - How<sup>1</sup> tremendous<sup>2</sup> an<sup>2</sup> office<sup>3</sup> is<sup>7</sup> that  
*Que terrible, adj. le*  
 of<sup>4</sup> a<sup>5</sup> judge<sup>6</sup>! What wisdom, what integrity, what  
 knowledge, what sagacity of mind, what experience,  
*science, f.*  
 (are required!)  
*ne faut-il pas avoir, v.*

## REMARKS AND EXERCISES ON THE WORDS *de, à, and pour.*

Having, in this manner, gone through the respective parts of speech, there will be no occasion for a syntax. It will, however, be necessary to give some rules for ascertaining the proper use of the particle *de* or *à*, and the preposition *pour*, before a verb in the infinitive mood, and then to point out, by way of exercise, some idiomatical expressions that most frequently occur in the French tongue.\*

When two verbs come together in a sentence, the latter, having no subject expressed nor understood, must be put in the infinitive mood, whether the English sign *to*, be prefixed or not.

In the following cases, the infinitive mood must never be preceded by a particle.

FIRST, when the verb in the infinitive stands nominative to another verb : ex.

*Aimer est un verbe,*

*To love is a verb.*

SECONDLY, after the following verbs, *aller, croire, devoir, faire, il faut, savoir, valoir mieux, venir, pouvoir, oser, vouloir*, and *penser*, when rendered by *to be like or near*.

### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

To know how to give seasonably is a talent every  
body has not. - - To be able to live with one's self,  
and to know how to live with others, are the two  
great sciences of life. - - I had rather do it  
*aimer mieux, &c.*

\* The great number of idiomatical expressions in the French language has long been considered as an almost insuperable difficulty in the way of its easy acquirement ; however, this difficulty is daily decreasing ; these peculiar expressions are now giving way to a regular construction, and are very little used by the best writers.

now than later. - - Why dare you not undertake it?

I think you might succeed. - - He says he will lend  
*pouvoir, v. réussir, v.*

you his gun with all his heart, because you know  
*fusil, m.*

how to make use of it. - - Aristotle, though he was  
*se servir, v.*

so great a philosopher, was never able to penetrate the

cause of that prodigy. - - Tell him, that he may set

out when (he pleases). - - You never could  
*il lui plaira, v. pouvoir, v.*

come more seasonably. - - We (are to) go to Vauxhall

to-morrow. - - I am going to see your brother. - -

(Is it not better) to set out now, than wait  
*Valoir mieux, v. de attendre, v.*

any longer? - - - If you think to oblige her,  
*plus croire, v.*

you mistake. - - We (were to) have had a ball yester-  
*se tromper, v.*

day, but my sister was not well. - - You did very

right, for you ought not to speak to him. - - I  
*bien, adv. car, c. devoir, v.*

(had like) to have fallen twenty times (in) coming  
*penser, v.*

hither. - - To instruct, please, and move the pas-  
*émouvoir,*

sions, are the three principal qualifications requisite in  
*qualité nécessaire*

an orator. - - If you would read this book, I could  
*vouloir, v. pouvoir, v.*

lend it to you for four or five days. - - He wishes to  
*vouloir,*

learn without taking pains.

*peine, f. sing.*

The particle *de* is put before a verb in the infinitive mood : *First*, when any of the following words, *of, from* or *with*, are used before the participle active of any verb. (See the rule upon the participle active, page 343.)

*Secondly*, after a noun substantive joined immediately to a verb, either without any article at all, or with the following articles, *le, la*, or *les*.

*Thirdly*, after the following adjectives, *decent, glad, impossible, necessary, sorry, worthy, vexed*, and the like.

*Fourthly*, after the following verbs : *to advise, to apprehend, to bid, to cease, to command, to conjure, to counsel, to defend, to defer, to deserve, to desire, to endeavour, to entreat, to fear, to hasten, to long, to order, to permit, to persuade, to pray, to promise, to propose, to refuse, to remember, to threaten, to tell, to warn, to undertake, &c.* and the greater part of the reflected verbs.

And *lastly*, after the conjunction *que*, preceded by the comparative degree.

#### EXERCISE ON THIS RULE.

I have desired your brother, to lend me some money. - - <sup>prier, v.</sup> My mother ordered me to tell you, to

go and speak to her directly. - - <sup>ordonner, v.</sup> Did you not permit

him to go out this morning ? - - I am surprised to <sup>sortir, v.</sup>

find you so ill. - - I have not desired you to play. - -

Bid <sup>Dire, v. à</sup> your sister to send me my book. - - We

(were afraid) of displeasing you. - - What do you <sup>craindre,</sup>

advise me to do in such a case ? - - My sister <sup>conseiller, v.</sup>

and I intend to (call upon) you on Friday next. <sup>passer, v. chez, v.</sup>

I am very glad to hear <sup>apprendre, v.</sup> you are better. - -

She does not pretend to speak French as well as <sup>se piquer, v. de</sup> you. - - We are tired of repeating to you the same things so often. - - If you finish your exercise soon you will have the pleasure of walking, while the others will have the trouble of working. - - Hasten <sup>se hâter,</sup> to tell her not to go thither (any more); for, she <sup>de de plus, adv.</sup> would be in danger of losing her life. - - En-  
la  
deavour to please your masters by your application to study. - - Do not you remember having said you would carry me to the camp? - - Do not they <sup>mener, v.</sup> deserve to be encouraged, who undertake to serve <sup>mériter, v. \*</sup> the public? - - We are all glad to hear you have overcome your enemies; we should have been sorry to have heard the contrary. - - What a fool<sup>s</sup> you<sup>s</sup> are<sup>s</sup> <sup>apprendre,</sup> to grieve <sup>so</sup> so, when you have so much reason to <sup>s'affliger, v.</sup> rejoice! - - Never endeavour to speak French unless you have a good pronunciation. - - I shall never refuse to do you a service, (as long as) it is in my power. <sup>rendre, v.</sup> - - Have you a mind to do what you have pro-  
<sup>envie,</sup> mised me? - - I cannot give you the book you asked

\* See the rule, page 106.

me for, my brother has not (thought fit) to send  
 it me back again. - - I desired you to bring your  
 sister with you ; why did you not ?\* - - I forbid  
 you to speak or write to him (any more). - - Would  
 you not be very glad to read and speak Italian ? - -  
 - - - Condemn the opinion of no one hastily, but  
 endeavour to regulate your own by the line of  
 truth. - - Who can hinder me from speaking or  
 writing to her ? - - (Give<sup>1</sup> me<sup>2</sup> leave<sup>1</sup>) to tell you, that  
 you do very wrong to disoblige your aunt. - - He  
 (was not contented) to demolish the temple and pull  
 down the statues, but, &c. - - Is there (any thing)  
 more glorious, than to change anger into friendship ?  
 - - - (I long) to see your mother, and tell her all  
 that I think (about it.)

en, pro.

The particle *à* is to be placed before a verb in the infinitive mood : First, after the auxiliary verb, *avoir*, to have, immediately followed by a substantive or an adverb, expressing a futurity in the action : ex.

*J'ai plusieurs lettres à écrire*, I have many letters to write.

Secondly, after nouns substantive joined to the verb *avoir*, or nouns adjective joined to the verb *être*, signifying to be *addicted, apt, bent, diligent, disposed*,

\*. *Do it*, is understood, and must be expressed in French.

*dreadful, easy, fit, hard, inclined, quick, ready, subject, used, &c.*

Thirdly, after the following adjectives, *admirable, good, dexterous, handsome, scarce, the last, the first, the second, &c.*

And, lastly, after the following verbs, *to amuse, to aspire or aim at, to begin, to condemn, to continue or go on, to compel or force, to design, or destine, to dispose, to employ or spend, to encourage, to engage, to excite, to exhort, to help, to induce, to invite, to learn, to please, to serve, to take a pleasure or delight in or to, to teach, to think, &c.*

**EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING VERBS.**

Come hither, Paul, I have something to communi-  
cate to you. - - We have much to fear in our present  
situation, and a (great many) hazards to run. - - I  
cannot go to the play to-night; for, I have five or  
six visits to pay. - - Is there any thing pleasanter  
*rendre, v.* to behold than the flux and reflux of the sea? - - We  
*voir,* (ought to) learn how to subdue our passions,  
*conquer, v.* conquer our desires, and suffer patiently the most  
cruel misfortunes. - - She is always the first to  
*disgrâce, f.* (find fault with) what I do. - - Do not gather  
*trouver à redire à* that apple, it is not yet good to eat. - - Mr. N. told  
me you had a country-house to let. - - Mr. F. is a  
*louer, v.* very agreeable man, always ready to serve his friends,  
but he has the misfortune to be inclined to gaming.  
*adonné jeu, m.*



- - - Your master does not love you, because you are not diligent in learning your lesson. - - - We had for a long time nothing to eat but the fruits which we had gathered. - - - The greatest part of men spend their time either in doing nothing, or doing what they ought not to do. - - What you say of her is very hard

*difficile*, adj.

to believe. - - Tell him, I have no complaint to make about his conduct. - - - Why do you oblige her

*de*

to ask my pardon, since she is not inclined to do it herself? - - - I believe she takes a delight in tormenting me. - - - Life is so short, that we should employ all our days in preparing ourselves for the other world. - -

*me, pro.*

There is no more danger to fear. - - - Use yourself,

*S'accoutumer*, v.

said a father to his son, to practice virtue : that alone will help you to bear

with patience all the vicis-

*supporter*, v.

situdes of fortune. - - - Never amuse yourself in reading bad books. - - - You can never spend your time

*passer*, v.

better than in reading and studying the history of your own country. - - Learn to speak well ; but, above all,

to speak truth. - - That science which teaches us to

*dire*, v.

see things as they are, is highly worthy of cultivation.

*bien*,

- - - An honest man always takes pleasure in obliging his friends. - - - Does your master teach you how to

translate English into French ? - - - Do you begin to translate French well ? - - - Why did you not oblige him to pay you what he owes you ? - - - Why do you

not (get ready) to set out with us? - -. I love to  
*s'apprêter, v.*  
 discourse with polite and sensible people.  
*s'entretenir, v.* *sensé,*

N. B. For the sake of euphony, the following verbs, *to begin, to continue, to constrain, to engage, to exhort, to compel, or force, to endeavour, to oblige,* may be succeeded by *de, or à,* as most convenient.

The preposition *pour* is to be used before a verb in the infinitive mood, when it expresses the *cause, the design, or the end,* and then the English particle *to* may be expressed by *in order to, to the end, or for to.* This preposition is also used after the adverbs, *enough, on purpose, too, too much, or less;* and before an infinitive in the beginning of a period.

#### EXERCISE ON THESE RULES.

I will do (every thing) in my power to please him. - -  
 Good rules are useless, if the attention, industry, and  
*assiduité, f.*  
 patience of the scholar be not put into practice to learn  
 them. - - Mrs. B. has (too much) pride to confess she  
 (is in the wrong.) \* - To understand<sup>2</sup> geography<sup>3</sup> well,  
*avoir tort*  
 we must, &c. - - I assure you that I came (on purpose)  
*on* *exprès*  
 to see you. - - - She will do all that is in her power *to*  
 oblige you, and prove to you that she is truly your  
 friend. - - The wicked live to die, but the righteous  
 die to live. - - She has vanity enough to believe all  
 you tell her. - - What makes the misfortunes of kings,  
 is not to have friends bold enough to tell them *the*  
 truth. - - I wrote to you some time ago, to let  
*faire, v.*  
 you know, that your brothers were arrived. - - He

promised me, that he would do (every thing) to deserve the honour of your protection. - - - I sent yesterday my servant to your aunt's to desire her to send<sup>2</sup> me<sup>1</sup> back<sup>2</sup> again<sup>2</sup> the book I lent her a month ago, but she was not at home. - - We did all that *faire, v.* we could to pass the river, but could not (accomplish it). - - - To convince you that I am ready to do *en venir à bout.* you any service, (be so kind as) to command me. *avoir la bonté, v.* - - - Why did you not punish her for having done what you forbade her to do? - - - A man should live *devoir,* a century at least to know the world, and many other *connoître,* centuries to (know how to) make a proper use of that *savoir,* *convenable,* knowledge.

---

## SECT. X.

### OF IDIOMATICAL EXPRESSIONS.

#### ON THE VERB *AVOIR*, TO HAVE, &c.

<i>Avoir mal à la tête,</i>	* { to have the head-ache, or a pain in the head.
<i>Avoir mal aux oreilles,</i>	{ to have sore ears, or a pain in the ears.
<i>Avoir mal aux yeux,</i>	{ to have sore eyes, or a pain in the eyes.
<i>Avoir mal au nez,</i>	{ to have a sore nose, or a pain in the nose.
<i>Avoir mal à la bouche,</i>	{ to have a sore mouth, or a pain in the mouth.
<i>Avoir mal aux dents, &amp;c.</i>	to have the tooth-ache.

We say, after the same manner, *Avoir froid aux mains, aux pieds, &c.* to be cold in one's hands, &c. **ex.**

*J'ai froid à la tête, aux mains, et aux pieds,* My head, my hands, and my feet, are cold.

*Avoir beau,* to be in vain : **ex.**

*Vous avez beau parler,* It is in vain for you to talk.

*Avoir beaucoup de peine,* to have much ado.

*Avoir de la peine à,* to have difficulty in ; **ex.**

*J'ai de la peine à vous croire,* I can hardly believe you.

*Avoir besoin de,* to want, to have occasion for.

*Avoir la bonté de, (daigner),* to be so kind as.

*Avoir connoissance, avis de,* to have notice of.

*Avoir cours,* to take, to be in vogue.

*Avoir honte,* to be ashamed.

*Avoir la mine de,* to be like, to look like : **ex.**

*Vous avez la mine d'être intelligent,* You look like a man of understanding.

*Avoir pitié de,* to pity.

*Avoir part au gâteau,* to share in the booty.

*Avoir bonne mine :* **ex.**

*Vous avez très-bonne mine aujourd'hui,* } You look very well to-day.

*Avoir plus de peur que de mal,* to be more afraid than hurt.

*Avoir raison de,* to be in the right to.

*Avoir soin,* to take care.

*Avoir tort de,* to be in the wrong to.

*N'avoir que faire de,* { to have no occasion or business of or for.

*N'avoir garde de, or* } are ex- { to be sure not to,

*Se garder bien de,* } pressed by { or, by no means.

*Aller son train,* to go one's own way.

*Aller trouver quelqu'un,* to go to somebody.

*Venir trouver,* to come to.

#### EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

I could not call upon him this morning, because I had a pain in my head. - - My brother would have come with me, but he has a sore leg, and is obliged to

keep his bed. - - I heard your mother had the  
*garder le*  
*tooth-ache* : Is it true ? No, madam, but she has  
 a pain in her side which prevents her from (going  
*empêcher,*  
 out.) - - - I have not yet finished my exercise ;  
 for *my hands were so cold*, that I could not write a single  
 word ; besides, I *had much ado* to find my books, I  
 did not know where (to look for) them. - - *It will*  
*be in vain for you to write to me*, I never will answer  
 you. - - - *I can hardly believe what you tell me.* - -  
*It is in vain for me to speak to her*, she still *goes her*  
*own way.* - - - Miss N. cried very much yesterday, but  
 I think she *was more afraid than hurt.* - - *It has been*  
*in vain for him to torment your sister*, she never would  
 tell him what happened to her when she was at Mr.  
 P's. - - - *Go to him*, and tell him that, unless he re-  
 turns me my books in a very short time, I will desire  
 his father to send them to me : when you have told  
 him that, do not (wait for) his answer ; *come to me im-*  
*mediately*, I shall be at your mother's, where I (am to)  
 dine, and thence go to the play with the<sup>a</sup> whole<sup>l</sup> family.  
 - - - *In vain* I give myself trouble, I am not the richer  
 for it. - - - Your sister does not *look so well* to-day as  
 she did yesterday. - - - *Am I not in the right to go*  
*there no more ?* - - - *I will take care to prevent them*  
*from coming hither.* - - - Believe me, I have long sus-  
 pected them, and now I am very certain that both your  
 cousins and they *have had a share in the booty.* - - - *We*  
*should often be ashamed of our finest actions*, if the

world knew all the motives which produce them. . . .

*You are in the wrong* not to (ask for) his horse, he would lend it to you. - - - Why should I borrow his horse, when I have one (of my own?) - - I *have no occasion for*

*à moi,*  
his. - - - *Be so kind as to* carry that letter to Mr. H's. but *be sure not to* tell him who sent you. - - I hope

you will *by no means* go there again, after what has happened to you. - - - He was so altered, that she *had much ado* to recollect him, but he now begins *to look very*

*remettre,*  
*well.* - - Somebody having advised Philip, Alexander's father, to banish from his states a man who had spoken ill of him, I *shall by no means do it*, answered he, he would go every where and speak ill of me.

---

### ON ETRE, TO BE.

*Etre* { *à son aise,*  
          *en bonne passe,*  
          *bien dans ses affaires,* } to be in good circumstances.

*Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un,* { to be in favour with some one.

*Etre mal avec quelqu'un,* { to be out of favour with some one.

*Etre à charge à quelqu'un,* { to be chargeable, troublesome, or a burden to some one.

*Etre but à but,* to be equal.

*Etre de moitié,* to go halves.

*Etre à la portée du fusil, du canon,* { to be within musket-shot, gun-shot.

*Etre à la portée de la voix,* to be within call.

*Etre* { *à la veille de,*  
          *sur le point de,* } to be upon the brink, or very near to.

*Etre en état de,*  
*Avoir le moyen de,* } to be able to afford.

### EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Your brother is in good circumstances now. - -  
Somebody told me he was in favour with the king. - -  
Yes, it is true, but he is out of favour with my father,  
because he is troublesome to the family. - - Well, Mr.  
*Eh bien,*  
R. and he are equals. - - I thought Mr. A. and Mrs.  
D. went halves in that affair, but I heard the contrary.  
- - Suffer me to tell you, you do very wrong to treat  
*permettre,*  
her as you do, you undoubtedly must have forgotten  
she is in the queen's favour. - - Well, though she be in  
the queen's favour, do you imagine I am not to tell her  
what I think of her conduct? - - The two fleets were  
within gun-shot, and very near beginning the engagement,  
*combat, m.*  
when we left them. - - We will be within call. - -  
Why do you not take a coach now and then? said she  
to me. I would willingly take one sometimes, replied I  
to her, but I cannot afford it.

ON FAIRE, TO MAKE, OR DO.

*Faire cas de*, to value, to esteem.

*Faire un tour de promenade, to take a walk.*

*Faire le malade, to sham sickness.*

*Faire l'école buissonnière, to play truant.*

*Faire beaucoup de chemin, to go a great way.*

*Faire le bel esprit, to set up for a wit.*

*Faire fond sur quelqu'un, to rely upon one.*

*Faire savoir, (envoyer dire,)* { to let one know, to inform,  
to send word.

*Faire voile, or  
Mettre à la voile.* } to set sail.

*Faire faire*, to bespeak, to get made, to oblige one to do.

*Faire de son mieux*, to do one's best.

*Faire semblant*, to pretend.

*Faire de son pis*, to do one's worst.

*Ne faire que de*, to be just, or

*Venir de*, to have but just : ex.

*Il ne fait que d'arriver*, He is but just arrived.

*Ne faire que*, to do nothing but.

*Se faire des amis, des ennemis*, to get friends, enemies.

*Se faire des affaires*, to bring one's self into trouble.

*S'en faire accroire*, { to be conceited, to have a good  
opinion of one's self.

*C'en est fait de moi*, I am undone, it is over with me.

*C'en étoit fait de lui*, he was undone, it was over with him.

*C'en sera fait d'elle*, { she will be undone, it will be over  
with her.

*C'en seroit fait de nous*, { we should be undone, it would  
be over with us.

The English verb, *to cause*, preceding the verb *to be*, immediately followed by a participle passive, is rendered in French, by the verb *faire*, and then the verb *to be* is not expressed, but the participle passive is turned into the infinitive mood : ex.

*Il lui fit couper la tête*, He caused his head to be cut off.

#### EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

Do not lose that ring, for I *value* it much ; it is a particular friend of yours who gave it me. - - I would go and *take a walk*, if I were well. - - Do you not *sham sickness* now and then ? - - Did not your brother *play truant* last week ? - - That man *goes a great way* for a trifle. - - Mr. P. *sets up for a wit*, wherever he goes. You may *rely upon* what I tell you. - - He succeeds better *in being conceited*, than *in giving* others a  
à à  
nd opinion of himself. - - I begin to be (very much)



satisfied with his brother, who now *does his best*, and will soon be able to write a French letter to his father. - - - *Let me know* whether he will pay you or not. - - - *We shall set sail* about the fifteenth of next month. - - - - *Why did not you bespeak* three or four pair of shoes more? - - - *Send word to your* brother, or *let him know*, that there is a letter for him here. - - I will give him an exercise, and *oblige him to do* it in my presence. - - - She told me if she <sup>en</sup> *were obliged to do* it, she *would do her worst*. - - She *pretends not to* <sup>de,</sup> listen, but I assure you she does not lose a word of what you say. - - We were *but just* (come in) when it began to rain. - - - *It would have been over with us*, could the enemy have known what passed in our camp. - - You *do nothing but* play from morning till night. - - - - *That young lady will get* friends every where. - - - If you do not take care, you *will bring yourself into trouble*. - - Permit me to tell you, that they <sup>de</sup> *are too much conceited*. - - - Your brother is *undone*, if his master come to know of it. - - The king *caused them to be put to prison*. - - He *caused a superb palace to be built*.

## ON DIFFERENT VERBS.

*Aimer mieux*, to have rather, to choose rather.

*Se donner bien des airs*, { to take a great deal upon one's  
self.

*Il ne faut pas s'étonner*, it is no wonder.

*Il me tarde de*, I long to.

*Penser*, to be like. (Followed by a verb in the infinitive mood.)

*S'en prendre à*, { to lay the fault or blame upon one,  
to look to one for.

*S'y bien prendre*, or { to go the right way to  
*S'y prendre de la bonne façon*, { work.

*S'y prendre mal*, to go the wrong way to work.

*S'y prendre tout autrement*, { to go quite a different, or  
another, way to work.

*Prendre en mauvaise part*, to take amiss.

*Venir à bout de*, to bring about, to accomplish.

#### EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

I choose rather to (set out) now than later. - - She told me she *had rather* speak to any other person than to Mr. L. - - They *had rather* have had you stay in Italy two or three years longer. <sup>que,</sup> <sup>subj.</sup> - - - Do not you think *de plus.* Mrs. H. takes a great deal upon herself? - - - It is no wonder that I do not speak French so well as you; you have been several years in France, and I never was there. - - - I hope your brother will succeed in his undertaking; for, he goes the right way to work, and I am certain that he will bring it about. - - - Your cousin, on the contrary, will always be poor; for, he goes the wrong way to work in (every thing) he undertakes. - - She longs to see your father, and tell him you behaved well all the time of his absence. - - - I had like (to have <sup>être,</sup> been) killed in coming here. - - If he lose, he will lay the blame upon you. - - - Why do you lay the blame upon her? she was not even in the room when that happened. - - - Should not your sister succeed, whom

would she lay the fault upon ? - - - You say you long to speak French ; and I too, I assure you. - - - I long to tell you something, nevertheless I do not know how to communicate it to you for fear of disobligeing you. - - - When you have a mind to tell me something disagreeable, you should go quite a different way to work. - - I beg of you not to take amiss what I tell you. - - Do not begin a thing, unless you are sure to bring it about.

de

---

## ON DIFFERENT VEBBS.

*Se passer de*, to do, to live without, or to be easy, without.

*Savoir bon gré*, to take kindly of.

*Trouver mauvais que*, to take ill if.\*

*Trouver à redire à*, to find fault with.

*Tenir maison*, to be a house-keeper.

*Tenir boutique*, to be a shop-keeper.

*Tenir parole*, to keep one's word.

*Ne tenir qu'à*, { to be in a person's power.

{ to lie in a person's power : ex.

*Il ne tient qu'à moi, à vous, à lui, à elle, &c.* It is in my, your, his, her, power, &c.

*Il ne tient pas à moi, à vous, &c. que,* It is not my, your, fault &c. if.†

*S'en tenir à*, to stand to.

*Vouloir du bien à*, to wish one well.

*En vouloir à*, to have a spite against.

*Je souhaiterois pouvoir*, I wish I could.

*Il y va, il y alloit, de votre vie*, your life is, was, at stake.

*Il y va, il y alloit, de mon honneur*, { my honour is, was, concerned in it.

*Je ne laisse pas de*, nevertheless, or for all that, I.

\* With the following verb in the subjunctive.

† With the following verb in the subjunctive, and *ne* before it.

## EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING IDIOMS.

When I have wine, I drink some; but when I have none, I *am easy without* it. - - - If you will *be so kind as* to write to my father, to let him know my situation, I *shall take it kindly of* you, and promise you never to *find fault with* what you may recommend to me. - - I *wish I could* do you that service, I would do it with all my heart. - - - I hope you *will not take it ill, if* I write <sup>que</sup> to your uncle (at the) same time. - - I *shall stand to* <sup>en</sup> what you say. - - - He *has been a house-keeper* these five and twenty years. - - He might have succeeded much better than he has done, had he followed his uncle's advice and mine; but he never was satisfied, and was continually *finding fault with* what we were telling him. - - However little you send him at present, he *will take it kindly of* you. - - - It *is in her power* to live in the coun-  
try, and be very happy there. - - It *will soon lie in your* <sup>de</sup> power to make us happy. - - I assure you it *shall not be* <sup>de</sup> my fault, if you do not succeed; for I *wish you well*. - - Since it *lies in your power* to recommend Mr. P. to your <sup>de</sup> friend, why do you not do it? - - When you see him, you may assure him, that, since it *is in my power* to do it, I will not forget him. - - - You *have a spite against* my brother; because it *was in his power* two or three  
+ times to oblige you, and he never would. - - - I *wish I could* persuade you how sorry he was for it; but his honour *was concerned in* not doing it: and, though you <sup>de</sup> be very angry with him, he *would, nevertheless, (or, for all that,) do you service* if it were *in his power*. - - Had I

thought he would have refused me that favour, I never would have asked it (of him ;) I might very well have <sup>lui,</sup> done without it. - - You ought to have thanked him for <sup>de</sup> that attention, instead of being angry with him; but <sup>contre</sup> when your sisters heard that you could not obtain his leave, *they took it amiss*, and have (ever since) *had a spite* <sup>congé</sup> against him. - - When they told me (of it,) I would most <sup>le</sup> willingly have represented to them (how much) they *were in the wrong* : but I would *by no means* do it ; for I know it is *in their power* to do me (a great deal) of harm, and I do not wish to *get enemies*. - - - Every body admires her humanity ; for, though he has behaved in so <sup>de</sup> ungrateful a manner towards her, she would, *nevertheless*, have done him service, if he had lived.



## GENERAL AND PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES.

### OF THE UNDERSTANDING OF LANGUAGES.

The understanding of languages serves (for an) <sup>de</sup> *intelligence*, <sup>f.</sup> introduction to all the sciences. By it we come <sup>parvenir, v.</sup> with very little trouble at the knowledge of (a great <sup>peine,</sup> many) fine things, which have cost those who <sup>à</sup> invented them (a great deal) of pains. By it all times and countries lie open to us. By it <sup>siècle, m.</sup> <sup>pays,</sup> <sup>être, v.</sup> we become, in some measure, contemporary to all <sup>de</sup>

ages, and inhabitants of all kingdoms. It (enables)  
mettre en état  
 us to converse with the most learned men of all  
de  
 antiquity, who seem to have lived and laboured for  
 us. We find (in them) many masters, whom (we are  
il nous  
 allowed) to consult at leisure ; many friends who  
est permis de  
 are always at hand, and whose useful and agreeable  
 conversation improves the mind. It informs us of  
enrichir, v.  
 a thousand curious subjects, and teaches us equally  
 (how to derive an advantage) of the virtues and vices  
à profiter, v.  
 of mankind. Without the assistance of languages,  
secours, m. langue, f.  
 all these oracles are dumb to us, and all these  
pour, p.  
 treasures (locked up ;) and, for want of having the  
fermer, v.  
 key, which alone can open us the door (to them,) we  
seul, adj. en, v.  
 remain poor (in the) midst of (so many) riches, and ig-  
au  
 norant in the midst of all the sciences.

---

### OF STUDY.

We (come into the world) surrounded with a cloud  
naître, v. \*  
 of ignorance, which is increased by the false pre-  
 judices of a bad education. By study, the former  
 is dispersed, and the latter corrected. It gives

\* See the observation on the preposition *with*, page 405.

proportion and exactness to our thoughts and reasonings; instructs how to range in due order what-  
*justesse, f.*

ever we have to speak or write; and presents us with  
*convenable*  
*dire, v.*

the brightest sages of antiquity as patterns for our  
*modèle, m.*

conduct; those sages, in this sense, we may call, with

Seneca, the masters, and teachers of mankind. But  
*Sénèque précepteur, m.*

the usefulness of study is not confined to what we  
*borner, v.*

call science; it renders us also more fit for business

and employment; besides, though this study  
*de plus, adv.* *quand, c.*

were of no other use but (the acquiring) a habit of  
*de* †

labour, (the softening) the pains of it, (the pro-  
 †

curing) a steadiness of mind and (conquering)  
 † *fermeté, f.* †

our aversion to application or a sedentary life, or  
 whatever else seems (to lay a restraint upon) us, it  
*assujettir, v.*

would still be of very great advantage. In reality,  
 it draws us off from idleness, play, and debauchery.  
*retirer, v.*

It usefully (fills up) the vacant hours of the day, and

renders very agreeable that leisure, which, without the

assistance of literature, is a kind of death, and, in a  
*espèce, f.*

manner, the grave of a man while he is alive. It ena-

† These participles active are to be rendered in French by the infinitive, and the conjunction and preposition should be repeated before each.

bles us to pass a right judgment upon other men's  
 labours, to enter into society with men of understanding,  
 to keep <sup>en</sup> the best company, to (have a share in) <sup>esprit,</sup>  
<sup>fréquenter, v.</sup> the discourses of the most learned, to furnish out matter <sup>prendre part à</sup>  
 for conversation, without which we must be silent ; to  
<sup>quoi,</sup> render it more agreeable and more useful, by intermix-  
 ing facts with reflections, and setting the one by the  
<sup>relever, v.</sup> other.

## SECT. XI.

### SCHEME FOR PARSING A SENTENCE.

As it is very essential to the thorough learning of a language, not to mistake one part of speech for another, we finish this grammar by giving a classical and methodical scheme for parsing a sentence. The examples, with very little change, may suit any language.

**Article. Questions :** Is it definite, partitive or indefinite? What gender? What number?

**Examples.** *Le pouvoir du roi*, the power of the king ; *la liberté des hommes*, the liberty of men ; *J'ai du pain, de la viande, des pommes* ; I have bread, meat, apples ; *La sœur de Pierre*, Peter's sister.

**Application.** *Le*, definite art. m.—*du*, contraction of *de le*, genitive defi. art. m.—*La* definite art. f.—*des*, contraction of *de les*, genitive defi. art. both genders, pl.—*du*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. m.—*de la*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. f.—*des*, in the sense of *some*, part. art. both genders, pl.—*de* indefinite art. both genders and numbers, geni. and abl.—*à* dat. indef. art.

\* Repeat this same preposition before each verb.



**Substantive. Questions :** What gender? What number? If the noun is singular, name its plural; if plural, name its singular.

**Examples.** *Le pouvoir du roi*; *la liberté des hommes*; *le prix des denrées*, the price of provisions.

**Application.** *Pouvoir*, substantive, m. *pouvoirs* for its pl.—*Liberté*, subst. f. *libertés*, for its pl.—*Prix*, subst. m. *prix* for its pl.—*Denrées*, subst. f. pl. *denrée* for its singular.

**Adjective. Questions :** What gender? What number? What does it agree with in the sentence? If it be masculine, name its fem. If it be feminine, name its masc.

**Examples.** *Un beau chapeau*, a fine hat; *ces femmes sont jolies*, those ladies are pretty; *cette fille est orgueilleuse*, that girl is proud.

**Application.** *Beau*, noun adj. m. agrees with *chapeau*; it has *belle* for its feminine.—*Jolies*, noun adj. f. pl. agrees with *femmes*; it has *joli* for its masculine.—*Orgueilleuse*, noun adj. f. agrees with *fille*; it has *orgueilleux* for its masculine.

**Pronoun. Questions :** Is it personal, conjunctive, possessive, relative, demonstrative, interrogative or indefinite? What gender? What number? With what does it agree in the sentence?

**Examples.** *Elle a mon livre*, she has my book. *Cette plume ne vaut rien*, this pen is good for nothing. *L'homme qui vous parloit*, the man who was speaking to you. *Il y a plusieurs années*, several years ago. *Quel homme?* What man?

**Application.** *Elle*, pronoun pers. f. agrees with *a*. *Mon*, pronoun poss. m. agrees with *livre*. *Cette*, pronoun demonstr. f. agrees with *plume*. *Qui*, pronoun rel. both genders and numbers, agrees with *homme*. *Plusieurs*, pronoun indef. pl. both genders, agrees with *années*. *Quel?* pron. int. m. agrees with *homme*.

**Verb. Questions :** Name its infinitive—its person—its number—its tense—its mode.

**Examples.** *Pendant qu'ils étoient ensemble*, j'entendis sonner midi; while they were together, I heard twelve o'clock strike. *Quoiqu'il paroisse heureux*, n'enviez pas

son sort ; *though he may appear happy, do not envy his situation.*

*Application.* *Etoient*, from *être* ; 3d pers. pl. imperf. tense, indic. mood. *Entendis*, from *entendre* ; 1st pers. sing. preterite, indicative mood. *Paroisse*, from *paraître*. 3d pers. sing. pres. tense, subjunc. mood. *Enviez*, from *envier* ; 2d pers. pl. imperat. mood.

*Preposition.* What does it govern in the sentence ?

*Examples.* *Avant midi* ; *sans argent* ; *before noon* ; *without money.*

*Application.* *Avant*, a preposition, governs *midi*. *Sans*, a preposition, governs *argent*.

*Conjunction.* What mood does it require ? Name the verb it acts upon in the sentence.

*Examples.* *Lorsque le roi entra*, when *the king came in*. *Quoique vous soyez riche*, though *you be rich*. *Je lis pour m'amuser*, *I read to amuse myself*.

*Application.* *Lorsque*, a conjunction, requires the indic. Here it governs *entra*. *Quoique*, a conjunction, requires the subjunc. Here it governs *soyez*. *Pour*, a conjunction, requires the infinitive. Here it governs *amuser*.

*Adverbs and interjections.* Only name them.

*Examples.* *Ah ! mon ami, agissez prudemment* ; *ah, my friend, act prudently.*

*Application.* *Ah* is an interjection.—*Prudemment* is an adverb.

# A B R É G É

## DE LA VERSIFICATION FRANÇOISE.

**LES vers**, à ne les considérer que sous le rapport de leur mécanisme, sont des paroles arrangées selon certaines règles fixes et déterminées.

Ces règles regardent sur-tout le nombre des syllabes, la césure, la rime, les mots que le vers exclut, les licences qu'il permet, et enfin les différentes manières dont il doit être arrangé dans chaque sorte de Poème.

*Des différentes espèces de Vers françois.*

On compte ordinairement cinq sortes de vers françois. C'est par le nombre des syllabes qu'on les distingue.

1°. Ceux de douze syllabes, comme :

Dans le ré-duit ob-scur d'u-ne al-co-ve en-son-cée  
S'é-lè-ve un lit de plu-me à grands frais a-mas-sée :  
Qua-tre ri-deaux pom-peux, par un dou-ble con-tour,  
En dé-fen-dent l'en-trée à la clar-té du jour.

Ces vers s'appellent *alexandrins, héroïques ou grands vers*.

2°. Ceux de dix syllabes, comme :

Du peu qu'il a le sage est sa-tis-fait.

3°. Ceux de huit syllabes, comme :

L'hi-po-cri-te en frau-des fer-ti-le,  
Dès l'en-fan-ce est pé-tri de fard ;  
Il sait co-lo-rer a-vec art  
Le fiel que sa bou-che dis-tille.

4°. Ceux de sept syllabes, comme :

Grand Dieu ! vo-tre main ré-clame  
Les dons que j'en ai re-gus.  
El-le vient cou-per la trame  
Des jours qu'el-le m'a tis-sus.  
Mon der-nier so-leil se lève,  
Et vo-tre souf-flé m'en-lève  
De la ter-re des vi-vans ;  
Com-me la feuil-le sé-chée  
Qui, de sa ti-ge ar-ra-chée,  
De-vient le jou-et des vents.

5°. Ceux de six syllabes, comme :

A soi-même o-di-eux  
Le sot de tout s'ir-ri-te :  
En tous lieux il s'é-vite,  
Et se trouve en tous lieux.

Les vers qui ont moins de six syllabes ne sont guère d'usage que pour la poésie lyrique, et quelques petites pièces badines.

#### DE LA CÉSURE.

La césure est un repos qui coupe le vers en deux parties ou hémistiches.

Ce repos doit être à la sixième syllabe dans les grands vers, et à la quatrième dans ceux de dix syllabes. L'esprit et l'usage de la césure sont très-bien exprimés dans ces vers de Boileau.

Que toujours en vos vers, - le sens coupant les mots,  
Suspende l'hémistiche, - en marque le repos.

Sur les ailes du temps - la tristesse s'envole.

Que le mensonge - un instant vous outrage,  
Tout est en feu - soudain pour l'appuyer ;  
La vérité - perce enfin le nuage,  
Tout est de glace - à vous justifier.

Il n'y a que les vers de douze et de dix syllabes qui aient une césure.

Pour que la césure soit bonne, il faut que le sens autorise le repos ; ainsi dans les vers suivans, la césure est défectueuse.

N'oublions pas les grands - bienfaits de la patrie.

Faites voir un regret - sincère de vos fautes.

Mon père, quoiqu'il eût - la tête des meilleures,

Ne m'a jamais rien fait - apprendre que mes heures.

La césure ne vaut rien dans ces exemples, parce que le sens exige que le mot où est la césure, et celui qui le suit, soient prononcés tout de suite et sans pause.

Mais la césure est bonne dans les vers suivans :

Ses chanoines vermeils - et brillans de santé

S'engraissoient d'une longue - et sainte oisiveté.

Ici la césure est bonne, parce qu'on peut faire une petite pause après un substantif suivi de plusieurs adjectifs, ou après plusieurs adjectifs qui suivent ou qui précèdent un substantif.

**I. REMARQUE.** Le dernier mot du premier hémistiche, peut se terminer par l'e muet, pourvu que le mot suivant commence par une voyelle.

Ami lui dit le chantre encor pâle d'horreur,

N'insulte pas de grâce à ma juste terreur.

Il trépigne de joie, il pleure de tendresse.

**II. REM.** Les pronoms *cela*, *celui*, *celui-là*, etc. et de *qui*, mis pour *dont*, peuvent aussi terminer le premier hémistiché, ou recevoir la césure ; on souffre cette négligence, mais il faut se la permettre rarement ; elle donne toujours aux vers un air prosaïque.

Il n'est fort entre ceux que tu prends par centaines,  
Qui ne puisse arrêter un rimeur six semaines :  
Bénédictions Dieu de qui la puissance est sans bornes.

Les vers de dix et de douze syllabes sont, comme tous les autres, assujétis aux règles dont il nous reste à parler.

#### DE LA RIME.

La Rime est la convenance de deux sons qui terminent deux vers. Quelquefois on exige aussi qu'il y ait convenance d'orthographe, que deux sons semblables soient représentés par les mêmes lettres.

Où me cacher ? fuyons dans la nuit infernale.  
Mais que dis-je ? mon père y tient l'urne fatale.  
Le sort, dit-on, l'a mise en ses sévères mains.  
Minos juge aux enfers tous les pâles humains.

On distingue deux sortes de rimes, la féminine et la masculine. La première est celle des vers qui se terminent par un *e* muet, soit seul, soit suivi d'une *s* ou d'*nt*.

Travaillez à loisir, quelque ordre qui vous presse,  
Et ne vous piquez point d'une folle vitesse.  
Il veut les rappeler, et sa voix les effraie ;  
Ils courent ; tout son corps n'est bientôt qu'une plaie.  
Dans quels ravissements, à votre sort liée,  
Du reste des mortels je vivrais oubliée.  
Un jeune homme, toujours bouillant dans ses caprices,  
Est prêt à recevoir l'impression des vices.  
C'est peu qu'en un ouvrage où les fautes fourmillent,  
Des traits d'esprit semés de temps en temps pétillent.

Ces vers féminins ont une syllabe de plus que les masculins : mais comme l'*e* muet sonne faiblement dans la syllabe qui termine le vers, cette syllabe est comptée pour rien.

La rime masculine est celle qui finit par une autre lettre que l'*e* muet, ou seul, ou suivi d'une *s*, ou enfin d'*nt*.

Chaque vertu devient une divinité ;  
Minerve est la prudence, et Vénus la beauté.  
Le travail est souvent le père du plaisir ;  
Je plains l'homme accablé du poids de son loisir.

**REMARQUE.** La syllabe *oient* ou *aient*, qui se trouve dans les imparfaits et les conditionnels des verbes, forme

une rime masculine, parce que cette syllabe a le son de l'*e* ouvert. Ainsi les vers suivans sont masculins.

Aux accords d'Amphion les pierres se mouvoient,  
Et sur les murs Thébains en ordre s'élevoient.

#### RIMES RICHES ET SUFFISANTES.

Les rimes masculines et féminines se divisent en *riches* et en *suffisantes*.

I. La rime riche est formée de deux sons parfaitement semblables, et souvent représentés par les mêmes lettres.

Indomptable Taureau, Dragon impétueux,  
Sa croupe se recourbe en replis tortueux.  
De rage et de douleur le monstre bondissant  
Vient aux pieds des chevaux tomber en mugissant.  
Au moment que je parle, ah, mortelle pensée !  
Ils bravent la fureur d'une amante insensée.

II. La rime suffisante est celle qui n'a pas une convenance aussi exacte de sons et d'orthographe.

Hélas ! Dieux tout-puissans, que nos pleurs vous apaisent.  
Que ces vains ornemens, que ces voiles me pèsent !  
Quelle importune main, en formant tous ces nœuds,  
A pris soin sur mon front d'assembler mes cheveux ?

III. Dans la rime masculine, on n'a guère égard en général, qu'au dernier son des mots : ainsi *maison* rime avec *poison* ; *piété* avec *pureté* ; *procès* avec *succès*.

IV. Mais dans la rime féminine, on fait une attention particulière au son de l'avant dernière syllabe, parce que celui de la dernière n'est ni assez plein, ni assez marqué, pour produire une conformité de son sensible et agréable à l'oreille. Ainsi *mère* et *mâre*, *audace* et *justice*, *estime* et *diadème* ne rimeroient pas ensemble, quoique ces mots se terminent par la même syllabe *re*, *ce*, *me*.

Mais *visible* et *sensible*, *monde* et *profonde*, *justice* et *précipice*, *usage* et *partage*, peuvent rimer ensemble, parce que ces mots ont une convenance de sons dans les avant-dernières syllabes.

V. Comme la convenance de sons est essentielle à la rime, on ne sauroit bien faire rimer les syllabes brèves avec les longues, les *l* mouillées avec les *l* non mouillées, etc. comme *maître* et *mètre* ; *joûte* et *route* ; *jeune* (qui n'est pas vieux) et *jeûne* (abstinence) ; la *fil*le et la *fi*le ; *péril* et *puéril*, etc. Ainsi J. B. Rousseau

a manqué à son exactitude ordinaire, quand il disoit à son ami ;

Et sur ce bord émaillé  
Où Neuilli borde la Seine,  
Reviens au vin d'Auvil  
Mêler les eaux d'Hypocrène.

VI. L'e fermé, l'i et l'u, soit seuls, soit suivis des consonnes *l, s, t* ou *z*, ne forment pas de bonnes rimes, si dans les deux syllabes rimantes ils ne sont précédés de la même consonne. Ainsi *bonté* et *donné*, *vertus* et *reçus*, *amis* et *avis*, *cultivez* et *portez*, ne rimeroient pas bien.

Choisissez des amis de qui la piété  
Vous soit un sûr garant de leur fidélité.  
Ami droit et sincère on doit à ses amis  
Garder fidèlement ce qu'on leur a promis.

VII. L'observation précédente a lieu pour l'a dans les verbes : il *donna* et il *aima*, il *porta* et il *rêva*, il *immola* et il *saura*, ne rimeroient pas ensemble. Et en général elle est d'usage pour tous les sons communs à un grand nombre de mots. Ainsi les sons *ant* ou *ent*, *eu* et *on* ne riment bien qu'autant qu'ils sont précédés des mêmes lettres, comme *puissant*, *chassant* ; *agrément*, *régiment* ; *passion*, *mission* ; *ambitieux*, *religieux* ; *vieux*, *mieux*.

Mais les mots suivans ne rimeroient pas bien ensemble : *puissant*, *chancelant* ; *raison*, *passion* ; *heureux*, *religieux*, etc.

VIII. Quand la rime est formée par des sons pleins, comme *ar*, *as*, *al*, *or*, *os*, *ot*, *er*, *ès*, *et*, *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *ou* ; par *an*, *am*, *en*, *em*, *ion*, *oin* ; en un mot par des voyelles précédées d'une ou de plusieurs consonnes, alors on n'exige pas que la lettre qui précède soit la même dans les mots qu'on veut faire rimer. Par exemple, *embarras* et *combats*, *gros* et *sots*, *progrès* et *succès*, *mer* et *enfer*, *ouvert* et *souffert*, *soupir* et *désir*, *espoir* et *devoir*, *jamais* et *parfaits*, *pain* et *main*, *nuit* et *conduit*, *témoins* et *besoins*, *soutiens* et *conviens*, et autres semblables peuvent rimer ensemble.

IX. Un mot en *e*, *x*, ou *z*, ne peut rimer qu'avec un mot terminé par l'une de ces trois consonnes. Ainsi *admirable* et *tables*, *risible* et *plausibles*, le *secours* et le *jour*, la *vanité* et vous *méritez*, la *foi* et les *lois*, le *courageux* et le *genou*, etc. ne rimeraient pas bien ensemble.

Mais *lais* et *Rois*, *courroux* et *tous*, *célestes* et *tu détestes*, *vanités* et *vous méditez*, *clefs* et *vous raclez*, le *discours* et le *cours*, formeront de bonnes rimes.

X. Dans les verbes *ois* et *oit*, ayant le son de l'e ouvert, ne riment guère qu'avec un autre verbe. Quoique j'*aimois* et j'*amais*, j'*donnois* et j'*harnois*, j'*plaçois* et j'*lacet*, j'*manquois* et j'*banquet*, j'*déplaçois* et les *succès*, se terminent par le même son, l'usage ordinaire est de ne les pas faire rimer ensemble.

XI. Les terminaisons *ent*, *oient* ou *aient*, ne doivent rimer qu'avec des verbes qui aient les mêmes terminaisons : ils *privent*, ils *écrivent* ; ils *lurent*, ils *burent* ; qu'ils *surfassent*, qu'ils *effacent* ; etc. mais ils *méprisent* ne rimeront pas bien avec *entreprise* ; la *surface* avec *ils surpassent*.

XII. La convenance des sons et d'orthographe ne peut autoriser la rime du mot avec lui-même, d'un simple avec son composé, ni même de deux mots dérivés de la même racine, quand ils se ressemblent trop pour la signification. Ainsi la rime est défectueuse dans ces vers :

Je connois trop les Grande, dans le malheur amis,  
Ingrats dans la fortune, et bientôt ennemis.

Elle est tout-à-fait vicieuse dans ceux-ci :

Les chefs et les soldats ne se connoissent plus ;  
L'un ne peut commander, l'autre n'obéit plus.

XIII. Mais deux mots entièrement semblables par le son et l'orthographe riment bien ensemble, lorsqu'ils ont des significations différentes. Les dérivés sont dans le même cas, s'ils n'ont plus un rapport sensible pour le sens.

Prends-moi le bon parti, laisse-là tous les *liures* :  
Cent francs au denier cinq, combien font-ils ? vingt *liures*.  
Nobles, souvenez-vous qu'une naissance *illustre*  
Des sentimens du cœur reçoit son plus beau *lustre*.  
Dieu punit les forfaits que les rois ont *commis*,  
Ceux qu'ils n'ont point vengés, et ceux qu'ils ont *permis*.

XIV. Les deux hémistiches d'un vers ne doivent pas rimer ensemble, ni même avoir une convenance de sons, comme :

Il ne tiendra qu'à toi de partir avec moi.  
Aux Saumaises futures préparer des tortures.



**XV. Le dernier hémistiche d'un vers ne doit pas non plus rimer avec le premier du vers précédent ou du vers suivant.**

Il faut, pour les avoir, employer tous vos *soins* ;  
Ils sont à moi, du *moins* tout autant qu'à mon frère.

Un fiacre, me couvrant d'un déluge de boue  
Contre le mur *voisin* m'écrase de sa roue ;  
Et, voulant me sauver, des porteurs *inhumains*  
De leur maudit bâton me donnent dans les reins.

**XVI. Il faut encore éviter la rime dans les premiers hémistiches de deux vers qui se suivent.**

Sinon demain *matin*, si vous le trouvez bon,  
Je mettrai de *ma main* le feu dans la maison.

Quelquefois cependant la rime des premiers hémistiches n'a rien de choquant ; c'est lorsqu'elle se fait par la répétition d'une pensée, d'une expression qu'on reproduit à dessein, pour fixer davantage l'attention du lecteur ; comme :

Qui cherche *vraiment Dieu*, dans lui seul se repose ;  
Et qui craint *vraiment Dieu*, ne craint rien autre chose.

*Des termes que le vers exclut.*

I. Les bons Poètes rejettent avec soin tous les termes durs, ou difficiles à prononcer, ou bas et prosaïques. Rarement ils se servent des conjonctions que les orateurs emploient souvent pour lier et arrondir leurs périodes ; telles que *c'est pourquoi, parce que, pourvu que, puisque, de manière, de façon que, de sorte que ou en sorte que, outre, d'ailleurs, en effet*, etc.

Il est un heureux choix de mots harmonieux ;  
Fuyez des mauvais sons le concours odieux.  
Le vers le mieux rempli, la plus noble pensée,  
Ne peut plaire à l'esprit, quand l'oreille est blessée.

II. Un mot terminé par une autre voyelle que l'e muet, ne peut être suivi d'un mot qui commence aussi par une voyelle ou une h muette : ce seroit un *hiatus*.

Gardez qu'une voyelle à courir trop hâtée,  
Ne soit d'une voyelle en son chemin heurtée.

Ainsi les phrases suivantes ne formeroient pas de vers :

Que l'aimable vertu a peu d'adorateurs !  
Evitez le souci, et fuyez la colère.

III. Comme la conjonction *et* a toujours le son de l'*e* fermé, elle ne sauroit non plus dans le vers être suivie d'une voyelle. On ne pourroit pas dire en vers :

Qui sert *et* aime Dieu, possède toutes choses.

Mais on dira bien :

Qui connoit et sert Dieu, possède toutes choses.

IV. Les voyelles nasales qui, dans la prononciation, ne doivent pas être liées avec le mot suivant, ne peuvent avec grâce être suivies d'un mot qui commence par une voyelle. Ainsi la rencontre des voyelles nasales et des voyelles simples est désagréable dans ce vers :

Un grand *nom* est un poids difficile à porter.

Ah ! j'attendrai long-temps, la nuit est *loin* encore.

Cependant cette rencontre peut se souffrir, quand la prononciation permet de pratiquer un petit repos entre le mot qui finit par un son nasal, et le mot qui commence par une voyelle ; comme dans ce vers de l'*Athalie* de Racine :

Celui qui met un *frein* à la fureur des flots,

Sait aussi des méchans arrêter les complots.

V. L'*e* muet final et précédé d'une voyelle, comme dans *donnée, aimée, Asie, envie, la paie, la joie, la proie, la rue, entrevue*, etc. ne peut entrer dans le corps du vers qu'au moyen de l'élision ; ainsi les vers suivants sont mal construits :

Au travers du Soleil, ma *vue* s'éblouit.

Ils vous *louent* tout haut et vous *jouent* tout bas.

Il *avoue* sa faute et demande pardon.

Mais ceux-ci sont réguliers à cause de l'élision,

La *joie* est naturelle aux âmes innocentes.

A quels mortels regrets ma *vie* est réservée !

VI. L'*e* muet, dans le corps du mot et précédé d'une voyelle, est compté pour rien dans la prononciation ; souvent même on ne l'écrit pas. Il *agrèra, criera, louera, reniement, dévouement*, etc. ne sont pas plus de syllabes que *agréra, crîra, louîra, renîment, dévouîment*.

#### ENJAMBEMENT DES VERS.

Les vers n'ont ni grâce ni harmonie, quand on rejette au commencement du second vers des mots qui dépendent nécessairement de ce qui se trouve à la fin du premier.

Quel que soit votre ami, sachez que mutuelle  
Doit être l'amitié ; même ardeur, même zèle.  
Il n'est donc point d'amis, pour la dernière fois  
Je le répète encor : peu connoissent les lois  
D'une vraie amitié.

Dans le premier vers, *mutuelle* dépend nécessairement de ces mots *doit être l'amitié*.

Dans les derniers, ces mots *d'une vraie amitié* sont dépendans de ceux-ci, *les lois*, et l'on ne peut les séparer dans la prononciation.

Ces enjambemens sont proscrits dans la haute poésie, mais ils se tolèrent dans les fables et dans les autres pièces de style familier.

Si néanmoins la dépendance d'un vers s'étendoit jusqu'à la fin du suivant, en sorte qu'à la fin du premier il y eût un petit repos, l'harmonie loin d'être blessée n'en seroit que plus sensible.

Là gît la sombre envie, à l'œil timide et louche,  
Versant sur des lauriers les poisons de sa bouche.  
Ce malheureux combat ne fit qu'approfondir  
L'abîme dont Valois vouloit en vain sortir.—VOLT.

### *Des licences qu'on se permet dans les Vers.*

Ces licences consistent dans certaines dispositions de mots, dans l'emploi de plusieurs termes dont la prose n'oseroit se servir, dans le retranchement d'une lettre.

#### DES TRANSPOSITIONS.

I. On place avec grâce les régimes composés avant les mots et les verbes dont ils dépendent.

*À la Religion* soyez toujours fidèle,  
Les mœurs et la vertu ne sauvent point sans elle.  
C'est Dieu qui *du néant* a tiré l'univers ;  
C'est lui qui *sur la terre* a répandu les mers.  
Sans Dieu rien n'eût été,  
Et lui seul *des mortels* fait la félicité.  
*À vous former le cœur* appliquez-vous sans cesse.

II. On place entre l'auxiliaire et le participe, entre le verbe et son régime, des mots qui n'y seroient pas soufferts en prose.

Un vieillard vénérable avoit, *loin de la Cour*,  
Cherché la douce paix dans un obscur séjour :  
Dieu fit *dans ce désert* descendre la sagesse.

Les transpositions, quand elles sont naturelles, et qu'elles n'embarrassent pas le sens de la phrase, donnent de la grâce et de la noblesse à la poésie ; mais elles ne valent rien, lorsqu'elles rendent le vers dur, ou qu'elles obscurcissent la pensée, comme dans les vers suivans :

Quoi ! voit-on revêtu de l'étole sacrée  
Le prêtre de l'autel s'arrêter à l'entrée ?  
Craignez de votre orgueil de vous rendre la dupe.  
Que toujours la fierté, l'honneur, la bienséance  
De cette folle ardeur s'oppose à la naissance.

### *Des mots propres à la Poésie.*

La poésie se sert en général des mêmes mots que la prose ; cependant il y a quelques expressions que les Poètes emploient heureusement, et qui seroient dé placées dans la prose. Telles sont *antique* pour *ancien* : *coursier* pour *cheval* : *l'Eternel*, *le Très-Haut*, *le Tout-Puissant* pour *Dieu* : *le flanc* pour *le sein*, *le ventre* : *le glaive* pour *l'épée* : *les humains*, *les mortels* ; *la race de Japet* pour *les hommes* : *hymen* ou *hyménée* pour *mariage* : *espoir* pour *espérance* : *le penser* pour *la pensée* : *jadis* pour *autrefois* : *naguère* ou *naguères* pour *il n'y a pas long-temps* : *labeur* pour *travail* : *repentance* pour *repentir* : *soudain* pour *aussitôt* : *ombre éternelle*, *sombres bords* pour *l'enfer*, etc.

Où sont, Dieu de Jacob, tes antiques bontés ?  
On fait cas d'un coursier, qui, fier et plein de cœur,  
Fait paroître en courant sa bouillante vigueur.  
L'Eternel en ses mains tient seul nos destinées.  
Célébrons dans nos chants la gloire du Très-haut.  
Si quelque audacieux embrasse sa querelle,  
Qu'à la fureur du glaive on le livre avec elle.  
Souvent d'un faux espoir un amant est nourri.  
Les Dieux m'en sont témoins, ces Dieux qui dans mon flanc  
Ont allumé le feu fatal à tout mon sang,  
Ces Dieux qui se sont fait une gloire cruelle  
De séduire le cœur d'une foible mortelle.  
Soumise à mon époux, et cachant mes ennuis,  
De son fatal hymen je cultivois les fruits.

On n'aime plus comme on aimoit jadis.  
Va dans l'ombre éternelle, ombre pleine d'envie ;  
Et ne te mêle plus de censurer ma vie.

La lecture des bons Poètes fournira une foule d'autres expressions propres à la poésie.

Nous écrivons en prose *je crois, je vois, je dis, je sais, je vis, j'avertis*, etc. Les Poètes, selon le besoin, emploient ou retranchent l's dans ces mots. Ils écrivent de même *jusque* ou *jusques*, *encore* ou *encor*, *grâce au Ciel* ou *grâces au Ciel*. Ils emploient aussi *alors que*, pour *lorsque*, *cependant que* pour *pendant que*, *avecque* pour *avec*, etc.

Les bons Poètes se servent rarement de la plupart de ces dernières licences ; et ceux qui se livrent à la poésie ne doivent pas oublier le précepte de Boileau.

Sur tout qu'en vos écrits la langue révérée,  
 Dans vos plus grands excès vous soit toujours sacrée ;  
 Envain vous me frappez d'un son mélodieux,  
 Si le terme est impropre ou le tour vicieux ;  
 Mon esprit n'admet point un pompeux barbarisme,  
 Ni d'un vers ampoulé l'orgueilleux solécisme.  
 Sans la langue, en un mot, l'auteur le plus divin,  
 Est toujours, quoiqu'il fasse, un méchant écrivain.

#### DE L'ARRANGEMENT DES VERS ENTR'EUX.

Dans les différentes manières dont les vers doivent être arrangés, il faut considérer la rime et le nombre des syllabes.

Le nombre des syllabes est arbitraire dans les pièces libres et dans la poésie lyrique ; mais il est déterminé dans les autres pièces sérieuses, qui sont la plupart écrites en vers de douze syllabes. Ainsi dans le Poème épique, l'Eglogue, l'Elégie, la Satyre, l'Epître, et dans la Tragédie et la haute Comédie, il est d'usage de n'employer que le vers Alexandrin.

Quant à la rime, deux vers masculins peuvent être suivis de deux vers féminins, *et vice versa* ; ou bien un vers masculin est suivi d'un ou de deux féminins, et un vers féminin d'un ou de deux masculins.

On appelle vers à *rimes plates* ceux qui sont disposés de la première façon, comme les suivans.

De figures sans nombre, égayez votre ouvrage ;  
 Que tout y fasse aux yeux une riante image :  
 On peut être à la fois et pompeux et plaisant,  
 Et je hais un sublime ennuyeux, languissant.  
 Un poème excellent où tout marche et se suit,  
 N'est pas de ces travaux qu'un caprice produit :  
 Il veut du temps, des soins ; et ce pénible ouvrage  
 Jamais d'un écolier ne fut l'apprentissage.

On appelle vers à *rimes croisées* ceux qui sont ordonnés de la seconde manière, comme ceux-ci dans lesquels Rousseau dit en parlant de Circé furieuse :

Sa voix redoutable  
 Trouble les enfers,  
 Un bruit formidable  
 Gronde dans les airs,  
 Un voile effroyable  
 Couvre l'Univers.

Mais quand on n'observe d'autre règle que de ne pas mettre de suite plus de deux vers masculins ou féminins, et qu'on fait suivre un vers masculin ou féminin d'un ou de deux vers d'une rime différente, alors ils s'appellent vers à *rimes mêlées*, comme ceux-ci :

Ah ! si d'une pauvreté dure  
 Nous cherchons à nous affranchir,  
 Rapprochons-nous de la nature,  
 Qui seule peut nous enrichir.  
 Forçons de funestes obstacles ;  
 Réservons pour nos tabernacles  
 Cet or, ces rubis, ces métaux ;  
 Ou dans le sein des mers avides  
 Jetons ces richesses perfides,  
 L'unique aliment de nos maux.

Lorsque les vers sont en rimes plates, ils ont ordinairement le même nombre de syllabes. Mais lorsqu'ils sont à rimes croisées ou à rimes mêlées souvent ils ont une mesure inégale.

Dans les vers à rimes plates, c'est un défaut de faire revenir deux rimes masculines ou féminines déjà employées, de manière qu'elles ne soient séparées de deux autres semblables que par deux rimes d'une espèce différente, comme dans cet exemple :

Soudain Potier se lève et demande audience :  
 Chacun, à son aspect, garde un profond silence.  
 Dans ce temps malheureux par le crime infecté,  
 Potier fut toujours juste, et pourtant respecté.  
 Souvent on l'avoit vu, par sa mâle éloquence,  
 De leurs emportemens réprimer la licence,  
 Et, conservant sur eux sa vieille autorité,  
 Leur montrer la justice avec impunité,

L'oreille est aussi choquée par la convenance de sons dans les rimes masculines et féminines qui se suivent, comme dans ces vers, d'ailleurs pleins de belles images.

Tel des antres du Nord échappés sur la terre,  
Précédés par les vents, et suivis du tonnerre,  
D'un tourbillon de poudre obscurcissant les airs,  
Les orages foudroyants parcourent l'Univers.

On compose à rimes plates les grands poèmes, tels que l'Épopée, la Tragédie, la Comédie, l'Églogue, l'Élégie, la Satyre, l'Épître ; à rimes croisées, l'Ode, le Sonnet, le Rondeau ; et à rimes mêlées, les Stances, l'Épigramme, les Fables, les Madrigaux, les Chansons.

Il n'y a d'autres règles à observer dans les grands poèmes pour la distribution des rimes, que d'éviter la consonance, et de ranger les vers masculins et féminins deux à deux les uns après les autres. Nous ne nous étendons donc pas davantage sur cet article par rapport à l'Épopée, à la Tragédie, etc. Nous ne dirons rien non plus des autres règles de ces poèmes. Ces dissertations nous mèneraient trop loin. Consultez l'Art poétique de Boileau, et les meilleures poétiques anciennes et modernes.

Mais l'ordonnance des vers dans plusieurs petits poèmes a des règles fixes et particulières. Ce sera le sujet des articles suivans.

#### DES STANCES.

Une *Stance* est un certain nombre de vers, après lesquels le sens est fini. Dans une Ode elle s'appelle *Strophe*.

Une stance n'a pas ordinairement moins de quatre vers, ni plus de dix. La mesure des vers y est arbitraire ; ils peuvent être ou tous grands ou tous petits, ou bien mêlés les uns avec les autres.

Les stances sont appelées *régulières*, lorsqu'elles ont un même nombre de vers, un même mélange de rimes, et que les grands et les petits vers y sont également distribués. Elles sont appelées *irrégulières*, lorsqu'elles n'ont pas toutes ces convenances.

Pour la perfection des stances, il est nécessaire,  
1°. Que le sens finisse avec le dernier vers de chacune.

2°. Que le dernier vers d'une stance ne rime pas avec le premier de la suivante.

3°. Que les stances d'une même pièce commencent et finissent par des rimes de même nature ; c'est-à-dire, que si le premier vers d'une stance finit par une rime masculine, les premiers vers des strophes suivantes doivent également être masculins. Il est cependant bon de remarquer que quoiqu'en général il ne soit pas permis de mettre de suite quatre rimes de même espèce, cependant plusieurs auteurs l'ont fait d'une stance à l'autre, parce qu'ils ont regardé chaque stance d'une pièce comme isolée, et comme indépendante de celle qui suit. Mais nous croyons que cette licence ne peut être tolérée que dans les chansons.

Si une stance est seule, elle prend un nom particulier, du nombre de vers dont elle est composée. Elle s'appelle *Quatrain*, si elle en a quatre ; *Sixain*, si elle en a six ; *Dixain*, si elle en a dix. Et quelquefois à raison du sujet, c'est une *Epigramme*, un *Madrigal*. On appeloit autrefois *Octave* une stance de huit vers.

On voit que toutes ces stances sont du nombre pair. Il y en a aussi du nombre impair, de cinq, de sept et de neuf vers.

## RÈGLES POUR LES STANCES DE NOMBRE PAIR.

### 1. *Stances de quatre vers.*

Ces stances sont plusieurs quatrains joints ensemble, et liés par un sens qui dure jusqu'à la fin de la pièce. Entre le premier vers masculin ou féminin, et celui qui lui répond, on met un ou deux vers d'une rime différente, comme dans ces vers où l'Amitié fait elle-même son portrait.

J'ai le visage long, et la mine naïve,

Je suis sans finesse et sans art.

Mon teint est fort uni, ma couleur assez vive,

Et je ne mets jamais de fard.

Mon abord est civil ; j'ai la bouche riante,

Et mes yeux ont mille douceurs :

Mais quoique je sois belle, agréable et charmante,

Je règle sur bien peu de cœurs.



On me proteste assez, et presque tous les hommes  
 Se vantent de suivre mes lois :  
 Mais que j'en connois peu dans le siècle où nous sommes,  
 Dont le cœur réponde à ma voix !  
 Ceux que je fais aimer d'une flamme fidèle,  
 Me sont l'objet de tous leurs soins ;  
 Et quoique je vieillisse, ils me trouvent fort belle,  
 Et ne m'en estiment pas moins.  
 On m'accuse pourtant d'aimer trop à paroître  
 Où l'on voit la prospérité ;  
 Cependant il est vrai qu'on ne me peut connoître  
 Qu'au milieu de l'adversité.

### Autre exemple :

Dans ce salon pacifique  
 Où président les neuf sœurs,  
 Un loisir philosophique  
 T'offre encor d'autres douceurs.  
 Là, nous trouverons sans peine  
 Avec toi, le verre en main,  
 L'homme après qui Diogène  
 Courut si long-temps en vain.  
 Et dans la douce allégresse  
 Dont tu sais nous abreuver,  
 Nous puiserons la sagesse  
 Qu'il chercha sans la trouver.—J. B. ROUSSEAU.

**REMARQUE.** Les véritables quatrains n'ont aucune liaison pour le sens, et la morale en est ordinairement la matière. Exemple :

Ne demandez à Dieu ni gloire, ni richesse,  
 Ni ces biens dont l'éclat rend le peuple étonné :  
 Mais pour bien commander, demandez la sagesse ;  
 Avec un don si saint tout vous sera donné.  
 Ecoutez et lisez la céleste parole,  
 Que, dans les livres saints, Dieu nous donne pour loi.  
 La politique humaine au prix d'elle est frivole,  
 Et forme plus souvent un tyran qu'un bon Roi.

### II. *Stances de six vers.*

Elles sont composées d'un quatrain et de deux vers d'une même rime, qui se mettent au commencement ou à la fin. D'ailleurs les vers d'un quatrain se mêlent de la même manière que ci-dessus.

Si les deux vers d'une même rime sont au commencement, alors à la fin du troisième, on met ordinairement un repos, et le sens ne doit pas s'étendre jusqu'au qua-

trième. Ce repos donne beaucoup de grâce et d'harmonie à cette sorte de stances.

On peut voir, par les exemples suivans, que ce repos peut être plus ou moins marqué, et qu'il n'est pas rigoureusement exigé dans les sixains.

Ce n'est donc point assez que ce peuple perfidé,  
De la sainte cité profanateur stupide,  
Ait dans tout l'Orient porté ses étendards ;  
Et paisible tyran de la Grèce abattue,  
Partage à notre vne  
La plus belle moitié du trône des Césars.  
Des veilles, des travaux un foible cœur s'étonne.  
Apprenons toutefois, que le fils de Latone,  
Dont nous suivons la cour,  
Ne nous vend qu'à ce prix ces traits de vive flamme  
Et ces ailes de feu qui ravissent une âme  
Au céleste séjour.

La place de ce repos varie, et est tantôt après le second, tantôt après le quatrième vers, dans les sixains où les deux vers d'une même rime sont à la fin de la strophe, comme dans les stances suivantes.

Seigneur, dans ton temple adorable,  
Quel mortel est digne d'entrer ?  
Qui pourra, grand Dieu pénétrer  
Ce sanctuaire impénétrable,  
Où tes saints inclinés, d'un œil respectueux,  
Contemplant de ton front l'éclat majestueux ?

Ce sera celui qui du vice  
Evite le sentier impur,  
Qui marche d'un pas ferme et sûr,  
Dans le chemin de la justice ;  
- Attentif et fidèle à distinguer sa voix,  
Intrépide et sévère à pratiquer ses loix ;

Celui devant qui le superbe,  
Enfê d'une vaine splendeur,  
Paroît plus bas dans sa grandeur  
Que l'insecte caché sous l'herbe ;  
Qui bravant du méchant le faste couronné,  
Honore la vertu du juste infortuné.

### III. *Stances de huit vers.*

Ces stances ne sont ordinairement que deux quatrains joints ensemble. Le sens doit finir après le premier ;

et les vers de tous les deux s'entrelacent, comme nous l'avons déjà dit. Exemple :

Tel en un sacré vallon,  
 Sur le bord d'une onde pure,  
 Croît à l'abri de l'Aquilon  
 Un jeune lys, l'amour de la nature.  
 Loin du monde élevé, de tous les dons des Cieux  
 Il est orné dès sa naissance ;  
 Et du méchant l'abord contagieux  
 N'altère point son innocence.

RACINE, *chœurs d'Athalie*.

Si quelque jour étant ivre  
 La mort arrêtoit mes pas,  
 Je ne voudrois pas revivre  
 Après un si doux trépas :  
 Je m'en irois dans l'Averne  
 Faire enivrer Alec-ton,  
 Et bâtir une taverne  
 Dans le manoir de Pluton.—MAITRE ADAM.

Ces stances peuvent aussi commencer par deux vers sur une même rime, et les six autres sont sur des rimes croisées. Quelquefois aussi ces stances n'ont qu'un sixain sur deux ou trois rimes, après quoi viennent deux vers de même rime.

Ces mélanges de rime peuvent aisément se concevoir, sans qu'il soit nécessaire d'en citer des exemples ; d'ailleurs ils ne sont pas communs.

#### IV. *Stances de dix vers.*

Les stances de dix vers ne sont autre chose qu'un quatrain et un sixain, dont les vers s'entremêlent selon les règles ordinaires. Elles tirent leur harmonie d'un premier repos placé à la fin du quatrain, et d'un second après le septième vers. Ex.

C'est un arrêt du Ciel, il faut que l'homme meure ;  
 Tel est son partage et son sort :  
 Rien n'est plus certain que la mort,  
 Et rien plus incertain que cette dernière heure.  
 Heureuse incertitude, utile obscurité,  
 Par où ta divine bonté  
 A veiller, à prier, sans cesse nous convie !  
 Que ne pouvons-nous point avec un tel secours,  
 Qui nous fait regarder tous les jours de la vie  
 Comme le dernier de nos jours !

Les Cieux instruisent la terre  
 A révéler leur auteur ;  
 Tout ce que leur globe enserre,  
 Célèbre un Dieu Créateur.  
 Quel plus sublime cantique  
 Que ce concert magnifique  
 De tous les célestes corps !  
 Quelle grandeur infinie !  
 Quelle divine harmonie  
 Résulte de leurs accords !

### RÈGLES POUR LES STANCES DE NOMBRE IMPAIR.

Les stances de nombre impair ont toutes, trois vers sur une même rime. L'ordonnance des vers y est d'ailleurs arbitraire, excepté qu'on ne peut mettre que deux rimes semblables de suite, et que le quatrain par lequel commencent les stances de sept ou de neuf vers, doit être terminé par un repos.

#### *Stances de cinq vers.*

O rives du Jourdain ! ô champs aimés des Cieux !  
 Sacrés monts, fertiles vallées,  
 Par cent miracles signalées,  
 Du doux pays de nos ayeux  
 Serons-nous toujours exilées ?

Pardonne, Dieu puissant, pardonne à ma faiblesse,  
 A l'aspect des méchans, confus, épouvanté,  
 Le trouble m'a saisi, mes pas ont hésité ;  
 Mon zèle m'a trahi, Seigneur, je le confesse,  
 En voyant leur prospérité.

#### *Stances de sept vers.*

Si la loi du Seigneur vous touche,  
 Si le mensonge vous fait peur,  
 Si la justice en votre cœur  
 Règne aussi bien qu'en votre bouche ;  
 Parlez, fils des hommes, pourquoi  
 Faut-il qu'une haine farouche  
 Préside aux jugemens que vous lancez sur moi ?

#### *Stance de neuf vers.*

Quel rempart, quelle autre barrière  
 Pourra défendre l'innocent  
 Contre la fraude meurtrière  
 De l'impie adroit et puissant ?  
 Sa langue aux seintes préparée,

Ressemblé à la flèche acérée  
 Qui part et frappe en un moment  
 C'est un feu léger dans l'entrée,  
 Que suit un long embrasement.

# DU SONNET.

## Boileau feint qu'Apollon,

Voulant pousser à bout tous les rimeurs françois,  
 Inventa du Sonnet les rigoureuses lois,  
 Voulut qu'en deux quatrains de mesure pareille,  
 La rime avec deux sons frappât huit fois l'oreille ;  
 Et qu'ensuite six vers artistement rangés,  
 Fussent en deux tercets par le sens partagés.  
 Sur-tout de ce poème il bannit la licence,  
 Défendit qu'un vers foible y pût jamais entrer,  
 Et qu'un mot déjà mis osât s'y remonter.  
 Du reste il l'enrichit d'une beauté suprême :  
 Un Sonnet sans défaut vaut seul un long Poème.

Le Sonnet est composé de quatorze vers d'une mesure égale, et pour l'ordinaire de douze syllabes ; ces vers sont partagés en deux quatrains et un sixain.

Les rimes masculines et féminines des deux quatrains sont semblables, et on les entremêle dans l'un, de la même manière que dans l'autre.

Le sixain se coupe en deux tercets, c'est-à-dire, en deux stances de trois vers. Ces tercets commencent l'un et l'autre par deux rimes semblables, en sorte que le troisième vers du premier, rime avec le troisième du second.

Il faut éviter que le mélange des rimes, dans les quatre derniers vers du sixain, soit le même que dans les quatrains.

Le second vers de chaque quatrain doit avoir un repos. Les deux quatrains et les deux tercets doivent être terminés chacun par un repos encore plus grand.

D'ailleurs tout doit être noble dans ce Poème, pensées, style, élocution. Point de répétitions, point de redondance. La force et l'élévation en sont les principaux caractères.

On voit cependant des Sonnets, dont les sujets ne sont pas sublimes ; le style alors en est médiocre, et doit l'être. Voici deux exemples du Sonnet. Le pre-

**mier dans le genre simple, exprime la nature même du Sonnet.**

Doris, qui sait qu'aux vers quelquefois je me plais,  
Me demande un Sonnet et je m'en désespère.  
Quatorze vers grand Dieu, le moyen de les faire !  
En voilà cependant déjà quatre de faits.  
Je ne pouvais d'abord trouver de rime, mais  
En faisant, on apprend à se tirer d'affaire.  
Poursuivons ; les quatrains ne m'étonneront guère,  
Si du premier tercet je puis faire les frais.  
Je commence au hasard, et si je ne m'abuse,  
Je n'ai pas commencé sans l'aven de ma Muse,  
Puisqu'en si peu de temps je m'en tire si net.  
J'entame le second, et ma joie est extrême ;  
Car des vers commandés j'achève le treizième.  
Comptez s'ils sont quatorze, et voilà le Sonnet.

#### AUTRE SONNET.

Grand Dieu tes jugemens sont remplis d'équité :  
Toujours tu prends plaisir à nous être propice ;  
Mais j'ai tant fait de mal, que jamais ta bonté  
Ne me pardonnera qu'en blessant ta justice.  
Oui, Seigneur, la grandeur de mon impiété  
Ne laisse à ton pouvoir que le choix du supplice.  
Ton intérêt s'oppose à ma félicité,  
Et ta clémence même attend que je périsse.  
Contente ton désir, puisqu'il t'est glorieux ;  
Offense-toi des pleurs qui coulent de mes yeux :  
Tonne, frappe, il est temps, rends-moi guerre pour guerre.  
J'adore, en périssant, la raison qui t'aigrit :  
Mais dessus quel endroit tombera ton tonnerre  
Qui ne soit tout couvert du sang de Jésus-Christ.

#### DU RONDEAU.

Le Rondeau né Gaulois a la naïveté.

Tel est le caractère de ce petit poème. Toutes sortes de vers y sont propres, excepté les Alexandrins qui ont trop de gravité. Il y entre treize vers de même mesure, sur deux rimes.

On peut faire dans le Rondeau ce qu'on ne fait point dans les autres Poèmes. Comme il ne doit y avoir dans les huit derniers vers que trois rimes féminines, on peut mettre de suite sur trois rimes masculines le cinquième, le sixième et le septième. Mais on fait rarement ce mélange dans les cinq derniers vers.

Le Rondeau a deux repos nécessaires, l'un après le cinquième vers, l'autre après le refrain.

Le refrain qui se place après le huitième vers, et à la fin de la pièce, n'est autre chose que la répétition d'un ou de plusieurs mots du premier vers. Il doit avoir un sens lié avec ce qui précède, et être amené délicatement. Le premier des deux Rondeaux qui suivent, explique les règles du poème.

*Ma foi, c'est fait de moi, car Isabeau  
M'a conjuré de lui faire un Rondeau :  
Cela me met en une peine extrême.  
Quoi treize vers, huit en eau, cinq en éme ! (des rimes fautes)  
Je lui ferois aussi-tôt un bateau.  
En voilà cinq pourtant en un monceau :  
Faisons-en huit en invoquant Brodeau,  
Et puis mettons par quelque stratagème,  
Ma foi, c'est fait.*

Si je pouvois encor de mon cerveau  
Tirer cinq vers, l'ouvrage seroit beau :  
Mais cependant me voilà dans l'onzième,  
Et si je crois que je fais le douzième :  
En voilà treize ajustés au niveau.  
*Ma foi, c'est fait.*

#### AUTRE RONDEAU.

*Le bel esprit, au siècle de Marot,  
Des dons du Ciel passoit pour le gros lot ;  
Des grands seigneurs il donnoit accointance,  
Menoit par fois à noble jouissance,  
Et qui plus est sesoit bouillir le pot.  
Or est passé ce temps où d'un bon mot,  
Stance ou dixain, on payoit son écot ;  
Plus n'en voyons qui prennent pour finance  
*Le bel esprit.**

A prix d'argent l'auteur, comme le sot,  
Boit sa chopine et mange son gigot ;  
Heureux encor d'en avoir suffisance !  
Maints ont le chef plus rempli que la panse :  
Dame Ignorance a fait enfin capot  
*Le bel esprit.*

#### DE L'ÉPIGRAMME.

L'Épigramme plus libre, en son tour plus borné,  
N'est souvent qu'un bon mot de deux rimes orné.

Cette pièce ne doit contenir qu'autant de vers qu'il en faut pour exprimer vivement la pensée ou le bon mot

qui en est l'âme. C'est pourquoi le nombre n'en est pas déterminé, non plus que la mesure et le mélange des rimes. Exemple :

Ci-gît ma femme : ah ! qu'elle est bien  
Pour son repos et pour le mien !

Un Magister s'empressant d'étouffer  
Quelque rumeur parmi la populace,  
D'un coup dans l'œil se fit apostropher,  
Dont il tomba, fesant laide grimace.  
Lors un frater s'écria : place, place ;  
J'ai pour ce mal un baume souverain.  
Perdrai-je l'œil ? lui dit messer Pancrace ;  
Non, mon ami, je le tiens dans ma main.

#### AUTRE ÉPIGRAMME.

Entre Racine et l'ainé des Corneilles  
Les Chrysogons se sont modérateurs :  
L'un, à leur gré, passe les sept merveilles ;  
L'autre ne plaît qu'aux versificateurs.  
Or maintenant, veillez, graves auteurs,  
Mordez vos doigts, ramez comme corsaires,  
Pour mériter de pareils protecteurs,  
Ou pour trouver de pareils adversaires.

#### DU MADRIGAL.

Le Madrigal plus simple, et plus noble en son tour,  
Respire la douceur, la tendresse et l'amour.—BOILEAU.

Ce petit poème ne diffère que par-là de l'Epigramme, dont la pointe est souvent aiguisée par la satire. Exemple :

L'autre jour l'enfant de Cythère,  
Sous une treille à demi gris,  
Disoit, en parlant à sa mère :  
Je bois à toi, ma chère Iris.  
Vénus le regarde en colère :  
Maman, calmez votre courroux,  
Si je vous prends pour ma bergère,  
J'ai pris cent fois Iris pour vous.

NOTA. Le Sonnet et le Rondeau ont aujourd'hui perdu toute leur vogue, et il est très-rare que l'on s'exerce dans ces deux genres de poésie.



LATELY PUBLISHED BY  
**RICHARDSON & LORD,**

A

# **Manual of French Phrases,**

AND

**FRENCH CONVERSATIONS :**

ADAPTED TO WANOSTROCHT'S GRAMMAR.

Containing an extensive collection of words and dialogues  
under each rule, with examples from the  
best French Authors.

---

*Utilius homini nihil est quam rectè loqui.*  
*Phæd. Lib. IV. Fab. XII.*

---

**BY N. M. HENTZ.**

---

## **ADVERTISEMENT.**

LONG experience has shewn, that to acquire the habit of conversing in a foreign language, the surest method for the learner, is to commit a great number of phrases employed in conversation and adapted to the rules of the Grammar which he goes through.

Most persons, who have studied the French language with care, find little, or no difficulty, in reading our Authors,

## ADVERTISEMENT.

but very few indeed find themselves able to converse with fluency. For the purpose of removing this difficulty, a list of many books, or manuals of conversation, has been published; some containing useful matter, many without method or accuracy, all arranged in chapters, or under heads, taking the most common subjects which may be the topics of conversation, as if the mind, transformed into a mechanical engine, could apply such chapters to all cases which may occur in discourse. A book therefore is still needed, which being adapted to one of the best Grammars in use, may—First, give to the learner a number of phrases, placed under each rule, analogous to the exercise which is to be written. Second, incorporate with those phrases all words in common use, arranged, as far as possible, according to some fixed principle. Third, introduce gradually the idioms of the language, beginning with the most simple.

Such is the plan of the *Manual* which we have added to WANOSTROCHT'S GRAMMAR. Every number, or division, corresponds to a rule, and we have added a quotation, from some of our best poets, to almost every paragraph. For the phrases, our principal source has been the last edition of the Dictionary of the Academy; the Grammaire des Grammaires has been our guide throughout; for the selection of words we have consulted many vocabularies—that of Mr. POPPLETON has appeared to us to be the most complete.

## A RONDEAU.

The French Rondeau consists of thirteen lines. The burden, or refret, should be placed after the eighth line, and also at the end, and should contain one or more of the words of the first line. It should also have a connected sense with what precedes, and be introduced delicately.

---

*Ma foi, c'est fait de moi, car Isabeau  
M'a conjuré de lui faire un Rondeau :  
Cela me met en une peine extrême.  
Quoi treize vers, huit en eau, cinq en eme !  
Je lui ferais aussi-tot un bateau.  
En voilà cinq pourtant en un monceau :  
Faisons-en huit en invoquant Brodeau,  
Et puis mettons par quelque stratagème,  
Ma foi, c'est fait.*

Si je pouvais encore de mon cerveau  
Tirer cinq vers, l'ouvrage serait beau :  
Mais cependant me voilà dans l'onzième,  
Et si je crois que je fais le douzième,  
En voilà treize ajustés en niveau.  
Ma foi, c'est fait.

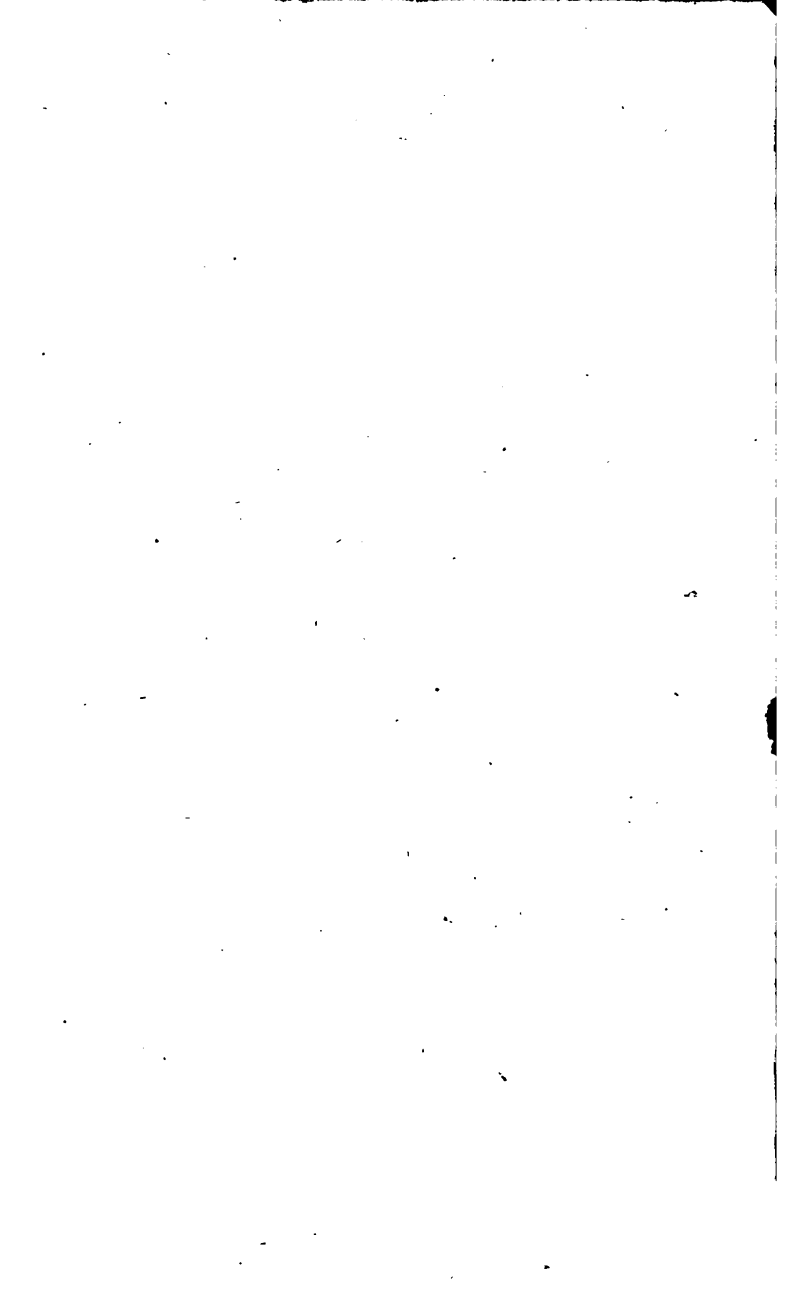
---

'Tis done with me, for my fair Isabeau  
Has called upon me for a French Rondeau.  
This task imposes on me pain extreme :  
Eight lines must rhyme with *eau*, and five with  
*eme*.

I'd sooner build for her a huge bateau.  
Yet here are five lines in well ordered row :—  
To eke out eight, I must invoke Brodeau,  
And then, resorting to some stratagem,  
'Tis done, my Isabeau.

From my exhausted brain could I make flow  
But five lines more, the thing would really go;  
I'm in the line eleventh it would seem,  
And could I reach the twelfth, I'd surely deem  
'The whole' arranged precisely 'comme il faut.'  
'Tis done, my Isabeau.





1845 - 1846, 1847, 1848, 1849, 1850, 1851, 1852, 1853, 1854, 1855, 1856, 1857, 1858, 1859, 1860, 1861, 1862, 1863, 1864, 1865, 1866, 1867, 1868, 1869, 1870, 1871, 1872, 1873, 1874, 1875, 1876, 1877, 1878, 1879, 1880, 1881, 1882, 1883, 1884, 1885, 1886, 1887, 1888, 1889, 1890, 1891, 1892, 1893, 1894, 1895, 1896, 1897, 1898, 1899, 1900, 1901, 1902, 1903, 1904, 1905, 1906, 1907, 1908, 1909, 1910, 1911, 1912, 1913, 1914, 1915, 1916, 1917, 1918, 1919, 1920, 1921, 1922, 1923, 1924, 1925, 1926, 1927, 1928, 1929, 1930, 1931, 1932, 1933, 1934, 1935, 1936, 1937, 1938, 1939, 1940, 1941, 1942, 1943, 1944, 1945, 1946, 1947, 1948, 1949, 1950, 1951, 1952, 1953, 1954, 1955, 1956, 1957, 1958, 1959, 1960, 1961, 1962, 1963, 1964, 1965, 1966, 1967, 1968, 1969, 1970, 1971, 1972, 1973, 1974, 1975, 1976, 1977, 1978, 1979, 1980, 1981, 1982, 1983, 1984, 1985, 1986, 1987, 1988, 1989, 1990, 1991, 1992, 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996, 1997, 1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, 2023, 2024, 2025, 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, 2032, 2033, 2034, 2035, 2036, 2037, 2038, 2039, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043, 2044, 2045, 2046, 2047, 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051, 2052, 2053, 2054, 2055, 2056, 2057, 2058, 2059, 2060, 2061, 2062, 2063, 2064, 2065, 2066, 2067, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2072, 2073, 2074, 2075, 2076, 2077, 2078, 2079, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2084, 2085, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2089, 2090, 2091, 2092, 2093, 2094, 2095, 2096, 2097, 2098, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2104, 2105, 2106, 2107, 2108, 2109, 2110, 2111, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2128, 2129, 2130, 2131, 2132, 2133, 2134, 2135, 2136, 2137, 2138, 2139, 2140, 2141, 2142, 2143, 2144, 2145, 2146, 2147, 2148, 2149, 2150, 2151, 2152, 2153, 2154, 2155, 2156, 2157, 2158, 2159, 2160, 2161, 2162, 2163, 2164, 2165, 2166, 2167, 2168, 2169, 2170, 2171, 2172, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2179, 2180, 2181, 2182, 2183, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2187, 2188, 2189, 2190, 2191, 2192, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2201, 2202, 2203, 2204, 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2209, 2210, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2214, 2215, 2216, 2217, 2218, 2219, 2220, 2221, 2222, 2223, 2224, 2225, 2226, 2227, 2228, 2229, 2230, 2231, 2232, 2233, 2234, 2235, 2236, 2237, 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2246, 2247, 2248, 2249, 2250, 2251, 2252, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2256, 2257, 2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263, 2264, 2265, 2266, 2267, 2268, 2269, 2270, 2271, 2272, 2273, 2274, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2284, 2285, 2286, 2287, 2288, 2289, 2290, 2291, 2292, 2293, 2294, 2295, 2296, 2297, 2298, 2299, 2300, 2301, 2302, 2303, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316, 2317, 2318, 2319, 2320, 2321, 2322, 2323, 2324, 2325, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2329, 2330, 2331, 2332, 2333, 2334, 2335, 2336, 2337, 2338, 2339, 2340, 2341, 2342, 2343, 2344, 2345, 2346, 2347, 2348, 2349, 2350, 2351, 2352, 2353, 2354, 2355, 2356, 2357, 2358, 2359, 2360, 2361, 2362, 2363, 2364, 2365, 2366, 2367, 2368, 2369, 2370, 2371, 2372, 2373, 2374, 2375, 2376, 2377, 2378, 2379, 2380, 2381, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2387, 2388, 2389, 2390, 2391, 2392, 2393, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2398, 2399, 2400, 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, 2419, 2420, 2421, 2422, 2423, 2424, 2425, 2426, 2427, 2428, 2429, 2430, 2431, 2432, 2433, 2434, 2435, 2436, 2437, 2438, 2439, 2440, 2441, 2442, 2443, 2444, 2445, 2446, 2447, 2448, 2449, 2450, 2451, 2452, 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2457, 2458, 2459, 2460, 2461, 2462, 2463, 2464, 2465, 2466, 2467, 2468, 2469, 2470, 2471, 2472, 2473, 2474, 2475, 2476, 2477, 2478, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2482, 2483, 2484, 2485, 2486, 2487, 2488, 2489, 2490, 2491, 2492, 2493, 2494, 2495, 2496, 2497, 2498, 2499, 2500, 2501, 2502, 2503, 2504, 2505, 2506, 2507, 2508, 2509, 2510, 2511, 2512, 2513, 2514, 2515, 2516, 2517, 2518, 2519, 2520, 2521, 2522, 2523, 2524, 2525, 2526,

**This book should be returned to  
the Library on or before the last date  
stamped below.**

**A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.**

**Please return promptly.**

5/  
Educ T 1168.24.2

HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



THE GIFT OF  
EDWARD HICKLING BRADFORD  
(A.B. 1869, M.D. 1873)  
OF BOSTON

...  
AUGUST 23, 1917



